



# ES3500 Series

Intelligent L2 switch

Version 4.00  
Edition 3, 06/2012

## User's Guide

### Default Login Details

LAN IP Address	http://192.168.1.1
User Name	admin
Password	1234

---

**IMPORTANT!**

**READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USE.**

**KEEP THIS GUIDE FOR FUTURE REFERENCE.**

This is a User's Guide for a series of products. Not all products support all firmware features. Screenshots and graphics in this book may differ slightly from your product due to differences in your product firmware or your computer operating system. Every effort has been made to ensure that the information in this manual is accurate.

### **Related Documentation**

- CLI Reference Guide

The CLI Reference Guide explains how to use the Command-Line Interface (CLI) to configure the Switch.

Note: It is recommended you use the Web Configurator to configure the Switch.

- Web Configurator Online Help

Click the help icon in any screen for help in configuring that screen and supplementary information.

# Contents Overview

<b>User's Guide .....</b>	<b>17</b>
Getting to Know Your Switch .....	19
Hardware Installation and Connection .....	25
Hardware Overview .....	28
The Web Configurator .....	37
Initial Setup Example .....	47
Tutorials .....	52
<b>Technical Reference .....</b>	<b>77</b>
System Status and Port Statistics .....	79
Basic Setting .....	84
VLAN .....	99
Static MAC Forward Setup .....	116
Static Multicast Forward Setup .....	118
Filtering .....	122
Spanning Tree Protocol .....	124
Bandwidth Control .....	142
Broadcast Storm Control .....	145
Mirroring .....	147
Link Aggregation .....	149
Port Authentication .....	157
Port Security .....	165
Classifier .....	167
Policy Rule .....	172
Queuing Method .....	177
VLAN Stacking .....	180
Multicast .....	187
AAA .....	202
IP Source Guard .....	215
Loop Guard .....	234
VLAN Mapping .....	238
Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling .....	242
sFlow .....	246
PPPoE .....	250
Error Disable .....	258
Private VLAN .....	263
Green Ethernet .....	265
Static Route .....	267

Differentiated Services .....	270
DHCP .....	278
Maintenance .....	285
Access Control .....	292
Diagnostic .....	317
Syslog .....	318
Cluster Management .....	321
MAC Table .....	327
ARP Table .....	330
Configure Clone .....	332
Troubleshooting .....	335



# Table of Contents

<b>Contents Overview .....</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>Table of Contents .....</b>	<b>5</b>
 <b>Part I: User's Guide .....</b>	 <b>17</b>
<b>Chapter 1</b>	
<b>Getting to Know Your Switch.....</b>	<b>19</b>
1.1 Introduction .....	19
1.1.1 Backbone Application .....	19
1.1.2 Bridging Example .....	20
1.1.3 High Performance Switching Example .....	20
1.1.4 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Application Examples .....	21
1.1.5 IPv6 Support .....	22
1.2 Ways to Manage the Switch .....	22
1.3 Good Habits for Managing the Switch .....	23
 <b>Chapter 2</b>	
<b>Hardware Installation and Connection .....</b>	<b>25</b>
2.1 Installation Scenarios .....	25
2.2 Desktop Installation Procedure .....	25
2.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack .....	25
2.3.1 Rack-mounted Installation Requirements .....	26
2.3.2 Attaching the Mounting Brackets to the Switch .....	26
2.3.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack .....	27
 <b>Chapter 3</b>	
<b>Hardware Overview .....</b>	<b>28</b>
3.1 Front and Rear Panels .....	28
3.1.1 Console Port .....	30
3.1.2 Ethernet Ports .....	30
3.1.3 Transceiver Slots .....	31
3.1.4 Power Connector .....	33
3.2 LEDs .....	33
 <b>Chapter 4</b>	
<b>The Web Configurator .....</b>	<b>37</b>
4.1 Introduction .....	37

4.2 System Login .....	37
4.3 The Web Configurator Layout .....	38
4.3.1 Change Your Password .....	43
4.4 Saving Your Configuration .....	43
4.5 Switch Lockout .....	43
4.6 Resetting the Switch .....	44
4.6.1 Reload the Configuration File .....	44
4.7 Logging Out of the Web Configurator .....	45
4.8 Help .....	45
 <b>Chapter 5</b>	
<b>Initial Setup Example.....</b>	<b>47</b>
5.1 Overview .....	47
5.1.1 Creating a VLAN .....	47
5.1.2 Setting Port VID .....	49
5.2 Configuring Switch Management IP Address .....	50
 <b>Chapter 6</b>	
<b>Tutorials.....</b>	<b>52</b>
6.1 How to Use DHCP Snooping on the Switch .....	52
6.2 How to Use DHCP Relay on the Switch .....	55
6.2.1 DHCP Relay Tutorial Introduction .....	56
6.2.2 Creating a VLAN .....	56
6.2.3 Configuring DHCP Relay .....	58
6.2.4 Troubleshooting .....	59
6.3 How to Use PPPoE IA on the Switch .....	59
6.3.1 Configuring Switch A .....	60
6.3.2 Configuring Switch B .....	62
6.4 How to Use Error Disable and Recovery on the Switch .....	65
6.5 How to Set Up a Guest VLAN .....	67
6.5.1 Creating a Guest VLAN .....	67
6.5.2 Enabling IEEE 802.1x Port Authentication .....	70
6.5.3 Enabling Guest VLAN .....	71
6.6 How to Do Port Isolation in a VLAN .....	72
6.6.1 Creating a VLAN .....	73
6.6.2 Creating a Private VLAN Rule .....	75
 <b>Part II: Technical Reference.....</b>	<b>77</b>
 <b>Chapter 7</b>	
<b>System Status and Port Statistics.....</b>	<b>79</b>

7.1 Overview .....	79
7.2 Port Status Summary .....	79
7.2.1 Status: Port Details .....	81
<b>Chapter 8</b>	
<b>Basic Setting .....</b>	<b>84</b>
8.1 Overview .....	84
8.2 System Information .....	84
8.3 General Setup .....	86
8.4 Introduction to VLANs .....	87
8.4.1 Smart Isolation .....	88
8.5 Switch Setup .....	89
8.6 IP Setup .....	91
8.6.1 Management IP Addresses .....	91
8.7 Port Setup .....	93
8.8 PoE .....	94
8.8.1 PoE Setup .....	96
<b>Chapter 9</b>	
<b>VLAN .....</b>	<b>99</b>
9.1 Introduction to IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLANs .....	99
9.1.1 Forwarding Tagged and Untagged Frames .....	99
9.2 Automatic VLAN Registration .....	100
9.2.1 GARP .....	100
9.2.2 GVRP .....	100
9.3 Port VLAN Trunking .....	101
9.4 Select the VLAN Type .....	101
9.5 Static VLAN .....	101
9.5.1 VLAN Status .....	102
9.5.2 VLAN Details .....	103
9.5.3 Configure a Static VLAN .....	104
9.5.4 Configure VLAN Port Settings .....	105
9.6 Subnet Based VLANs .....	106
9.7 Configuring Subnet Based VLAN .....	107
9.8 Protocol Based VLANs .....	109
9.9 Configuring Protocol Based VLAN .....	110
9.10 Create an IP-based VLAN Example .....	111
9.11 Port-based VLAN Setup .....	112
9.11.1 Configure a Port-based VLAN .....	112
<b>Chapter 10</b>	
<b>Static MAC Forward Setup.....</b>	<b>116</b>
10.1 Overview .....	116

10.2 Configuring Static MAC Forwarding .....	116
<b>Chapter 11</b>	
<b>Static Multicast Forward Setup .....</b>	<b>118</b>
11.1 Static Multicast Forwarding Overview .....	118
11.2 Configuring Static Multicast Forwarding .....	119
<b>Chapter 12</b>	
<b>Filtering.....</b>	<b>122</b>
12.1 Configure a Filtering Rule .....	122
<b>Chapter 13</b>	
<b>Spanning Tree Protocol.....</b>	<b>124</b>
13.1 STP/RSTP Overview .....	124
13.1.1 STP Terminology .....	124
13.1.2 How STP Works .....	125
13.1.3 STP Port States .....	125
13.1.4 Multiple RSTP .....	126
13.1.5 Multiple STP .....	126
13.2 Spanning Tree Protocol Status Screen .....	129
13.3 Spanning Tree Configuration .....	129
13.4 Configure Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol .....	130
13.5 Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Status .....	132
13.6 Configure Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol .....	133
13.7 Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Status .....	134
13.8 Configure Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol .....	136
13.8.1 Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Port Configuration .....	139
13.9 Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Status .....	140
<b>Chapter 14</b>	
<b>Bandwidth Control.....</b>	<b>142</b>
14.1 Bandwidth Control Overview .....	142
14.1.1 CIR and PIR .....	142
14.2 Bandwidth Control Setup .....	143
<b>Chapter 15</b>	
<b>Broadcast Storm Control .....</b>	<b>145</b>
15.1 Broadcast Storm Control Setup .....	145
<b>Chapter 16</b>	
<b>Mirroring.....</b>	<b>147</b>
16.1 Port Mirroring Setup .....	147

<b>Chapter 17</b>	
<b>Link Aggregation .....</b>	<b>149</b>
17.1 Link Aggregation Overview .....	149
17.2 Dynamic Link Aggregation .....	149
17.2.1 Link Aggregation ID .....	150
17.3 Link Aggregation Status .....	150
17.4 Link Aggregation Setting .....	152
17.5 Link Aggregation Control Protocol .....	154
17.6 Static Trunking Example .....	155
<b>Chapter 18</b>	
<b>Port Authentication .....</b>	<b>157</b>
18.1 Port Authentication Overview .....	157
18.1.1 IEEE 802.1x Authentication .....	157
18.1.2 MAC Authentication .....	158
18.2 Port Authentication Configuration .....	159
18.2.1 Activate IEEE 802.1x Security .....	160
18.2.2 Guest VLAN .....	161
18.2.3 Activate MAC Authentication .....	163
<b>Chapter 19</b>	
<b>Port Security .....</b>	<b>165</b>
19.1 About Port Security .....	165
19.2 Port Security Setup .....	165
<b>Chapter 20</b>	
<b>Classifier .....</b>	<b>167</b>
20.1 About the Classifier and QoS .....	167
20.2 Configuring the Classifier .....	167
20.3 Viewing and Editing Classifier Configuration .....	169
20.4 Classifier Example .....	171
<b>Chapter 21</b>	
<b>Policy Rule .....</b>	<b>172</b>
21.1 Policy Rules Overview .....	172
21.1.1 DiffServ .....	172
21.1.2 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior .....	172
21.2 Configuring Policy Rules .....	172
21.3 Viewing and Editing Policy Configuration .....	175
21.4 Policy Example .....	176
<b>Chapter 22</b>	
<b>Queuing Method .....</b>	<b>177</b>

22.1 Queuing Method Overview .....	177
22.1.1 Strictly Priority Queuing .....	177
22.1.2 Weighted Fair Queuing .....	177
22.1.3 Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR) .....	178
22.2 Configuring Queuing .....	178
<b>Chapter 23</b>	
<b>VLAN Stacking .....</b>	<b>180</b>
23.1 VLAN Stacking Overview .....	180
23.1.1 VLAN Stacking Example .....	180
23.2 VLAN Stacking Port Roles .....	181
23.3 VLAN Tag Format .....	182
23.3.1 Frame Format .....	182
23.4 Configuring VLAN Stacking .....	183
23.4.1 Port-based Q-in-Q .....	184
23.4.2 Selective Q-in-Q .....	185
<b>Chapter 24</b>	
<b>Multicast .....</b>	<b>187</b>
24.1 Multicast Overview .....	187
24.1.1 IP Multicast Addresses .....	187
24.1.2 IGMP Filtering .....	187
24.1.3 IGMP Snooping .....	187
24.1.4 IGMP Snooping and VLANs .....	188
24.2 Multicast Status .....	188
24.3 Multicast Setting .....	189
24.4 IGMP Snooping VLAN .....	192
24.5 IGMP Filtering Profile .....	193
24.6 MVR Overview .....	194
24.6.1 Types of MVR Ports .....	195
24.6.2 MVR Modes .....	195
24.6.3 How MVR Works .....	195
24.7 General MVR Configuration .....	196
24.8 MVR Group Configuration .....	198
24.8.1 MVR Configuration Example .....	199
<b>Chapter 25</b>	
<b>AAA .....</b>	<b>202</b>
25.1 Authentication, Authorization and Accounting (AAA) .....	202
25.1.1 Local User Accounts .....	202
25.1.2 RADIUS and TACACS+ .....	203
25.2 AAA Screens .....	203
25.2.1 RADIUS Server Setup .....	203

25.2.2 TACACS+ Server Setup .....	206
25.2.3 AAA Setup .....	208
25.2.4 Vendor Specific Attribute .....	210
25.2.5 Tunnel Protocol Attribute .....	211
25.3 Supported RADIUS Attributes .....	211
25.3.1 Attributes Used for Authentication .....	212
25.3.2 Attributes Used for Accounting .....	212
<b>Chapter 26</b>	
<b>IP Source Guard.....</b>	<b>215</b>
26.1 IP Source Guard Overview .....	215
26.1.1 DHCP Snooping Overview .....	215
26.1.2 ARP Inspection Overview .....	217
26.2 IP Source Guard .....	219
26.3 IP Source Guard Static Binding .....	219
26.4 DHCP Snooping .....	221
26.5 DHCP Snooping Configure .....	223
26.5.1 DHCP Snooping Port Configure .....	225
26.5.2 DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure .....	226
26.6 ARP Inspection Status .....	227
26.6.1 ARP Inspection VLAN Status .....	228
26.6.2 ARP Inspection Log Status .....	229
26.7 ARP Inspection Configure .....	230
26.7.1 ARP Inspection Port Configure .....	231
26.7.2 ARP Inspection VLAN Configure .....	233
<b>Chapter 27</b>	
<b>Loop Guard .....</b>	<b>234</b>
27.1 Loop Guard Overview .....	234
27.2 Loop Guard Setup .....	236
<b>Chapter 28</b>	
<b>VLAN Mapping .....</b>	<b>238</b>
28.1 VLAN Mapping Overview .....	238
28.1.1 VLAN Mapping Example .....	238
28.2 Enabling VLAN Mapping .....	239
28.3 Configuring VLAN Mapping .....	240
<b>Chapter 29</b>	
<b>Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling.....</b>	<b>242</b>
29.1 Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling Overview .....	242
29.1.1 Layer-2 Protocol Tunneling Mode .....	243
29.2 Configuring Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling .....	244

<b>Chapter 30</b>	
<b>sFlow</b>	<b>246</b>
30.1 sFlow Overview	246
30.2 sFlow Port Configuration	247
30.2.1 sFlow Collector Configuration	248
<b>Chapter 31</b>	
<b>PPPoE</b>	<b>250</b>
31.1 PPPoE Intermediate Agent Overview	250
31.1.1 PPPoE Intermediate Agent Tag Format	250
31.1.2 Sub-Option Format	250
31.1.3 Port State	251
31.2 The PPPoE Screen	252
31.3 PPPoE Intermediate Agent	252
31.3.1 PPPoE IA Per-Port	254
31.3.2 PPPoE IA Per-Port Per-VLAN	255
31.3.3 PPPoE IA for VLAN	257
<b>Chapter 32</b>	
<b>Error Disable</b>	<b>258</b>
32.1 CPU Protection Overview	258
32.2 Error-Disable Recovery Overview	258
32.3 The Error Disable Screen	259
32.4 CPU Protection Configuration	259
32.5 Error-Disable Detect Configuration	260
32.6 Error-Disable Recovery Configuration	261
<b>Chapter 33</b>	
<b>Private VLAN</b>	<b>263</b>
33.1 Private VLAN Overview	263
33.2 Configuring Private VLAN	264
<b>Chapter 34</b>	
<b>Green Ethernet</b>	<b>265</b>
34.1 Green Ethernet Overview	265
34.2 Configuring Green Ethernet	266
<b>Chapter 35</b>	
<b>Static Route</b>	<b>267</b>
35.1 Static Routing Overview	267
35.2 Configuring Static Routing	268



<b>Chapter 36</b>	
<b>Differentiated Services .....</b>	<b>270</b>
36.1 DiffServ Overview .....	270
36.1.1 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior .....	270
36.1.2 DiffServ Network Example .....	270
36.2 Two Rate Three Color Marker Traffic Policing .....	271
36.2.1 TRTCM-Color-blind Mode .....	272
36.2.2 TRTCM-Color-aware Mode .....	272
36.3 Activating DiffServ .....	272
36.3.1 Configuring 2-Rate 3 Color Marker Settings .....	273
36.3.2 Configuring DSCP Profiles .....	275
36.4 DSCP-to-IEEE 802.1p Priority Settings .....	276
36.4.1 Configuring DSCP Settings .....	276
<b>Chapter 37</b>	
<b>DHCP .....</b>	<b>278</b>
37.1 DHCP Overview .....	278
37.1.1 DHCP Modes .....	278
37.1.2 DHCP Configuration Options .....	278
37.2 DHCP Status .....	278
37.3 DHCP Relay .....	279
37.3.1 DHCP Relay Agent Information .....	279
37.3.2 Configuring DHCP Global Relay .....	280
37.3.3 Global DHCP Relay Configuration Example .....	281
37.4 Configuring DHCP VLAN Settings .....	282
37.4.1 Example: DHCP Relay for Two VLANs .....	283
<b>Chapter 38</b>	
<b>Maintenance .....</b>	<b>285</b>
38.1 The Maintenance Screen .....	285
38.2 Load Factory Default .....	286
38.3 Save Configuration .....	286
38.4 Reboot System .....	286
38.5 Firmware Upgrade .....	287
38.6 Restore a Configuration File .....	288
38.7 Backup a Configuration File .....	288
38.8 FTP Command Line .....	289
38.8.1 Filename Conventions .....	289
38.8.2 FTP Command Line Procedure .....	290
38.8.3 GUI-based FTP Clients .....	290
38.8.4 FTP Restrictions .....	290

<b>Chapter 39</b>	
<b>Access Control .....</b>	<b>292</b>
39.1 Access Control Overview .....	292
39.2 The Access Control Main Screen .....	292
39.3 About SNMP .....	292
39.3.1 SNMP v3 and Security .....	293
39.3.2 Supported MIBs .....	294
39.3.3 SNMP Traps .....	294
39.3.4 Configuring SNMP .....	301
39.3.5 Configuring SNMP Trap Group .....	302
39.3.6 Configuring SNMP User .....	303
39.4 Setting Up Login Accounts .....	305
39.5 SSH Overview .....	306
39.6 How SSH works .....	307
39.7 SSH Implementation on the Switch .....	308
39.7.1 Requirements for Using SSH .....	308
39.8 Introduction to HTTPS .....	308
39.9 HTTPS Example .....	309
39.9.1 Internet Explorer Warning Messages .....	309
39.9.2 Mozilla Firefox Warning Messages .....	312
39.9.3 The Main Screen .....	313
39.10 Service Port Access Control .....	314
39.11 Remote Management .....	315
 <b>Chapter 40</b>	
<b>Diagnostic .....</b>	<b>317</b>
40.1 Diagnostic .....	317
 <b>Chapter 41</b>	
<b>Syslog .....</b>	<b>318</b>
41.1 Syslog Overview .....	318
41.2 Syslog Setup .....	319
41.3 Syslog Server Setup .....	320
 <b>Chapter 42</b>	
<b>Cluster Management .....</b>	<b>321</b>
42.1 Cluster Management Status Overview .....	321
42.2 Cluster Management Status .....	322
42.2.1 Cluster Member Switch Management .....	323
42.3 Clustering Management Configuration .....	325
 <b>Chapter 43</b>	
<b>MAC Table .....</b>	<b>327</b>

---

43.1 MAC Table Overview .....	327
43.2 Viewing the MAC Table .....	328
<b>Chapter 44</b>	
<b>ARP Table .....</b>	<b>330</b>
44.1 ARP Table Overview .....	330
44.1.1 How ARP Works .....	330
44.2 The ARP Table Screen .....	331
<b>Chapter 45</b>	
<b>Configure Clone .....</b>	<b>332</b>
45.1 Configure Clone .....	332
<b>Chapter 46</b>	
<b>Troubleshooting .....</b>	<b>335</b>
46.1 Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs .....	335
46.2 Switch Access and Login .....	337
46.3 Switch Configuration .....	339
Appendix A Common Services .....	341
Appendix B Legal Information .....	345
<b>Safety Warnings .....</b>	<b>348</b>
<b>Index .....</b>	<b>351</b>



---

# **PART I**

## **User's Guide**

---



# Getting to Know Your Switch

This chapter introduces the main features and applications of the Switch.

## 1.1 Introduction

The Switch is a layer-2 standalone Ethernet switch. There are three models of the Switch.

**Table 1** Switch models and features

MODEL	DISTINGUISHING FEATURES
ES3500-24	24 10/100 Ethernet ports 4 dual-personality interfaces - 10/100/1000 Mbps Ethernet or 1000 Mbps Fiber.
ES3500-24HP	24 10/100 Ethernet ports: only these can supply PoE. 4 dual personality interfaces: 10/100/1000 Mbps Ethernet or 100/1000 Mbps Fiber.
ES3500-8PD	8 10/100 Ethernet ports. 2 dual personality interfaces: 10/100/1000 Mbps Ethernet or 100/1000 Mbps Fiber. Only port 9 can receive power from a PoE switch All 10 ports support Green Ethernet to reduce switch port power consumption.

Dual-personality interfaces comprise one RJ-45 port and one mini-GBIC slot, with either a port or a slot active at a time.

With its built-in web configurator, managing and configuring the Switch is easy. In addition, the Switch can also be managed via Telnet, any terminal emulator program on the console port, or third-party SNMP management.

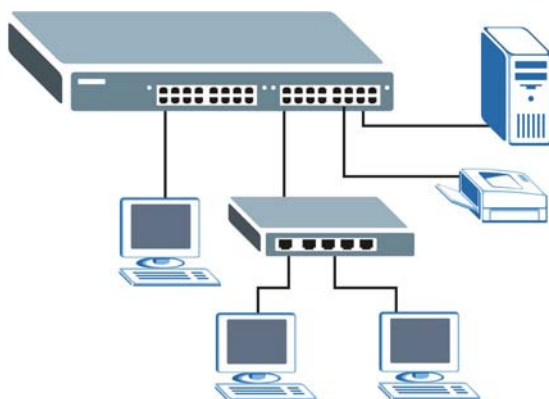
This section shows a few examples of using the Switch in various network environments.

### 1.1.1 Backbone Application

The Switch is an ideal solution for small networks where rapid growth can be expected in the near future. The Switch can be used standalone for a group of heavy traffic users. You can connect computers and servers directly to the Switch's port or connect other switches to the Switch.

In this example, all computers can share high-speed applications on the server. To expand the network, simply add more networking devices such as switches, routers, computers, print servers etc.

**Figure 1** Backbone Application

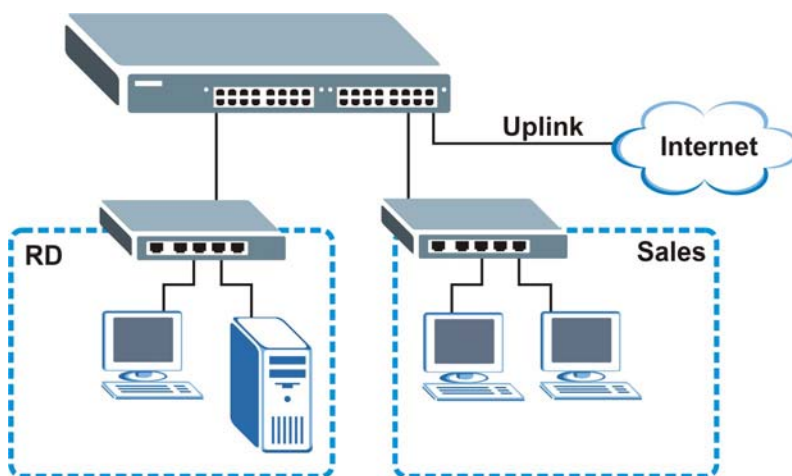


### 1.1.2 Bridging Example

In this example, the Switch connects different company departments (**RD** and **Sales**) to the corporate backbone. It can alleviate bandwidth contention and eliminate server and network bottlenecks. All users that need high bandwidth can connect to high-speed department servers via the Switch. You can provide a super-fast uplink connection by using a Gigabit Ethernet/mini-GBIC port on the Switch.

Moreover, the Switch eases supervision and maintenance by allowing network managers to centralize multiple servers at a single location.

**Figure 2** Bridging Application



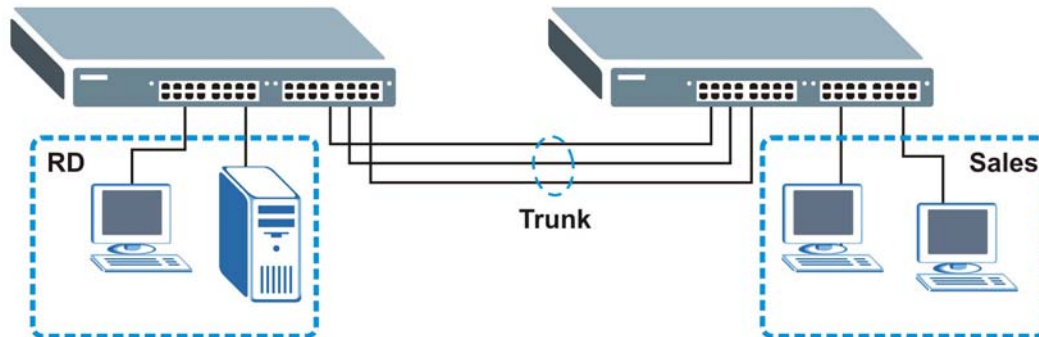
### 1.1.3 High Performance Switching Example

The Switch is ideal for connecting two networks that need high bandwidth. In the following example, use trunking to connect these two networks.



Switching to higher-speed LANs such as ATM (Asynchronous Transmission Mode) is not feasible for most people due to the expense of replacing all existing Ethernet cables and adapter cards, restructuring your network and complex maintenance. The Switch can provide the same bandwidth as ATM at much lower cost while still being able to use existing adapters and switches. Moreover, the current LAN structure can be retained as all ports can freely communicate with each other.

**Figure 3** High Performance Switched Workgroup Application



## 1.1.4 IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Application Examples

A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Stations on a logical network belong to one group. A station can belong to more than one group. With VLAN, a station cannot directly talk to or hear from stations that are not in the same group(s) unless such traffic first goes through a router.

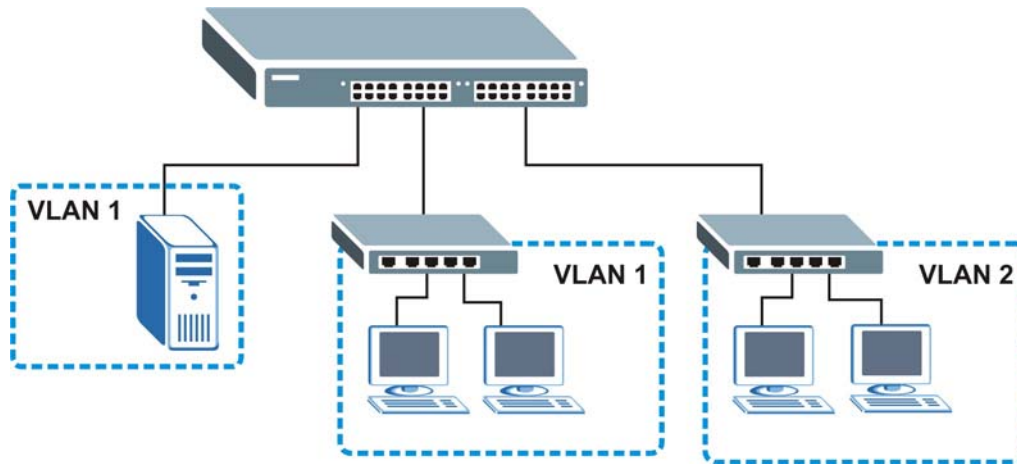
For more information on VLANs, refer to [Chapter 9 on page 99](#).

### 1.1.4.1 Tag-based VLAN Example

Ports in the same VLAN group share the same frame broadcast domain thus increase network performance through reduced broadcast traffic. VLAN groups can be modified at any time by adding, moving or changing ports without any re-cabling.

Shared resources such as a server can be used by all ports in the same VLAN as the server. In the following figure only ports that need access to the server need to be part of VLAN 1. Ports can belong to other VLAN groups too.

**Figure 4** Shared Server Using VLAN Example



### 1.1.5 IPv6 Support

IPv6 (Internet Protocol version 6), is designed to enhance IP address size and features. The increase in IPv6 address size to 128 bits (from the 32-bit IPv4 address) allows up to  $3.4 \times 10^{38}$  IP addresses. At the time of writing, the Switch supports the following features.

- Static address assignment and stateless auto-configuration
- Neighbor Discovery Protocol (a protocol used to discover other IPv6 devices in a network)
- Remote Management using ping, SNMP, telnet, HTTP and FTP services
- ICMPv6 to report errors encountered in packet processing and perform diagnostic functions, such as "ping"
- IPv4/IPv6 dual stack; the Switch can run IPv4 and IPv6 at the same time
- DHCPv6 client and relay
- Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) snooping and proxy

For more information on IPv6, refer to the CLI Reference Guide.

## 1.2 Ways to Manage the Switch

Use any of the following methods to manage the Switch.

- Web Configurator. This is recommended for everyday management of the Switch using a (supported) web browser. See [Chapter 4 on page 37](#).
- Command Line Interface. Line commands offer an alternative to the web configurator and in some cases are necessary to configure advanced features. See the CLI Reference Guide.
- FTP. Use FTP for firmware upgrades and configuration backup/restore. See [Section 38.8 on page 289](#).
- SNMP. The Switch can be monitored by an SNMP manager. See [Section 39.3 on page 292](#).

- Cluster Management. Cluster Management allows you to manage multiple switches through one switch, called the cluster manager. See [Chapter 42 on page 321](#).

## 1.3 Good Habits for Managing the Switch

Do the following things regularly to make the Switch more secure and to manage the Switch more effectively.

- Change the password. Use a password that's not easy to guess and that consists of different types of characters, such as numbers and letters.
- Write down the password and put it in a safe place.
- Back up the configuration (and make sure you know how to restore it). Restoring an earlier working configuration may be useful if the device becomes unstable or even crashes. If you forget your password, you will have to reset the Switch to its factory default settings. If you backed up an earlier configuration file, you would not have to totally re-configure the Switch. You could simply restore your last configuration.



# Hardware Installation and Connection

This chapter shows you how to install and connect the Switch.

## 2.1 Installation Scenarios

The Switch can be placed on a desktop or rack-mounted on a standard EIA rack. Use the rubber feet in a desktop installation and the brackets in a rack-mounted installation. The following table shows how each model can be mounted.

**Table 2** Installation Scenarios

MODEL	MOUNTING TYPE
ES3500-24	19" rack-mounted
ES3500-24HP	19" rack-mounted
ES3500-8PD	Desktop (rack-mountable)

Note: For proper ventilation, allow at least 4 inches (10 cm) of clearance at the front and 3.4 inches (8 cm) at the back of the Switch. This is especially important for enclosed rack installations.

## 2.2 Desktop Installation Procedure

- 1 Make sure the Switch is clean and dry.
- 2 Set the Switch on a smooth, level surface strong enough to support the weight of the Switch and the connected cables. Make sure there is a power outlet nearby.
- 3 Make sure there is enough clearance around the Switch to allow air circulation and the attachment of cables and the power cord.

## 2.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack

The Switch can be mounted on an EIA standard size, 19-inch rack or in a wiring closet with other equipment. Follow the steps below to mount your Switch on a standard EIA rack using a rack-mounting kit.

## 2.3.1 Rack-mounted Installation Requirements

- Two mounting brackets.
- Eight M3 flat head screws and a #2 Philips screwdriver.
- Four M5 flat head screws and a #2 Philips screwdriver.

**Failure to use the proper screws may damage the unit.**

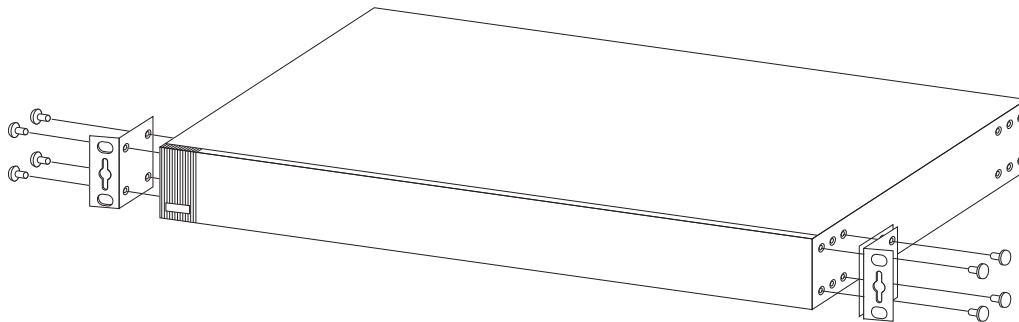
### 2.3.1.1 Precautions

- Make sure the rack will safely support the combined weight of all the equipment it contains.
- Make sure the position of the Switch does not make the rack unstable or top-heavy. Take all necessary precautions to anchor the rack securely before installing the unit.

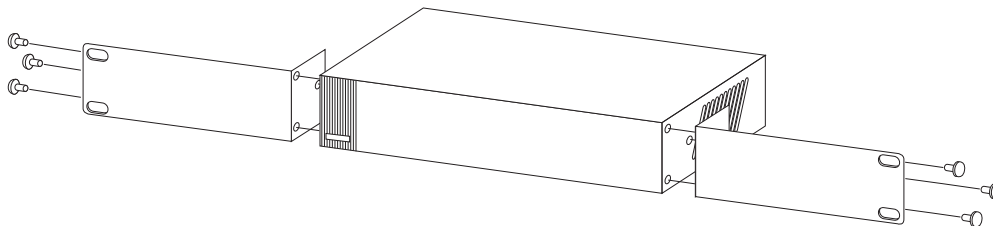
## 2.3.2 Attaching the Mounting Brackets to the Switch

- 1 Position a mounting bracket on one side of the Switch, lining up the four screw holes on the bracket with the screw holes on the side of the Switch.

**Figure 5** Attaching the Mounting Brackets (non-desktop models)



**Figure 6** Attaching the Mounting Brackets (desktop models)

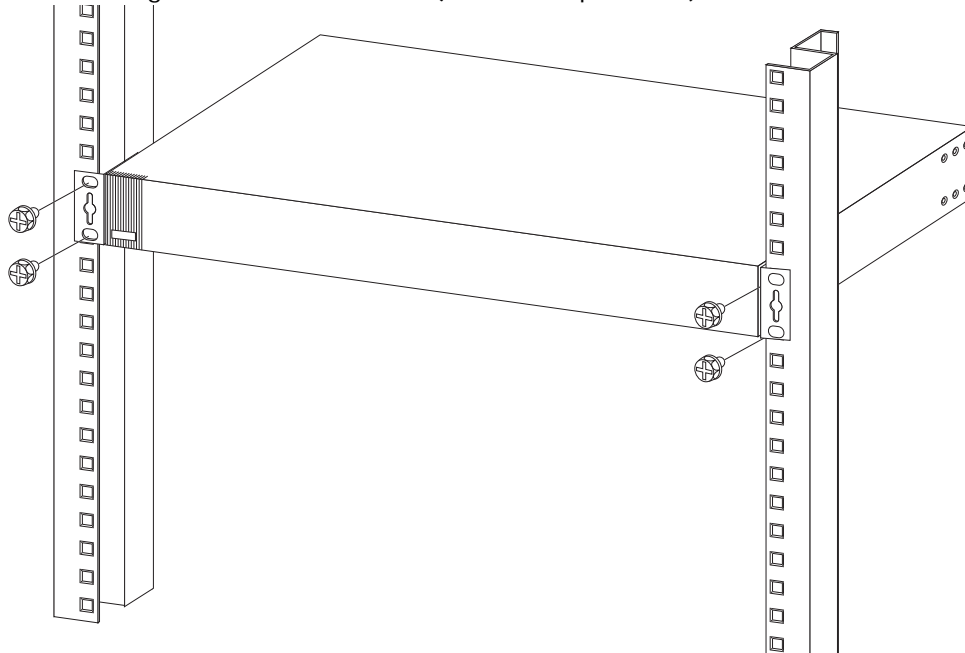


- 2 Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, install the M3 flat head screws through the mounting bracket holes into the Switch.
- 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to install the second mounting bracket on the other side of the Switch.
- 4 You may now mount the Switch on a rack. Proceed to the next section.

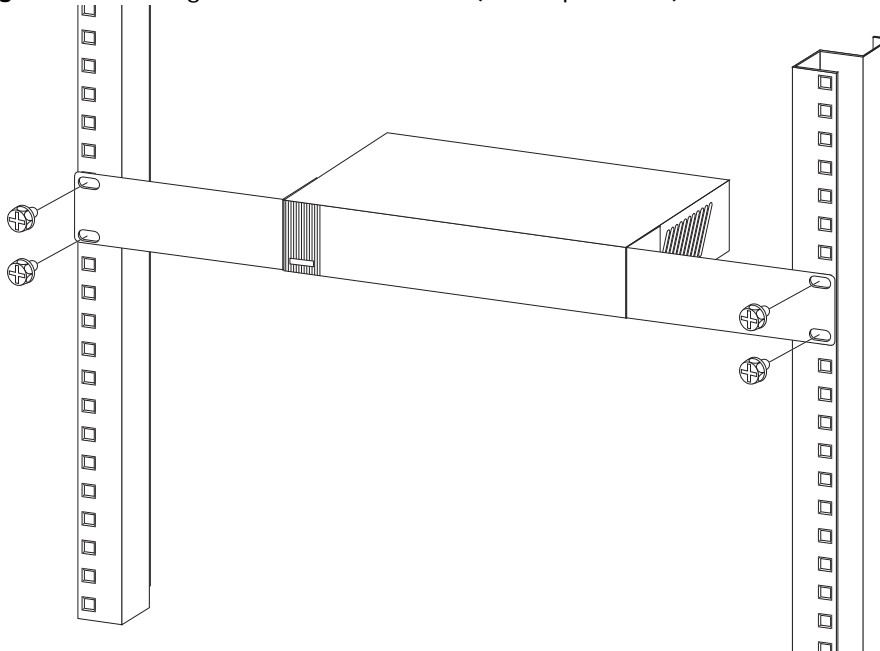
### 2.3.3 Mounting the Switch on a Rack

- 1 Position a mounting bracket (that is already attached to the Switch) on one side of the rack, lining up the two screw holes on the bracket with the screw holes on the side of the rack.

**Figure 7** Mounting the Switch on a Rack (non-desktop models)



**Figure 8** Mounting the Switch on a Rack (desktop models)



- 2 Using a #2 Philips screwdriver, install the M5 flat head screws through the mounting bracket holes into the rack.
- 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 to attach the second mounting bracket on the other side of the rack.

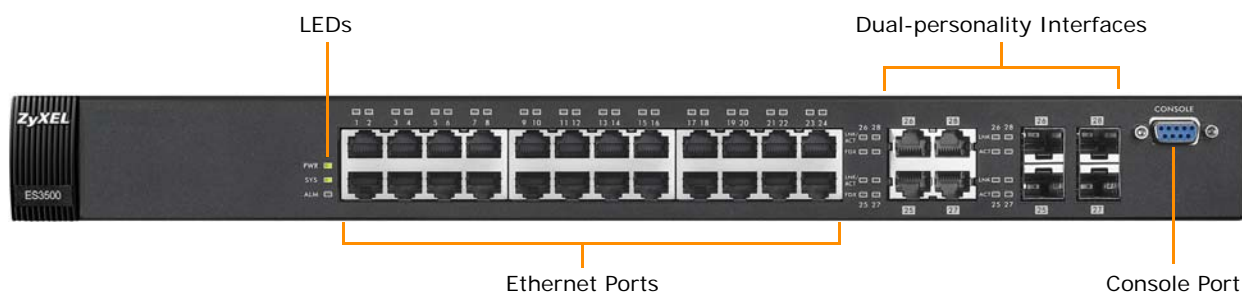
## Hardware Overview

This chapter describes the front panel and rear panel of the Switch and shows you how to make the hardware connections.

### 3.1 Front and Rear Panels

The following figures show the front and rear panels of the Switch.

**Figure 9** ES3500-24 Front Panel



**Figure 10** ES3500-24 Rear Panel



**Figure 11** ES3500-24HP Front Panel

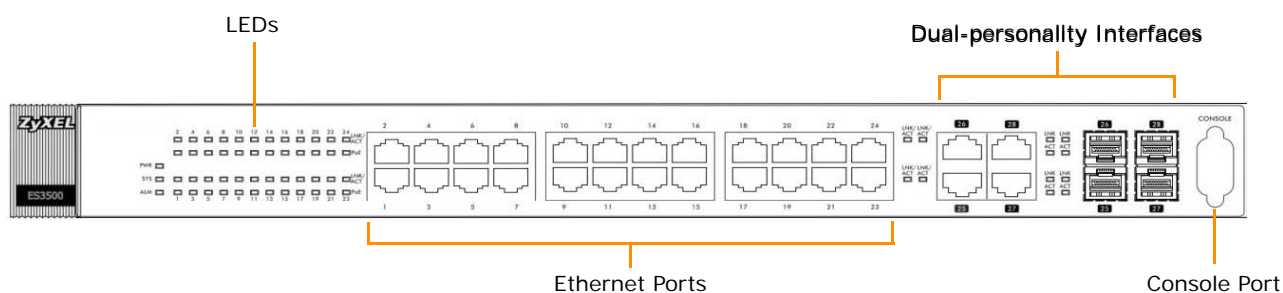




Figure 12 ES3500-24HP Rear Panel

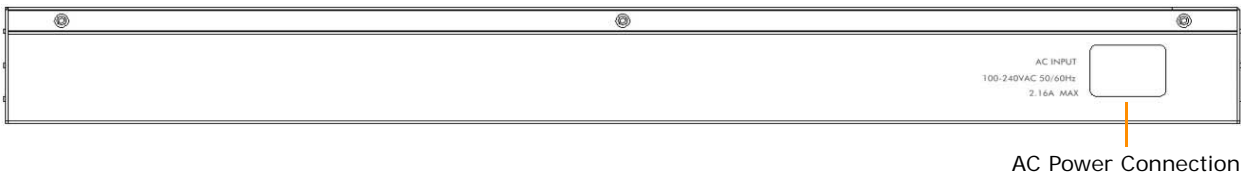


Figure 13 ES3500-8PD Front Panel

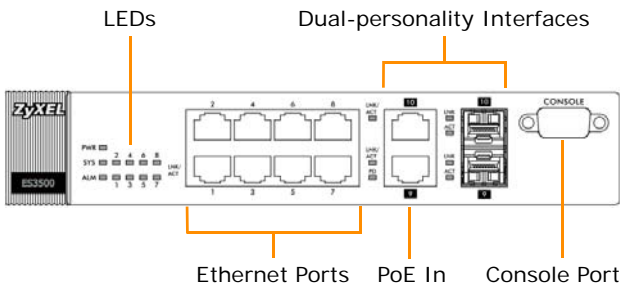
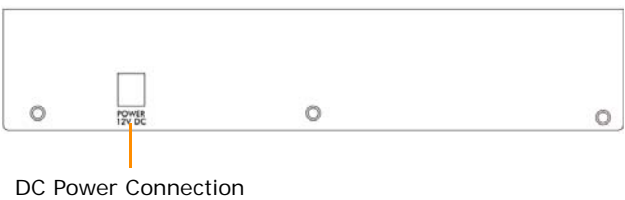


Figure 14 ES3500-8PD Rear Panel



The following table describes the connectors on the front and rear panels.

Table 3 Front and Rear Panel Connections

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
10/100 Mbps RJ-45 Ethernet Ports	Connect these ports to a computer, a hub, an Ethernet switch or router.
Dual-Personality Interfaces	Each dual-personality interface has one RJ-45 port and one Small Form-Factor Pluggable (SFP) slot (also called a mini-GBIC slot), with one port or transceiver active at a time. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>RJ-45 Ports: Connect these ports to high-bandwidth backbone network Ethernet switches using Category 5/5e/6 copper cables.</li><li>SFP Slots: Use SFP transceivers in these slots for connections to backbone Ethernet switches.</li></ul>
Console Port	The console port is for local configuration of the Switch.
AC Power Connection	Connect an appropriate power supply to this port.
DC Power Connection	Connect an appropriate power supply to this port.

### 3.1.1 Console Port

For local management, you can use a computer with terminal emulation software configured to the following parameters:

- VT100
- Terminal emulation
- 9600 bps
- No parity, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit
- No flow control

Connect the male 9-pin end of the console cable to the console port of the Switch. Connect the female end to a serial port (COM1, COM2 or other COM port) of your computer.

### 3.1.2 Ethernet Ports

The Switch has 10/100 Mbps auto-negotiating, auto-crossover Ethernet ports. In 10/100 Mbps Fast Ethernet, the speed can be 10 Mbps or 100 Mbps and the duplex mode can be half duplex or full duplex.

An auto-negotiating port can detect and adjust to the optimum Ethernet speed (10/100 Mbps) and duplex mode (full duplex or half duplex) of the connected device.

An auto-crossover (auto-MDI/MDI-X) port automatically works with a straight-through or crossover Ethernet cable.

The Switch has several dual-personality interfaces, (see [Figure 9 on page 28](#) and [Figure 13 on page 29](#)), each of which consists of an RJ-45 Ethernet port and SFP slot pair. The Switch activates one connection of each RJ-45 and SFP slot pair. The SFP slots have priority over the RJ-45 ports. This means that if an RJ-45 port and the corresponding SFP slot are connected at the same time, the RJ-45 port will be disabled.

When auto-negotiation is turned on, a Ethernet port negotiates with the peer automatically to determine the connection speed and duplex mode. If the peer Ethernet port does not support auto-negotiation or turns off this feature, the Switch determines the connection speed by detecting the signal on the cable and using half duplex mode. When the Switch's auto-negotiation is turned off, an Ethernet port uses the pre-configured speed and duplex mode when making a connection, thus requiring you to make sure that the settings of the peer Ethernet port are the same in order to connect.

#### 3.1.2.1 Default Ethernet Negotiation Settings

The factory default negotiation settings for the Gigabit ports on the Switch are:

- Speed: Auto
- Duplex: Auto
- Flow control: Off
- Link Aggregation: Disabled

### 3.1.2.2 Auto-crossover

All ports are auto-crossover, that is auto-MDIX ports (Media Dependent Interface Crossover), so you may use either a straight-through Ethernet cable or crossover Ethernet cable for all Gigabit port connections. Auto-crossover ports automatically sense whether they need to function as crossover or straight ports, so crossover cables can connect both computers and switches/hubs.

### 3.1.3 Transceiver Slots

These are slots for mini-GBIC (Gigabit Interface Converter) transceivers or 1000 Mbps Small Form-factor Pluggable (SFP) transceivers. A transceiver is a single unit that houses a transmitter and a receiver. The Switch does not come with transceivers. You must use transceivers that comply with the SFP Transceiver MultiSource Agreement (MSA). See the SFF committee's INF-8074i specification Rev 1.0 for details.

You can change transceivers while the Switch is operating. You can use different transceivers to connect to Ethernet switches with different types of fiber-optic or even copper cable connectors.

**To avoid possible eye injury, do not look into an operating fiber-optic module's connectors.**

- Type: SFP connection interface
- Connection speed: 1 Gigabit per second (Gbps)

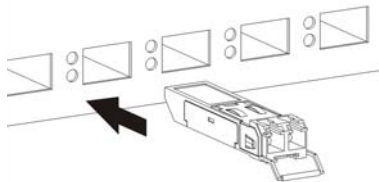
#### 3.1.3.1 Transceiver Installation

Use the following steps to install a mini-GBIC transceiver (SFP module).

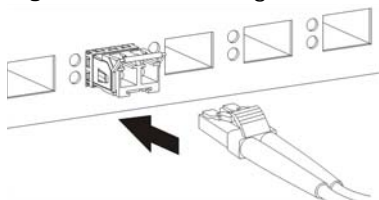
- 1 Insert the transceiver into the slot with the exposed section of PCB board facing down.
- 2 Press the transceiver firmly until it clicks into place.
- 3 The Switch automatically detects the installed transceiver. Check the LEDs to verify that it is functioning properly.
- 4 Close the transceiver's latch (latch styles vary).

- 5 Connect the fiber optic cables to the transceiver.

**Figure 15** Transceiver Installation Example



**Figure 16** Connecting the Fiber Optic Cables

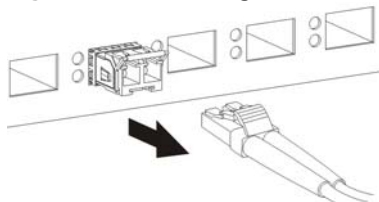


### 3.1.3.2 Transceiver Removal

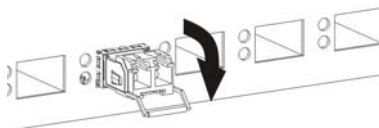
Use the following steps to remove a mini-GBIC transceiver (SFP module).

- 1 Remove the fiber optic cables from the transceiver.
- 2 Open the transceiver's latch (latch styles vary).
- 3 Pull the transceiver out of the slot.

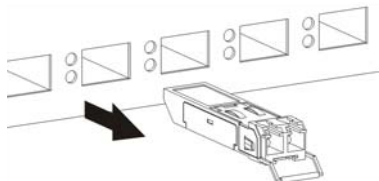
**Figure 17** Removing the Fiber Optic Cables



**Figure 18** Opening the Transceiver's Latch Example



**Figure 19** Transceiver Removal Example



### 3.1.4 Power Connector

Make sure you are using the correct power source as shown on the panel and that no objects obstruct the airflow of the fans.

Use the following procedures to connect the Switch to a power source after you have installed it.

Note: Check the power supply requirements shown on the rear panel, and make sure you are using an appropriate power source.

**Keep the power supply switch in the OFF position until you come to the procedure for turning on the power.**

Connect the female end of the power cord to the power socket of your Switch. Connect the other end of the cord to a power outlet. For models with power adaptors, connect the power adaptor that is provided to the Switch and then connect the power adaptor to a power outlet.

## 3.2 LEDs

After you connect the power to the Switch, view the LEDs to ensure proper functioning of the Switch and as an aid in troubleshooting.

**Table 4** ES3500-24 LED Descriptions

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
PWR	Green	On	The system is turned on.
		Off	The system is off.
SYS	Green	On	The system is on and functioning properly.
		Blinking	The system is rebooting and performing self-diagnostic tests.
		Off	The power is off or the system is not ready/malfunctioning.
ALM	Red	On	A hardware failure is detected.
		Off	The system is functioning normally.
10/100Base-TX Ethernet Ports			
1 ~ 24	Green	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 10 Mbps Ethernet network.
		on	The link to a 10 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
	Amber	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 100 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 100 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
		Off	The link to an Ethernet network is down.
Mini-GBIC Slots			
LNK	Green	On	The link to this port is up.
		Off	The link to this port is down.
ACT	Green	Blinking	This port is receiving or transmitting data.
1000Base-T Ethernet Ports (in Dual-personality Interface)			

**Table 4** ES3500-24 LED Descriptions (continued)

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
LNK/ACT	Green	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
	Amber	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 10 Mbps or a 100 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 10 Mbps or a 100 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
		Off	The link to an Ethernet network is down.
FDX	Amber	On	The Gigabit port is negotiating in full-duplex mode.
		Off	The Gigabit port is negotiating in half-duplex mode.

**Table 5** ES3500-24HP LED Descriptions

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
PWR	Green	On	The system is turned on.
		Off	The system is off.
SYS	Green	On	The system is on and functioning properly.
		Blinking	The system is rebooting and performing self-diagnostic tests.
		Off	The power is off or the system is not ready/malfunctioning.
ALM	Red	On	A hardware failure is detected.
		Off	The system is functioning normally.
10/100Base-TX Ethernet Ports			
LNK/ACT 1 ~ 24	Green	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 10 Mbps Ethernet network.
		on	The link to a 10 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
	Amber	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 100 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 100 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
		Off	The link to an Ethernet network is down.
PoE 1 ~ 24	Amber	On	This port is providing power over Ethernet.
		Off	This port is not providing power over Ethernet.
Mini-GBIC Slots			
LNK	Green	On	The link to a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
	Amber	On	The link to a 100 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
		Off	The link to an Ethernet network is down.
ACT	Green	Blinking	This port is receiving or transmitting data.
1000Base-T Ethernet Ports (in Dual-personality Interface)			

**Table 5** ES3500-24HP LED Descriptions (continued)

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
LNK/ACT	Green	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 10/1000 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 10/1000 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
	Amber	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 100 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 100 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
		Off	The link to an Ethernet network is down.

**Table 6** ES3500-8PD LED Descriptions

LED	COLOR	STATUS	DESCRIPTION
PWR	Green	On	The system is turned on.
		Off	The system is off.
SYS	Green	On	The system is on and functioning properly.
		Blinking	The system is rebooting and performing self-diagnostic tests.
		Off	The power is off or the system is not ready/malfunctioning.
ALM	Red	On	A hardware failure is detected.
		Off	The system is functioning normally.
10/100Base-TX Ethernet Ports			
LNK/ACT 1 ~ 8	Green	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 10 Mbps Ethernet network.
		on	The link to a 10 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
	Amber	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 100 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 100 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
		Off	The link to an Ethernet network is down.
Mini-GBIC Slots			
LNK	Green	On	The link to a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
	Amber	On	The link to a 100 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
		Off	The link to an Ethernet network is down.
ACT	Green	Blinking	This port is receiving or transmitting data.
1000Base-T Ethernet Ports (in Dual-personality Interface)			
LNK/ACT	Green	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 1000 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
	Amber	Blinking	The system is transmitting/receiving to/from a 10/100 Mbps Ethernet network.
		On	The link to a 10/100 Mbps Ethernet network is up.
		Off	The link to an Ethernet network is down.
PD (port 9)	Amber	On	This port is receiving power over Ethernet.
		Off	This port is not receiving power over Ethernet.





# The Web Configurator

This section introduces the configuration and functions of the web configurator.

## 4.1 Introduction

The web configurator is an HTML-based management interface that allows easy Switch setup and management via Internet browser. Use Internet Explorer 6.0 and later or Firefox 2.0 and later versions. The recommended screen resolution is 1024 by 768 pixels.

In order to use the web configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your device. Web pop-up blocking is enabled by default in Windows XP SP (Service Pack) 2.
- JavaScript (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).

## 4.2 System Login

- 1 Start your web browser.
- 2 Type "http://" and the IP address of the Switch (for example, the default management IP address is 192.168.1.1) in the Location or Address field. Press [ENTER].

- 3 The login screen appears. The default username is **admin** and associated default password is **1234**. The date and time display as shown if you have not configured a time server nor manually entered a time and date in the **General Setup** screen.

**Figure 20** Web Configurator: Login



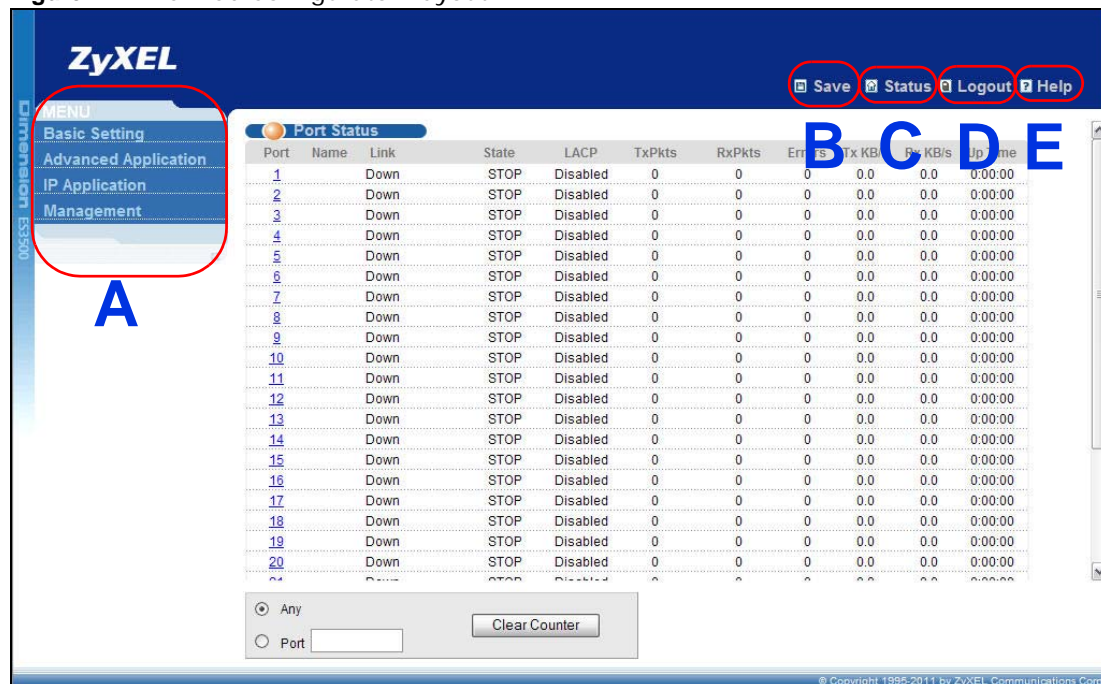
- 4 Click **OK** to view the first web configurator screen.

## 4.3 The Web Configurator Layout

The **Status** screen is the first screen that displays when you access the web configurator.

The following figure shows the navigating components of a web configurator screen.

**Figure 21** The Web Configurator Layout



**A** - Click the menu items to open submenu links, and then click on a submenu link to open the screen in the main window.

**B, C, D, E** - These are quick links which allow you to perform certain tasks no matter which screen you are currently working in.

**B** - Click this link to save your configuration into the Switch's nonvolatile memory. Nonvolatile memory is saved in the configuration file from which the Switch booted from and it stays the same even if the Switch's power is turned off. See [Section 38.3 on page 286](#) for information on saving your settings to a specific configuration file.





**C** - Click this link to go to the status page of the Switch.

**D** - Click this link to log out of the web configurator.

**E** - Click this link to display web help pages. The help pages provide descriptions for all of the configuration screens.

In the navigation panel, click a main link to reveal a list of submenu links.

**Table 7** Navigation Panel Sub-links Overview

BASIC SETTING	ADVANCED APPLICATION	IP APPLICATION	MANAGEMENT
			

Note: Only the ES3500-24HP has a PoE menu.

Note: Only the ES3500-8PD has a Green Ethernet menu.

The following table describes the links in the navigation panel.

**Table 8** Navigation Panel Links

LINK	DESCRIPTION
Basic Settings	
System Info	This link takes you to a screen that displays general system and hardware monitoring information.
General Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure general identification information and time settings for the Switch.
Switch Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can set up global Switch parameters such as VLAN type, MAC address learning, GARP and priority queues.
IP Setup	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the management IP address, subnet mask (necessary for Switch management) and DNS (domain name server).
Port Setup	This link takes you to screens where you can configure speed, flow control and priority settings for individual Switch ports.

**Table 8** Navigation Panel Links (continued)

LINK	DESCRIPTION
PoE	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the Switch to supply power over Ethernet.
Advanced Application	
VLAN	This link takes you to screens where you can configure port-based or 802.1Q VLAN (depending on what you configured in the <b>Switch Setup</b> menu). You can also configure a protocol based VLAN or a subnet based VLAN in these screens.
Static MAC Forwarding	This link takes you to screens where you can configure static MAC addresses for a port. These static MAC addresses do not age out.
Static Multicast Forwarding	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure static multicast MAC addresses for port(s). These static multicast MAC addresses do not age out.
Filtering	This link takes you to a screen to set up filtering rules.
Spanning Tree Protocol	This link takes you to screens where you can configure the RSTP/MRSTP/MSTP to prevent network loops.
Bandwidth Control	This link takes you to screens where you can cap the maximum bandwidth allowed on a port.
Broadcast Storm Control	This link takes you to a screen to set up broadcast filters.
Mirroring	This link takes you to screens where you can copy traffic from one port or ports to another port in order that you can examine the traffic from the first port without interference.
Link Aggregation	This link takes you to screen where you can logically aggregate physical links to form one logical, higher-bandwidth link.
Port Authentication	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure IEEE 802.1x port authentication as well as MAC authentication for clients communicating via the Switch.
Port Security	This link takes you to a screen where you can activate MAC address learning and set the maximum number of MAC addresses to learn on a port.
Classifier	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the Switch to group packets based on the specified criteria.
Policy Rule	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the Switch to perform special treatment on the grouped packets.
Queuing Method	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure queuing with associated queue weights for each port.
VLAN Stacking	This link takes you to screens where you can activate and configure VLAN stacking.
Multicast	This link takes you to screen where you can configure various multicast features, IGMP snooping and create multicast VLANs.
AAA	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure authentication, authorization and accounting services via external servers. The external servers can be either RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service) or TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus).
IP Source Guard	This link takes you to screens where you can configure filtering of unauthorized DHCP and ARP packets in your network.
Loop Guard	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure protection against network loops that occur on the edge of your network.
VLAN Mapping	This link takes you to screens where you can configure VLAN mapping settings on the Switch.
Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure L2PT (Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling) settings on the Switch.

**Table 8** Navigation Panel Links (continued)

LINK	DESCRIPTION
sFlow	This link takes you to screens where you can configure sFlow settings on the Switch.
PPPoE	This link takes you to screens where you can configure how the Switch gives a PPPoE termination server additional subscriber information that the server can use to identify and authenticate a PPPoE client.
Errdisable	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure CPU protection and error disable recovery.
Private VLAN	This link takes you to a screen where you can block traffic between ports in a VLAN on the Switch.
Green Ethernet	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure the Switch to reduce port power consumption. See <a href="#">Chapter 34 on page 266</a> for more details.
IP Application	
Static Routing	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure static routes. A static route defines how the Switch should forward traffic by configuring the TCP/IP parameters manually.
DiffServ	This link takes you to screens where you can enable DiffServ, configure marking rules and set DSCP-to-IEEE802.1p mappings.
DHCP	This link takes you to screens where you can configure the DHCP settings.
Management	
Maintenance	This link takes you to screens where you can perform firmware and configuration file maintenance as well as reboot the system.
Access Control	This link takes you to screens where you can change the system login password and configure SNMP and remote management.
Diagnostic	This link takes you to screens where you can view system logs and can test port(s).
Syslog	This link takes you to screens where you can setup system logs and a system log server.
Cluster Management	This link takes you to a screen where you can configure clustering management and view its status.
MAC Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the MAC address and VLAN ID of a device attached to a port. You can also view what kind of MAC address it is.
ARP Table	This link takes you to a screen where you can view the MAC address – IP address resolution table.
Configure Clone	This link takes you to a screen where you can copy attributes of one port to (an)other port(s).

### 4.3.1 Change Your Password

After you log in for the first time, it is recommended you change the default administrator password. Click **Management** > **Access Control** > **Logins** to display the next screen.

**Figure 22** Change Administrator Login Password

**Logins** Access Control

Administrator

Old Password   
 New Password   
 Retype to confirm

Please record your new password whenever you change it. The system will lock you out if you have forgotten your password.

**Edit Logins**

Login	User Name	Password	Retype to confirm
1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
4	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

## 4.4 Saving Your Configuration

When you are done modifying the settings in a screen, click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

Click the **Save** link in the upper right hand corner of the web configurator to save your configuration to nonvolatile memory. Nonvolatile memory refers to the Switch's storage that remains even if the Switch's power is turned off.

Note: Use the **Save** link when you are done with a configuration session.

## 4.5 Switch Lockout

You could block yourself (and all others) from using in-band-management (managing through the data ports) if you do one of the following:

- 1 Delete the management VLAN (default is VLAN 1).
- 2 Delete all port-based VLANs with the CPU port as a member. The "CPU port" is the management port of the Switch.
- 3 Filter all traffic to the CPU port.

- 4 Disable all ports.
- 5 Misconfigure the text configuration file.
- 6 Forget the password and/or IP address.
- 7 Prevent all services from accessing the Switch.
- 8 Change a service port number but forget it.

Note: Be careful not to lock yourself and others out of the Switch. If you do lock yourself out, try using out-of-band management (via the management port) to configure the Switch.

## 4.6 Resetting the Switch

If you lock yourself (and others) from the Switch or forget the administrator password, you will need to reload the factory-default configuration file or reset the Switch back to the factory defaults.

### 4.6.1 Reload the Configuration File

Uploading the factory-default configuration file replaces the current configuration file with the factory-default configuration file. This means that you will lose all previous configurations and the speed of the console port will be reset to the default of 9600bps with 8 data bit, no parity, one stop bit and flow control set to none. The password will also be reset to "1234" and the IP address to 192.168.1.1.

To upload the configuration file, do the following:

- 1 Connect to the console port using a computer with terminal emulation software. See [Section 3.1 on page 28](#) for details.
- 2 Disconnect and reconnect the Switch's power to begin a session. When you reconnect the Switch's power, you will see the initial screen.
- 3 When you see the message "Press any key to enter Debug Mode within 3 seconds ..." press any key to enter debug mode.
- 4 Type `atlc` after the "Enter Debug Mode" message.
- 5 Wait for the "Starting XMODEM upload" message before activating XMODEM upload on your terminal.



- 6 After a configuration file upload, type `atgo` to restart the Switch.

**Figure 23** Resetting the Switch: Via the Console Port

```

Bootbase Version: V1.05 | 03/02/2011 09:42:05
RAM: Size = 65536 Kbytes
DRAM POST: Testing: 65536K
OK
FLASH: AMD 128M *1

ZyNOS Version: ES3500-24_4.00(AABR.0) | 11/01/2011 14:14:51

Press any key to enter debug mode within 3 seconds.
.....
Enter Debug Mode
ras> atlc
Starting XMODEM upload (CRC mode)....
CCCCCCCCCCCCCCCC
Total 393216 bytes received.
Erasing..
.....
OK
ras> atgo

```

The Switch is now reinitialized with a default configuration file including the default password of "1234".

## 4.7 Logging Out of the Web Configurator

Click **Logout** in a screen to exit the web configurator. You have to log in with your password again after you log out. This is recommended after you finish a management session for security reasons.

**Figure 24** Web Configurator: Logout Screen



## 4.8 Help

The web configurator's online help has descriptions of individual screens and some supplementary information.

Click the **Help** link from a web configurator screen to view an online help description of that screen.



# Initial Setup Example

This chapter shows how to set up the Switch for an example network.

## 5.1 Overview

The following lists the configuration steps for the initial setup:

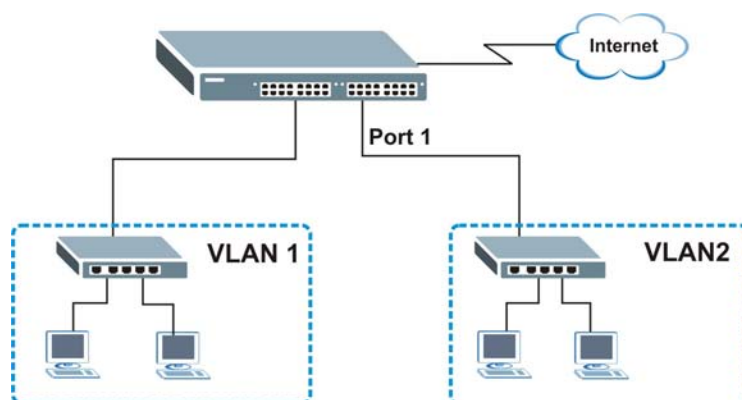
- Create a VLAN
- Set port VLAN ID
- Configure the Switch IP management address

### 5.1.1 Creating a VLAN

VLANs confine broadcast frames to the VLAN group in which the port(s) belongs. You can do this with port-based VLAN or tagged static VLAN with fixed port members.

In this example, you want to configure port 1 as a member of VLAN 2.

**Figure 25** Initial Setup Network Example: VLAN



- 1 Click **Advanced Application > VLAN** in the navigation panel and click the **Static VLAN** link.

VLAN Status      VLAN Port Setting      **Static VLAN**

VLAN Search by VID  Search

The Number of VLAN: 1.

Index	VID	Elapsed Time	Status
1	1	49:08:49	Static

Change Pages    Previous    Next

In the **Static VLAN** screen, select **ACTIVE**, enter a descriptive name in the **Name** field and enter

- 2 in the **VLAN Group ID** field for the **VLAN2** network.

Static VLAN      VLAN Status

ACTIVE ☒

Name

VLAN Group ID

Port	Control	Tagging
*	Normal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
1	<input type="radio"/> Normal <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
2	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
3	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
4	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
5	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
6	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
7	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
8	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
9	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
10	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging

Add    Cancel    Clear

Note: The **VLAN Group ID** field in this screen and the **VID** field in the **IP Setup** screen refer to the same VLAN ID.

- 3 Since the **VLAN2** network is connected to port 1 on the Switch, select **Fixed** to configure port 1 to be a permanent member of the VLAN only.
- 4 To ensure that VLAN-unaware devices (such as computers and hubs) can receive frames properly, clear the **TX Tagging** check box to set the Switch to remove VLAN tags before sending.

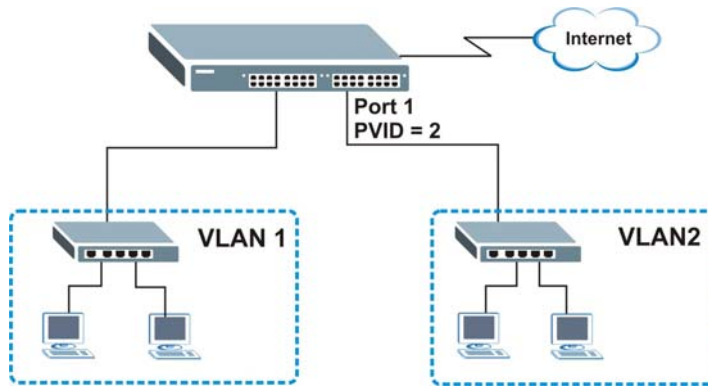
- 5 Click **Add** to save the settings to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

## 5.1.2 Setting Port VID

Use PVID to add a tag to incoming untagged frames received on that port so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines.

In the example network, configure 2 as the port VID on port 1 so that any untagged frames received on that port get sent to VLAN 2.

**Figure 26** Initial Setup Network Example: Port VID



Click **Advanced Applications > VLAN** in the navigation panel. Then click the **VLAN Port Setting**

The screenshot shows the 'VLAN Port Setting' configuration page. The 'PVID' field for Port 1 is highlighted with a red circle and set to 2. The page includes a table with columns for Port, Ingress Check, PVID, GVRP, Acceptable Frame Type, VLAN Trunking, and Isolation. The 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom.

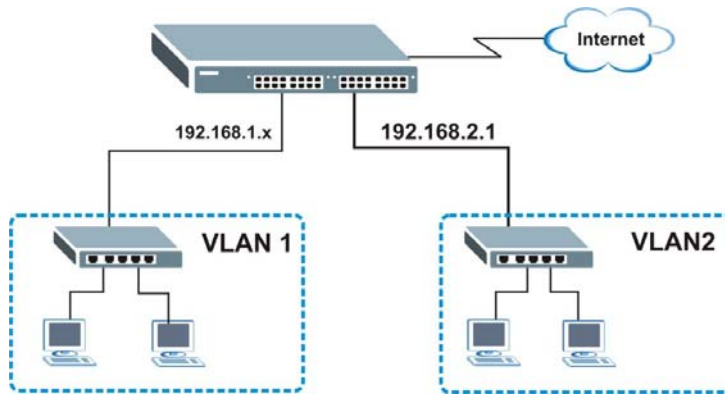
Port	Ingress Check	PVID	GVRP	Acceptable Frame Type	VLAN Trunking	Isolation
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 2 Enter 2 in the **PVID** field for port 1 and click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

## 5.2 Configuring Switch Management IP Address

The default management IP address of the Switch is 192.168.1.1. You can configure another IP address in a different subnet for management purposes. The following figure shows an example.

**Figure 27** Initial Setup Example: Management IP Address



- 1 Connect your computer to the Switch's port which is not in VLAN 2.
- 2 Open your web browser and enter 192.168.1.1 (the default management IP address) in the address bar to access the web configurator. See [Section 4.7 on page 45](#) for more information.
- 3 Click **Basic Setting** > **IP Setup** in the navigation panel.

The screenshot shows the 'IP Setup' web interface. The 'Default Management IP Address' section has 'Static IP Address' selected. The fields are: IP Address (192.168.1.1), IP Subnet Mask (255.255.255.0), and Default Gateway (0.0.0.0). The 'Management IP Addresses' section is highlighted with a red circle. It contains a table with the following data:

IP Address	IP Subnet Mask	VID	Default Gateway
192.168.2.1	255.255.255.0	2	0.0.0.0

Below the table are 'Add' and 'Cancel' buttons. At the bottom of the interface, there is a table with columns: Index, IP Address, IP Subnet Mask, VID, Default Gateway, and Delete. Below this table are 'Delete' and 'Cancel' buttons.

- 4 Configure the related fields in the **IP Setup** screen.

- 5 For the **VLAN2** network, enter 192.168.2.1 as the IP address and 255.255.255.0 as the subnet mask.
- 6 In the **VID** field, enter the ID of the VLAN group to which you want this management IP address to belong. This is the same as the VLAN ID you configure in the **Static VLAN** screen.
- 7 Click **Add** to save your changes back to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

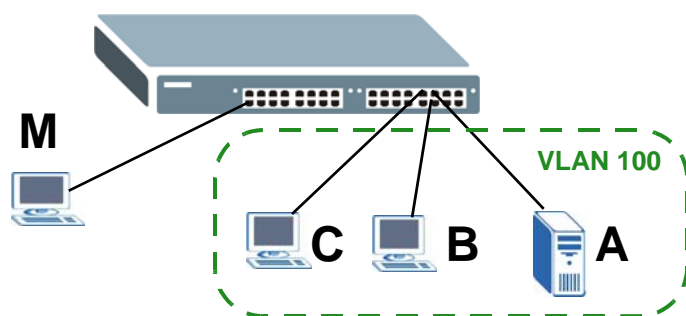
## Tutorials

This chapter provides some examples of using the web configurator to set up and use the Switch. The tutorials include:

- [How to Use DHCP Snooping on the Switch](#)
- [How to Use DHCP Relay on the Switch](#)
- [How to Use PPPoE IA on the Switch](#)
- [How to Use Error Disable and Recovery on the Switch](#)
- [How to Set Up a Guest VLAN](#)
- [How to Do Port Isolation in a VLAN](#)

### 6.1 How to Use DHCP Snooping on the Switch

You only want DHCP server **A** connected to port 5 to assign IP addresses to all devices in VLAN 100. Create a VLAN containing ports 5, 6 and 7. Connect a computer (**M**) to the Switch's port which is not in VLAN 100.



Note: For related information about DHCP snooping, see [Section 26.5 on page 223](#).

The settings in this tutorial are as the following.

**Table 9** Settings in this Tutorial

HOST	PORT CONNECTED	VLAN	PVID	DHCP SNOOPING PORT TRUSTED
DHCP Server ( <b>A</b> )	5	1 and 100	100	Yes
DHCP Client ( <b>B</b> )	6	1 and 100	100	No
DHCP Client ( <b>C</b> )	7	1 and 100	100	No

- 1 Access the Switch through **http://192.168.1.1**. Log into the Switch by entering the username (default: **admin**) and password (default: **1234**).



- 2 Go to **Advanced Application > VLAN > Static VLAN**, and create a VLAN with ID of 100. Add ports 5, 6 and 7 in the VLAN by selecting **Fixed** in the **Control** field as shown.

Deselect **Tx Tagging** because you don't want outgoing traffic to contain this VLAN tag.

Click **Add**.

**Static VLAN** VLAN Status

ACTIVE ☒

Name

VLAN Group ID

Port	Control			Tagging
*	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
1	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
2	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
3	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
4	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
5	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
6	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
7	<input type="radio"/> Normal	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
8	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
9	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal	<input type="radio"/> Fixed	<input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging

☒ Fixed ☐ Normal ☐ Forbidden

- 3 Go to **Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting**, and set the PVID of the ports 5, 6 and 7 to 100. This tags untagged incoming frames on ports 5, 6 and 7 with the tag 100.

**VLAN Port Setting** Subnet Based Vlan Protocol Based Vlan VLAN Status

GVRP ☐

Port	Ingress Check	PVID	GVRP	Acceptable Frame Type	VLAN Trunking	Isolation
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="text" value="All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="text" value="All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="text" value="All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="text" value="All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="text" value="All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="text" value="All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="text" value="All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="100"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="text" value="All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="1"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="text" value="All"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 4 Go to **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP snooping > Configure**, activate and specify VLAN 100 as the DHCP VLAN as shown. Click **Apply**.

**DHCP Snooping Configure** [Port](#) [VLAN](#) [DHCP Snooping](#)

Active ☒  
 DHCP Vlan ☐ Disable ☒ 100

**Database**

Agent URL   
 Timeout interval  seconds  
 Write delay interval  seconds

Renew DHCP Snooping URL

- 5 Click the **Port** link at the top right corner.

[Port](#) [VLAN](#) [DHCP Snooping](#)

- 6 The **DHCP Snooping Port Configure** screen appears. Select **Trusted** in the **Server Trusted state** field for port 5 because the DHCP server is connected to port 5. Keep ports 6 and 7 **Untrusted** because they are connected to DHCP clients. Click **Apply**.

**DHCP Snooping Port Configure** [Configure](#)

Port	Server Trusted state	Rate (pps)
*	Untrusted	
1	Untrusted	0
2	Untrusted	0
3	Untrusted	0
4	Untrusted	0
5	Trusted	0
6	Untrusted	0
7	Untrusted	0
8	Untrusted	0

- 7 Go to **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP snooping > Configure > VLAN**, show VLAN 100 by entering 100 in the **Start VID** and **End VID** fields and click **Apply**. Then select **Yes** in the **Enabled** field of the VLAN 100 entry shown at the bottom section of the screen.

If you want to add more information in the DHCP request packets such as source VLAN ID or system name, you can also select the **Option82** and **Information** fields in the entry. See [Section 26.5.1 on page 225](#).

The screenshot shows the 'DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure' page. At the top, there are input fields for 'Start VID' and 'End VID', both set to 100. An 'Apply' button is highlighted with a red circle. Below this is a table with columns: VID, Enabled, Option82, and Information. The table has two rows: one for '\*' and one for '100'. In the '100' row, the 'Enabled' dropdown is set to 'Yes' (highlighted with a red circle). Below the table, there are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons, with 'Apply' also highlighted with a red circle.

- 8 Click **Save** at the top right corner of the web configurator to save the configuration permanently.
- 9 Connect your DHCP server to port 5 and a computer (as DHCP client) to either port 6 or 7. The computer should be able to get an IP address from the DHCP server. If you put the DHCP server on port 6 or 7, the computer will not able to get an IP address.
- 10 To check if DHCP snooping works, go to **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard**, you should see an IP assignment with the type **dhcp-snooping** as shown.

The screenshot shows the 'IP Source Guard' page with the 'DHCP Snooping' tab selected. A table displays the following information:

Index	MAC Address	IP Address	Lease	Type	VID	Port
1	00:02:00:00:00:1c	10.10.1.16	6d23h17m 0s	dhcp-snooping	100	7

You can also telnet or log into the Switch's console. Use the command "show dhcp snooping binding" to see the DHCP snooping binding table as shown next.

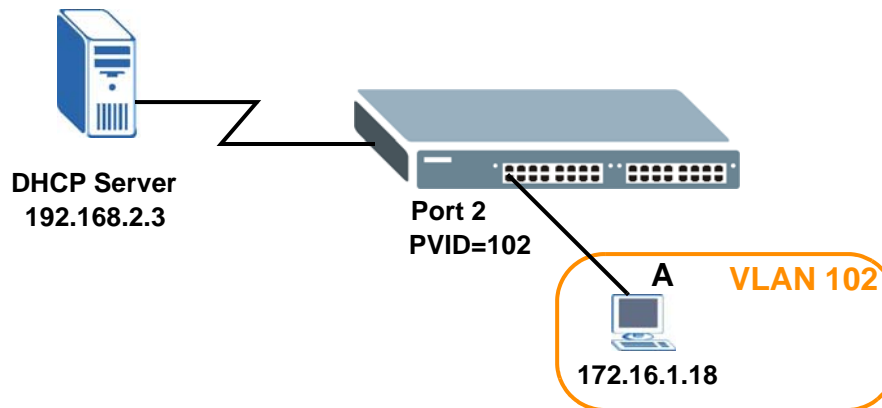
```
sysname# show dhcp snooping binding
      MacAddress      IpAddress      Lease      Type      VLAN      Port
-----
00:02:00:00:00:1c    10.10.1.16    6d23h59m20s  dhcp-snooping  100        7
Total number of bindings: 1
```

## 6.2 How to Use DHCP Relay on the Switch

This tutorial describes how to configure your Switch to forward DHCP client requests to a specific DHCP server. The DHCP server can then assign a specific IP address based on the information in the DHCP requests.

## 6.2.1 DHCP Relay Tutorial Introduction

In this example, you have configured your DHCP server (192.168.2.3) and want to have it assign a specific IP address (say 172.16.1.18) and gateway information to DHCP client **A** based on the system name, VLAN ID and port number in the DHCP request. Client **A** connects to the Switch's port 2 in VLAN 102.



## 6.2.2 Creating a VLAN

Follow the steps below to configure port 2 as a member of VLAN 102.

- 1 Access the web configurator through the Switch's port which is not in VLAN 102.
- 2 Go to **Basic Setting > Switch Setup** and set the VLAN type to **802.1Q**. Click **Apply** to save the settings to the run-time memory.

The screenshot shows the 'Switch Setup' web interface. The 'VLAN Type' is set to '802.1Q'. The interface includes the following sections:

- Smart Isolation:** Active (checkbox).
- MAC Address Learning:** Aging Time (300 seconds), Join Timer (200 milliseconds).
- GARP Timer:** Leave Timer (600 milliseconds), Leave All Timer (10000 milliseconds).
- Priority Queue Assignment:** Level7 (7), Level6 (6), Level5 (5), Level4 (4), Level3 (3), Level2 (1), Level1 (0), Level0 (2).

Buttons for 'Apply' and 'Cancel' are at the bottom.

- 3 Click **Advanced Application > VLAN > Static VLAN**.
- 4 In the **Static VLAN** screen, select **ACTIVE**, enter a descriptive name (VLAN 102 for example) in the **Name** field and enter 102 in the **VLAN Group ID** field.
- 5 Select **Fixed** to configure port 2 to be a permanent member of this VLAN.
- 6 Clear the **TX Tagging** check box to set the Switch to remove VLAN tags before sending.
- 7 Click **Add** to save the settings to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

**Static VLAN** VLAN Status

ACTIVE ☒

Name

VLAN Group ID

Port	Control	Tagging
*	Normal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
1	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
2	<input type="radio"/> Normal <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
3	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
4	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
5	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
24	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
25	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
26	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
27	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
28	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging

- 8 Click the **VLAN Status** link in the **Static VLAN** screen and then the **VLAN Port Setting** link in the **VLAN Status** screen.

**VLAN Status** VLAN Port Setting Static VLAN

VLAN Search by VID

The Number of VLAN: 2.

Index	VID	Elapsed Time	Status
1	1	49:52:07	Static
2	102	0:00:15	Static

Change Pages

- 9 Enter 102 in the **PVID** field for port 2 to add a tag to incoming untagged frames received on that port so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines.
- 10 Click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory.

**VLAN Port Setting** | Subnet Based Vlan | Protocol Based Vlan | VLAN Status

GVRP ☐

Port	Ingress Check	PVID	GVRP	Acceptable Frame Type	VLAN Trunking	Isolation
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	102	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 11 Click the **Save** link in the upper right corner of the web configurator to save your configuration permanently.

### 6.2.3 Configuring DHCP Relay

Follow the steps below to enable DHCP relay on the Switch and allow the Switch to add relay agent information (such as the VLAN ID) to DHCP requests.

- 1 Click **IP Application > DHCP** and then the **Global** link to open the **DHCP Relay** screen.
- 2 Select the **Active** check box.
- 3 Enter the DHCP server's IP address (192.168.2.3 in this example) in the **Remote DHCP Server 1** field.
- 4 Select the **Option 82** and the **Information** check boxes.

- 5 Click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory.

DHCP Relay <span style="float: right;">Status</span>	
Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Remote DHCP Server 1	192.168.2.3
Remote DHCP Server 2	0.0.0.0
Remote DHCP Server 3	0.0.0.0
Relay Agent Information	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Option 82
Information	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ES3500
<input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

- 6 Click the **Save** link in the upper right corner of the web configurator to save your configuration permanently.
- 7 The DHCP server can then assign a specific IP address based on the DHCP request.

## 6.2.4 Troubleshooting

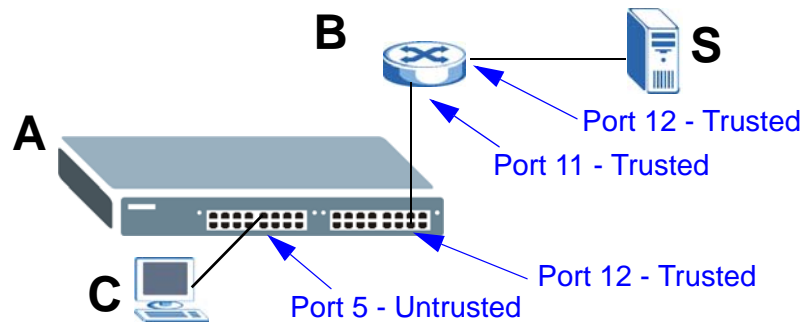
Check the client **A**'s IP address. If it did not receive the IP address 172.16.1.18, make sure:

- 1 Client **A** is connected to the Switch's port 2 in VLAN 102.
- 2 You configured the correct VLAN ID, port number and system name for DHCP relay on both the DHCP server and the Switch.
- 3 You clicked the **Save** link on the Switch to have your settings take effect.

## 6.3 How to Use PPPoE IA on the Switch

You want to configure PPPoE Intermediate Agent on the Switch (**A**) to pass a subscriber's information to a PPPoE server (**S**). There is another switch (**B**) between switch **A** and server **S**.

Switch **B** is connected to switch **A**. In this way, PPPoE server **S** can identify subscriber **C** and may apply different settings to it.



Note: For related information about PPPoE IA, see [Section 31.3 on page 252](#).

The settings in this tutorial are as follows:

**Table 10** Settings in this Tutorial

SWITCH	PORT CONNECTED	VLAN	CIRCUIT-ID	REMOTE-ID	PPPOE IA PORT TRUSTED
<b>A</b>	Port 5 (to <b>C</b> )	1	userC	00134900000A	Untrusted
	Port 12 (to <b>B</b> )	1	N/A	N/A	Trusted
<b>B</b>	Port 11 (to <b>A</b> )	1	N/A	N/A	Trusted
	Port 12 (to <b>S</b> )	1	N/A	N/A	Trusted

### 6.3.1 Configuring Switch A

- 1 Click **Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent**. Select **Active** then click **Apply**.

The screenshot shows the 'Intermediate Agent' configuration window. At the top, there are tabs for 'Port', 'VLAN', and 'PPPoE'. The 'Active' checkbox is checked and circled in red. Below it, the 'access-node-identifier' field contains the text 'ES3500'. The 'circuit-id' section is expanded, showing several fields: 'Active' (unchecked), 'identifier-string' (empty), 'option' (set to 'spv'), and 'delimiter' (set to '/'). At the bottom of the window are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Click **Port** on the top of the screen.



- 2 Select **Untrusted** for port 5 and enter **userC** as **Circuit-id** and **00134900000A** as **Remote-id**. Select **Trusted** for port 12 and then leave the other fields empty. Click **Apply**.

Port	Server Trusted State	Circuit-id	Remote-id
*	Untrusted		
1	Untrusted		
2	Untrusted		
3	Untrusted		
4	Untrusted		
5	Untrusted	userC	00134900000A
6	Untrusted		
7	Untrusted		
8	Untrusted		
9	Untrusted		
10	Untrusted		
11	Untrusted		
12	Trusted		
13	Untrusted		
14	Untrusted		

Then Click **Intermediate Agent** on the top of the screen.

- 3 The **Intermediate Agent** screen appears. Click **VLAN** on the top of the screen.

Intermediate Agent

Port **VLAN** PPPoE

Active ☒

access-node-identifier ES3500

circuit-id

Active ☐

identifier-string

option spv

delimiter /

Apply Cancel

- 4 Enter 1 for both **Start VID** and **End VID** since both the Switch and PPPoE server are in VLAN 1 in this example. Click **Apply**.

The screenshot shows the 'VLAN' configuration window with the 'Intermediate Agent' tab selected. A red oval highlights the 'Start VID' and 'End VID' fields, both of which contain the value '1'. Below these fields is an 'Apply' button. At the bottom of the window is a table with four columns: 'VID', 'Enabled', 'Circuit-id', and 'Remote-id'.

VID	Enabled	Circuit-id	Remote-id
*	No	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

At the bottom of the table are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

- 5 Then select **Yes** to enable PPPoE IA in VLAN 1 and also select **Circuit-id** and **Remote-id** to allow the Switch to add these two strings to frames tagged with VLAN 1 and pass to the PPPoE server. Click **Apply**.

The screenshot shows the same 'VLAN' configuration window. The 'Start VID' and 'End VID' fields are now empty. The 'Apply' button is still present. The table at the bottom now has two rows. The first row (VID \*) has 'Enabled' set to 'No'. The second row (VID 1) has 'Enabled' set to 'Yes', and both 'Circuit-id' and 'Remote-id' checkboxes are checked. A red oval highlights the second row. 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom.

VID	Enabled	Circuit-id	Remote-id
*	No	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	Yes	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

### 6.3.2 Configuring Switch B

The example uses another ES3500-24 as switch **B**.

- 1 Click **Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent**. Select **Active** then click **Apply**.

Intermediate Agent

Port VLAN PPPoE

Active ☒

access-node-identifier ES3500

circuit-id

Active ☐

identifier-string

option spv

delimiter /

Apply Cancel

Click **Port** on the top of the screen.

- 2 Select **Trusted** for ports 11 and 12 and then click **Apply**.

Port VLAN Intermediate Agent

Port	Server Trusted State	Circuit-id	Remote-id
*	Untrusted		
1	Untrusted		
2	Untrusted		
3	Untrusted		
4	Untrusted		
5	Untrusted		
6	Untrusted		
7	Untrusted		
8	Untrusted		
9	Untrusted		
10	Untrusted		
11	Trusted		
12	Trusted		
13	Untrusted		
14	Untrusted		

Then Click **Intermediate Agent** on the top of the screen.

- 3 The **Intermediate Agent** screen appears. Click **VLAN** on the top of the screen.

Intermediate Agent

Port **VLAN** PPPoE

Active ☒

access-node-identifier ES3500

circuit-id

Active ☐

identifier-string

option spv

delimiter /

Apply Cancel

- 4 Enter 1 for both **Start VID** and **End VID**. Click **Apply**.

VLAN Intermediate Agent

Show VLAN Start VID 1 End VID 1

Apply

VID	Enabled	Circuit-id	Remote-id
*	No		

Apply Cancel

- 5 Then select **Yes** to enable PPPoE IA in VLAN 1 and also select **Circuit-id** and **Remote-id** to allow the Switch to add these two strings to frames tagged with VLAN 1 and pass to the PPPoE server. Click **Apply**.

VLAN Intermediate Agent

Show VLAN Start VID End VID

Apply

VID	Enabled	Circuit-id	Remote-id
*	No		
1	Yes	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Apply Cancel

The settings are completed now. If you miss some settings above, subscriber **C** could not successfully receive an IP address assigned by the PPPoE Server. If this happens, make sure you follow the steps exactly in this tutorial.

## 6.4 How to Use Error Disable and Recovery on the Switch

This tutorial shows you how to shut down a port when:

- there is a loop occurred

or

- too many ARP requests (over 100 packets per second) received on a port

You also want the Switch to wait for a period of time (10 minutes) before resuming the port automatically, after the problem(s) are gone. Loop guard and Errdisable features are helpful for this demand.

Note: Refer to [Section 27.1 on page 234](#) and [Section 32.4 on page 259](#) for more information about Loop Guard and Errdisable.

To configure the settings:

- 1 First, click **Advanced Application > Loop Guard**. Select the **Active** option in the first section to enable loop guard on the Switch. Then select the **Active** option of the first entry (port \*) to enable loop guard for all ports. Click **Apply**.

Port	Active
*	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
6	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
7	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
8	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
9	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
11	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
12	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
13	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

- Click **Advanced Application > Errdisable > CPU Protection**, select **ARP** as the reason, enter 100 as the rate limit (packets per second) for the first entry (port \*) to apply the setting to all ports. Then click **Apply**.

**CPU protection** Errdisable

Reason: **ARP**

Port	Rate Limit (pkt/s)
*	100
1	100
2	100
3	100
4	100
5	100
6	100
7	100
8	100
9	100
10	100
11	100
12	100
13	100

- Click **Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Detect**, select **Active** for cause **ARP** and **inactive-port** as the mode. Then click **Apply**.

**Errdisable Detect** Errdisable

Cause	Active	Mode
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	inactive-port
ARP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	inactive-port
BPDU	<input type="checkbox"/>	inactive-port
IGMP	<input type="checkbox"/>	inactive-port

Apply Cancel

- Click **Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Recovery**, select **Active** and **Timer Status** for **loopguard** and **ARP** entries. Also enter 180 (180 seconds = 3 minutes) in the **Interval** field for both entries. Then click **Apply**.

**Errdisable Recovery** Errdisable

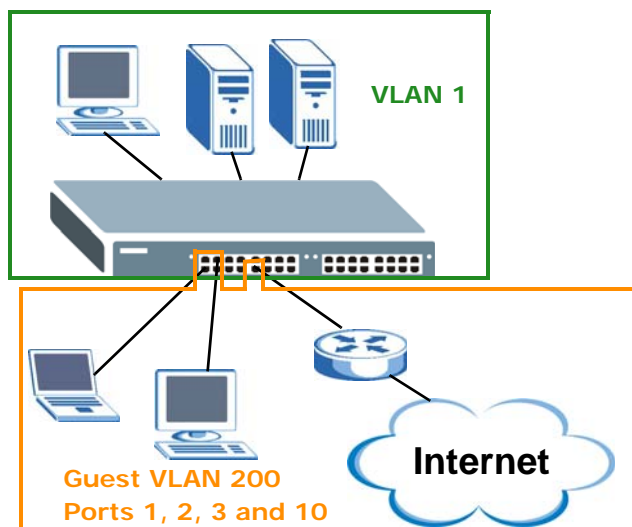
Active ☒

Reason	Timer Status	Interval
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	
loopguard	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	180
ARP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	180
BPDU	<input type="checkbox"/>	300
IGMP	<input type="checkbox"/>	300

Apply Cancel

## 6.5 How to Set Up a Guest VLAN

All ports on the Switch are in VLAN 1 by default. Say you enable IEEE 802.1x authentication on ports 1 to 8. Clients that connect to these ports should provide the correct user name and password in order to access the ports. You want to assign clients that connect to ports 1, 2 or 3 to a guest VLAN (200 for example) before they can authenticate with the authentication server. In this guest VLAN, clients can surf the Internet through the default gateway attached to port 10, but are not allowed to access other network resources, such as the mail server or local data base.



### 6.5.1 Creating a Guest VLAN

Follow the steps below to configure port 1, 2, 3 and 10 as a member of VLAN 200.

- 1 Access the web configurator through the Switch's port which is not in VLAN 200.

- Go to **Basic Setting > Switch Setup** and set the VLAN type to **802.1Q**. Click **Apply** to save the settings to the run-time memory.

**Switch Setup**

**VLAN Type**  
☒ 802.1Q  
☐ Port Based

**Smart Isolation** Active ☐

**MAC Address Learning**  
 Aging Time 300 seconds  
 Join Timer 200 milliseconds  
 Leave Timer 600 milliseconds  
 Leave All Timer 10000 milliseconds

**GARP Timer**

**Priority Queue Assignment**

Level7	7 ▼
Level6	6 ▼
Level5	5 ▼
Level4	4 ▼
Level3	3 ▼
Level2	1 ▼
Level1	0 ▼
Level0	2 ▼

Apply Cancel

- Click **Advanced Application > VLAN > Static VLAN**.
- In the **Static VLAN** screen, select **ACTIVE**, enter a descriptive name (VLAN 200 for example) in the **Name** field and enter 200 in the **VLAN Group ID** field.
- Select **Fixed** to configure ports 1, 2, 3 and 10 to be permanent members of this VLAN.
- Clear the **TX Tagging** check box to set the Switch to remove VLAN tags before sending frames out of these ports.



- 7 Click **Add** to save the settings to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

**Static VLAN** VLAN Status

ACTIVE ☒

Name: VLAN 200

VLAN Group ID: 200

Port	Control	Tagging
*	Normal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
1	<input type="radio"/> Normal <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
2	<input type="radio"/> Normal <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
3	<input type="radio"/> Normal <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
4	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
5	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
6	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
7	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
8	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
9	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
10	<input type="radio"/> Normal <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
11	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging

- 8 Click the **VLAN Status** link in the **Static VLAN** screen and then the **VLAN Port Setting** link in the **VLAN Status** screen.

**VLAN Status** VLAN Port Setting VLAN Port Setting Static VLAN

VLAN Search by VID:

The Number of VLAN: 4.

Index	VID	Elapsed Time	Status
1	1	2:59:05	Static
2	102	2:59:05	Static
3	123	2:59:05	Static
4	200	0:00:07	Static

Change Pages:

- 9 Enter 200 in the **PVID** field for ports 1, 2, 3 and 10 to add a tag to incoming untagged frames received on these ports so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines.

- 10 Click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory.

VLAN Port Setting   Subnet Based Vlan   Protocol Based Vlan   VLAN Status

GVRP ☐

Port	Ingress Check	PVID	GVRP	Acceptable Frame Type	VLAN Trunking	Isolation
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	200	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	200	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	200	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	200	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All <input type="button" value="v"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 11 Click the **Save** link in the upper right corner of the web configurator to save your configuration permanently.

### 6.5.2 Enabling IEEE 802.1x Port Authentication

Follow the steps below to enable port authentication to validate access to ports 1~8 to clients based on a RADIUS server.

- 1 Click **Advanced Application > Port Authentication** and then the **Click Here** link for **802.1x**.

Port Authentication

802.1x [Click here](#)

MAC Authentication [Click here](#)

- 2 Select the first **Active** checkbox to enable 802.1x authentication on the Switch.

Select the **Active** checkboxes for ports 1 to 8 to turn on 802.1x authentication on the selected ports.

Click **Apply**.

**802.1x** Port Authentication Guest Vlan

Active ☒

Port	Active	Max-Req	Reauth	Reauth-period secs	Quiet-period secs	Tx-period secs	Supp-Timeout secs
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		On ▼				
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
6	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
7	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
8	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30

Apply Cancel

### 6.5.3 Enabling Guest VLAN

- 1 Click the **Guest Vlan** link in the **802.1x** screen.

- 2 Select **Active** and enter the guest VLAN ID (200 in this example) on ports 1, 2 and 3. The Switch puts unauthenticated clients in the specified guest VLAN.

Set **Host-mode** to **Multi-Secure** to have the Switch authenticate each client that connects to one of these ports, and specify the maximum number of clients that the Switch will authenticate on each of these port (5 in this example).

Click **Apply**.

Port	Active	Guest Vlan	Host-mode	Multi-Secure Num
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		Multi-Host	
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	200	Multi-Secure	5
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	200	Multi-Secure	5
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	200	Multi-Secure	5
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1

Apply Cancel

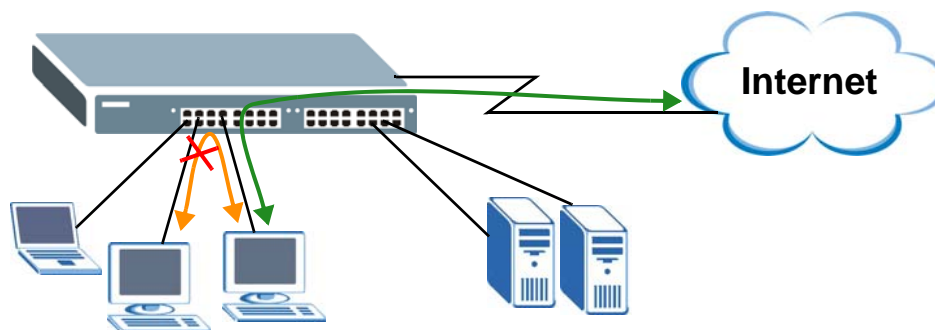
- 3 Click the **Save** link in the upper right corner of the web configurator to save your configuration permanently.

Clients that attach to port 1, 2 or 3 and fail to authenticate with the RADIUS server now should be in VLAN 200 and can access the Internet, but cannot communicate with devices in VLAN 1.

## 6.6 How to Do Port Isolation in a VLAN

You want to prevent communications between ports in a VLAN but still allow them to access the Internet or network resources through the uplink port in the same VLAN. You use private VLAN to

do port isolation in a VLAN instead of assigning each port to a separate VLAN and creating a different IP routing domain for each individual port.



In this example, you put ports 2 to 4 and 25 in VLAN 123 and create a private VLAN rule for VLAN 123 to block traffic between ports 2, 3 and 4.

## 6.6.1 Creating a VLAN

Follow the steps below to configure port 2, 3, 4 and 25 as a member of VLAN 123.

- 1 Access the web configurator through the Switch's port which is not in VLAN 123.
- 2 Go to **Basic Setting > Switch Setup** and set the VLAN type to **802.1Q**. Click **Apply** to save the settings to the run-time memory.

Switch Setup			
VLAN Type		<input checked="" type="radio"/> 802.1Q <input type="radio"/> Port Based	
Smart Isolation	Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
MAC Address Learning	Aging Time	300	seconds
	Join Timer	200	milliseconds
GARP Timer	Leave Timer	600	milliseconds
	Leave All Timer	10000	milliseconds
Priority Queue Assignment	Level7	7	
	Level6	6	
	Level5	5	
	Level4	4	
	Level3	3	
	Level2	1	
	Level1	0	
	Level0	2	
		Apply	Cancel

- 3 Click **Advanced Application > VLAN > Static VLAN**.
- 4 In the **Static VLAN** screen, select **ACTIVE**, enter a descriptive name (VLAN 123 for example) in the **Name** field and enter 123 in the **VLAN Group ID** field.

- 5 Select **Fixed** to configure ports 2, 3, 4 and 25 to be permanent members of this VLAN.
- 6 Clear the **TX Tagging** check box to set the Switch to remove VLAN tags before sending frames out of these ports.
- 7 Click **Add** to save the settings to the run-time memory. Settings in the run-time memory are lost when the Switch's power is turned off.

**Static VLAN** VLAN Status

ACTIVE ☒

Name: VLAN123

VLAN Group ID: 123

Port	Control	Tagging
*	Normal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
1	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
2	<input type="radio"/> Normal <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
3	<input type="radio"/> Normal <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
4	<input type="radio"/> Normal <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
5	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
6	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
7	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
8	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
9	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
24	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
25	<input type="radio"/> Normal <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
26	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
27	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging
28	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Normal <input type="radio"/> Fixed <input type="radio"/> Forbidden	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tx Tagging

**Add** Cancel Clear

- 8 Click the **VLAN Status** link in the **Static VLAN** screen and then the **VLAN Port Setting** link in the **VLAN Status** screen.

**VLAN Status** VLAN Port Setting Static VLAN

VLAN Search by VID:  Search

The Number of VLAN: 3.

Index	VID	Elapsed Time	Status
1	1	5:19:47	Static
2	102	5:19:47	Static
3	123	0:05:28	Static

Change Pages Previous Next



- 9 Enter 123 in the **PVID** field for ports 2, 3, 4 and 25 to add a tag to incoming untagged frames received on these ports so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines.
- 10 Click **Apply** to save your changes back to the run-time memory.

Port	Ingress Check	PVID	GVRP	Acceptable Frame Type	VLAN Trunking	Isolation
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	123	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	123	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	123	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
25	<input type="checkbox"/>	123	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
26	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 11 Click the **Save** link in the upper right corner of the web configurator to save your configuration permanently.

## 6.6.2 Creating a Private VLAN Rule

Follow the steps below to configure private VLAN for VLAN 123.

- 1 Click **Advanced Application > Private VLAN**.

- 2 In the **Private VLAN** screen, select **Active**.

Enter a descriptive name (PrivateVLAN123 for example) in the **Name** field and enter 123 in the **VLAN ID** field.

Click **Add**.

The screenshot shows the 'Private VLAN' configuration interface. At the top, there's a title bar with an orange circle icon and the text 'Private VLAN'. Below this is a form with three fields: 'Active' with a checked checkbox, 'Name' with the text 'PrivateVLAN123', and 'VLAN ID' with the text '123'. Below the form are three buttons: 'Add', 'Cancel', and 'Clear'. At the bottom of the interface is a table with five columns: 'Index', 'Active', 'Name', 'VLAN', and 'Delete'. Below the table are two buttons: 'Delete' and 'Cancel'.

- 3 Click the **Save** link in the upper right corner of the web configurator to save your configuration permanently.

Ports 2, 3 and 4 in this VLAN will be added to the isolated port list automatically and cannot send traffic to each other.

From port 2, 3, or 4, you should be able to access the device that attaches to port 25, such as a server or default gateway.



---

# **PART II**

## **Technical Reference**

---



# System Status and Port Statistics

This chapter describes the system status (web configurator home page) and port details screens.

## 7.1 Overview

The home screen of the web configurator displays a port statistical summary with links to each port showing statistical details.

## 7.2 Port Status Summary

To view the port statistics, click **Status** in all web configurator screens to display the **Status** screen as shown next.

Note: Different models have different numbers of ports, so these screens may show a different number of ports from the model you're using.

**Figure 28** Status

Port Status										
Port	Name	Link	State	LACP	TxPkts	RxPkts	Errors	Tx KB/s	Rx KB/s	Up Time
<a href="#">1</a>		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
<a href="#">2</a>		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
<a href="#">3</a>		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
<a href="#">4</a>		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
<a href="#">5</a>		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
<a href="#">6</a>		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
<a href="#">7</a>		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
<a href="#">8</a>		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
<a href="#">9</a>		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
<a href="#">10</a>		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
<a href="#">11</a>		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
<a href="#">12</a>		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
<a href="#">13</a>		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
<a href="#">14</a>		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
<a href="#">15</a>		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00
<a href="#">16</a>		Down	STOP	Disabled	0	0	0	0.0	0.0	0:00:00

☒ Any
 ☐ Port

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

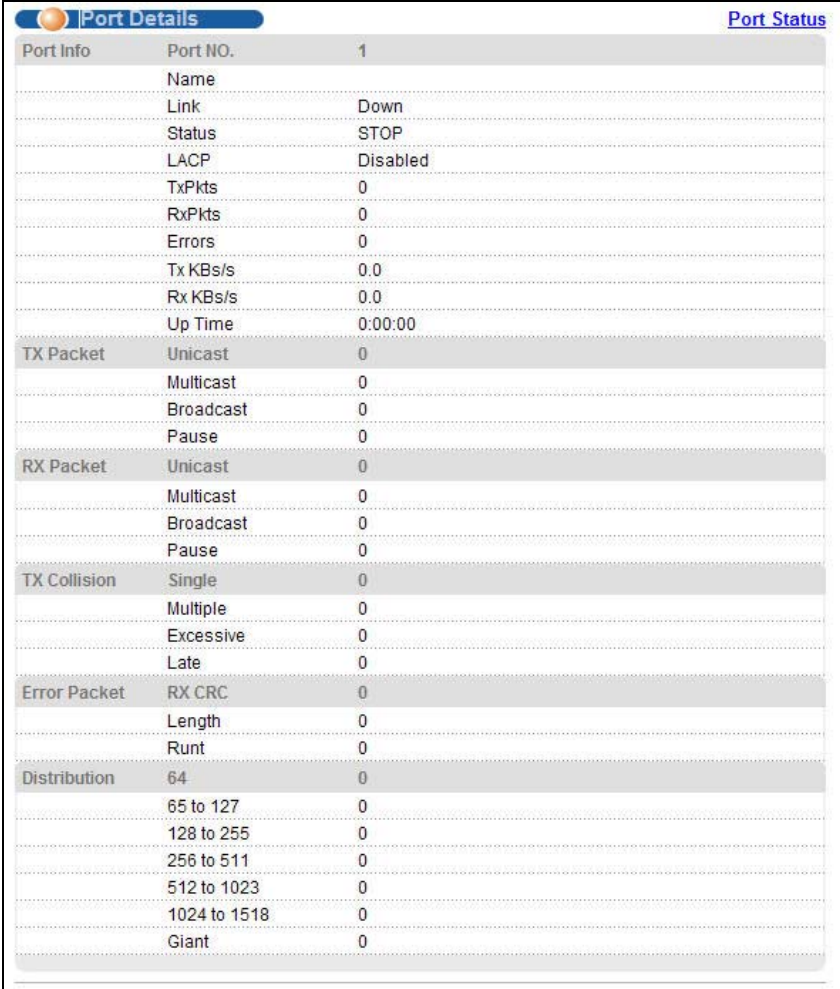
**Table 11** Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This identifies the Ethernet port. Click a port number to display the <b>Port Details</b> screen (refer to <a href="#">Figure 29 on page 81</a> ).
Name	This is the name you assigned to this port in the <b>Basic Setting &gt; Port Setup</b> screen.
Link	<p>For Ethernet ports, this field displays the speed (<b>10M</b> for 10Mbps or <b>100M</b> for 100Mbps) and duplex (<b>F</b> for full duplex or <b>H</b> for half) settings.</p> <p>For dual-personality interfaces with the RJ-45 port active, this field displays the speed (<b>10M</b> for 10Mbps, <b>100M</b> for 100Mbps or <b>1000M</b> for 1000Mbps), duplex (<b>F</b> for full duplex or <b>H</b> for half) and media type (<b>Copper</b>) settings.</p> <p>For dual-personality interfaces with the SFP port active, this field displays the speed (<b>100M</b> for 100Mbps or <b>1000M</b> for 1000Mbps), duplex (<b>F</b> for full duplex or <b>H</b> for half) and media type (<b>Copper</b> or <b>Fiber</b>) settings.</p> <p>This field displays <b>Down</b> if the port is not connected to any device.</p>
State	<p>If STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) is enabled, this field displays the STP state of the port (see <a href="#">Section 13.1 on page 124</a> for more information).</p> <p>If STP is disabled, this field displays <b>FORWARDING</b> if the link is up, otherwise, it displays <b>STOP</b>.</p>
LACP	This field displays whether LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol) has been enabled on the port.
TxPkts	This field shows the number of transmitted frames on this port.
RxPkts	This field shows the number of received frames on this port.
Errors	This field shows the number of received errors on this port.
Tx KB/s	This field shows the number of kilobytes per second transmitted on this port.
Rx KB/s	This field shows the number of kilobytes per second received on this port.
Up Time	This field shows the total amount of time in hours, minutes and seconds the port has been up.
Clear Counter	Enter a port number and then click <b>Clear Counter</b> to erase the recorded statistical information for that port, or select <b>Any</b> to clear statistics for all ports.

### 7.2.1 Status: Port Details

Click a number in the **Port** column in the **Status** screen to display individual port statistics. Use this screen to check status and detailed performance data about an individual port on the Switch.

**Figure 29** Status > Port Details



Port Details		Port Status
Port Info	Port NO.	1
	Name	
	Link	Down
	Status	STOP
	LACP	Disabled
	TxPkts	0
	RxPkts	0
	Errors	0
	Tx KBs/s	0.0
	Rx KBs/s	0.0
	Up Time	0:00:00
TX Packet	Unicast	0
	Multicast	0
	Broadcast	0
	Pause	0
RX Packet	Unicast	0
	Multicast	0
	Broadcast	0
	Pause	0
TX Collision	Single	0
	Multiple	0
	Excessive	0
	Late	0
Error Packet	RX CRC	0
	Length	0
	Runt	0
Distribution	64	0
	65 to 127	0
	128 to 255	0
	256 to 511	0
	512 to 1023	0
	1024 to 1518	0
	Giant	0

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 12** Status: Port Details

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port Info	
Port NO.	This field displays the port number you are viewing.
Name	This field displays the name of the port.

**Table 12** Status: Port Details (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Link	<p>For Ethernet ports, this field displays the speed (<b>10M</b> for 10Mbps or <b>100M</b> for 100Mbps) and duplex (<b>F</b> for full duplex or <b>H</b> for half) settings.</p> <p>For dual-personality interfaces with the RJ-45 port active, this field displays the speed (<b>10M</b> for 10Mbps, <b>100M</b> for 100Mbps or <b>1000M</b> for 1000Mbps), duplex (<b>F</b> for full duplex or <b>H</b> for half) and media type (<b>Copper</b>) settings.</p> <p>For dual-personality interfaces with the SFP port active, this field displays the speed (<b>100M</b> for 100Mbps or <b>1000M</b> for 1000Mbps), duplex (<b>F</b> for full duplex or <b>H</b> for half) and media type (<b>Copper</b> or <b>Fiber</b>) settings.</p> <p>This field displays <b>Down</b> if the port is not connected to any device.</p>
Status	<p>If STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) is enabled, this field displays the STP state of the port (see <a href="#">Section 13.1 on page 124</a> for more information).</p> <p>If STP is disabled, this field displays <b>FORWARDING</b> if the link is up, otherwise, it displays <b>STOP</b>.</p>
LACP	This field shows if LACP is enabled on this port or not.
TxPkts	This field shows the number of transmitted frames on this port
RxPkts	This field shows the number of received frames on this port
Errors	This field shows the number of received errors on this port.
Tx KB/s	This field shows the number kilobytes per second transmitted on this port.
Rx KB/s	This field shows the number of kilobytes per second received on this port.
Up Time	This field shows the total amount of time the connection has been up.
Tx Packet	
The following fields display detailed information about packets transmitted.	
Unicast	This field shows the number of good unicast packets transmitted.
Multicast	This field shows the number of good multicast packets transmitted.
Broadcast	This field shows the number of good broadcast packets transmitted.
Pause	This field shows the number of 802.3x Pause packets transmitted.
Rx Packet	
The following fields display detailed information about packets received.	
Unicast	This field shows the number of good unicast packets received.
Multicast	This field shows the number of good multicast packets received.
Broadcast	This field shows the number of good broadcast packets received.
Pause	This field shows the number of 802.3x Pause packets received.
TX Collision	
The following fields display information on collisions while transmitting.	
Single	This is a count of successfully transmitted packets for which transmission is inhibited by exactly one collision.
Multiple	This is a count of successfully transmitted packets for which transmission was inhibited by more than one collision.
Excessive	This is a count of packets for which transmission failed due to excessive collisions. Excessive collision is defined as the number of maximum collisions before the retransmission count is reset.
Late	This is the number of times a late collision is detected, that is, after 512 bits of the packets have already been transmitted.
Error Packet	The following fields display detailed information about packets received that were in error.

**Table 12** Status: Port Details (continued)

<b>LABEL</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>
RX CRC	This field shows the number of packets received with CRC (Cyclic Redundant Check) error(s).
Length	This field shows the number of packets received with a length that was out of range.
Runt	This field shows the number of packets received that were too short (shorter than 64 octets), including the ones with CRC errors.
Distribution	
64	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were 64 octets in length.
65-127	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 65 and 127 octets in length.
128-255	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 128 and 255 octets in length.
256-511	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 256 and 511 octets in length.
512-1023	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 512 and 1023 octets in length.
1024-1518	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 1024 and 1518 octets in length.
Giant	This field shows the number of packets (including bad packets) received that were between 1519 octets and the maximum frame size.  The maximum frame size varies depending on your switch model.

## Basic Setting

This chapter describes how to configure the **System Info**, **General Setup**, **Switch Setup**, **IP Setup** and **Port Setup** screens.

### 8.1 Overview

The **System Info** screen displays general Switch information (such as firmware version number) and hardware polling information (such as temperatures). The **General Setup** screen allows you to configure general Switch identification information. The **General Setup** screen also allows you to set the system time manually or get the current time and date from an external server when you turn on your Switch. The real time is then displayed in the Switch logs. The **Switch Setup** screen allows you to set up and configure global Switch features. The **IP Setup** screen allows you to configure a Switch IP address in each routing domain, subnet mask(s) and DNS (domain name server) for management purposes. The **Port Setup** screen allows you to enable or disable a port on the Switch and configure the port settings, such as the speed and duplex mode.

### 8.2 System Information

In the navigation panel, click **Basic Setting** > **System Info** to display the screen as shown. You can check the firmware version number and monitor the Switch temperature and voltage in this screen.

**Figure 30** Basic Setting > System Info

Figure 66 Basic Settings - System Info

System Info					
System Name			ES3500		
Product Model			ES3500-24HP		
ZyNOS FW Version			V4.00(AADE.0)B1   03/08/2012		
Ethernet Address			00:aa:bb:cc:dd:ee		

Hardware Monitor

Temperature Unit C

Temperature (C)	Current	MAX	MIN	Threshold	Status
BOARD	34.0	34.0	29.0	85.0	Normal
MAC	37.0	37.0	31.0	85.0	Normal
PHY	32.0	32.0	29.0	85.0	Normal
FAN Speed (RPM)	Current	MAX	MIN	Threshold	Status
FAN1	3663	9262	3638	500	Normal
FAN2	3706	9391	3686	500	Normal
Voltage (V)	Current	MAX	MIN	Threshold	Status
1.05VIN	1.048	1.048	1.048	+/-6%	Normal
12VIN	12.281	12.281	12.218	+/-10%	Normal
3.3VIN	3.308	3.308	3.291	+/-6%	Normal



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 13** Basic Setting > System Info

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Name	This field displays the descriptive name of the Switch for identification purposes.
Product Model	This field displays the model number of the Switch.
ZyNOS F/W Version	This field displays the version number of the Switch 's current firmware including the date created.
Ethernet Address	This field refers to the Ethernet MAC (Media Access Control) address of the Switch.
Hardware Monitor	
Temperature Unit	The Switch has temperature sensors that are capable of detecting and reporting if the temperature rises above the threshold. You may choose the temperature unit (Centigrade or Fahrenheit) in this field.
Temperature	<b>BOARD</b> , <b>MAC</b> and <b>PHY</b> refer to the location of the temperature sensors on the Switch printed circuit board.
Current	This shows the current temperature at this sensor.
MAX	This field displays the maximum temperature measured at this sensor.
MIN	This field displays the minimum temperature measured at this sensor.
Threshold	This field displays the upper temperature limit at this sensor.
Status	This field displays <b>Normal</b> for temperatures below the threshold and <b>Error</b> for those above.
Fan Speed (RPM) (ES3500-24HP only)	A properly functioning fan is an essential component (along with a sufficiently ventilated, cool operating environment) in order for the device to stay within the temperature threshold. Each fan has a sensor that is capable of detecting and reporting if the fan speed falls below the threshold shown.
Current	This field displays this fan's current speed in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM).
MAX	This field displays this fan's maximum speed measured in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM).
MIN	This field displays this fan's minimum speed measured in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM). "<41" is displayed for speeds too small to measure.
Threshold	This field displays the minimum speed at which a normal fan should work.
Status	<b>Normal</b> indicates that this fan is functioning above the minimum speed. <b>Error</b> indicates that this fan is functioning below the minimum speed.
Voltage (V)	The power supply for each voltage has a sensor that is capable of detecting and reporting if the voltage falls out of the tolerance range.
Current	This is the current voltage reading.
MAX	This field displays the maximum voltage measured at this point.
MIN	This field displays the minimum voltage measured at this point.
Threshold	This field displays the percentage tolerance of the voltage with which the Switch still works.
Status	<b>Normal</b> indicates that the voltage is within an acceptable operating range at this point; otherwise <b>Error</b> is displayed.

## 8.3 General Setup

Use this screen to configure general settings such as the system name and time. Click **Basic Setting > General Setup** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 31** Basic Setting > General Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 14** Basic Setting > General Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Name	Choose a descriptive name for identification purposes. This name consists of up to 64 printable characters; spaces are allowed.
Location	Enter the geographic location of your Switch. You can use up to 32 printable ASCII characters; spaces are allowed.
Contact Person's Name	Enter the name of the person in charge of this Switch. You can use up to 32 printable ASCII characters; spaces are allowed.
Use Time Server when Bootup	<p>Enter the time service protocol that your timeserver uses. Not all time servers support all protocols, so you may have to use trial and error to find a protocol that works. The main differences between them are the time format.</p> <p>When you select the <b>Daytime (RFC 867)</b> format, the Switch displays the day, month, year and time with no time zone adjustment. When you use this format it is recommended that you use a Daytime timeserver within your geographical time zone.</p> <p><b>Time (RFC-868)</b> format displays a 4-byte integer giving the total number of seconds since 1970/1/1 at 0:0:0.</p> <p><b>NTP (RFC-1305)</b> is similar to Time (RFC-868).</p> <p><b>None</b> is the default value. Enter the time manually. Each time you turn on the Switch, the time and date will be reset to 1970-1-1 0:0.</p>
Time Server IP Address	Enter the IP address of your timeserver. The Switch searches for the timeserver for up to 60 seconds. If you select a timeserver that is unreachable, then this screen will appear locked for 60 seconds. Please wait.
Current Time	This field displays the time you open this menu (or refresh the menu).

**Table 14** Basic Setting > General Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
New Time (hh:min:ss)	Enter the new time in hour, minute and second format. The new time then appears in the <b>Current Time</b> field after you click <b>Apply</b> .
Current Date	This field displays the date you open this menu.
New Date (yyyy-mm-dd)	Enter the new date in year, month and day format. The new date then appears in the <b>Current Date</b> field after you click <b>Apply</b> .
Time Zone	Select the time difference between UTC (Universal Time Coordinated, formerly known as GMT, Greenwich Mean Time) and your time zone from the drop-down list box.
Daylight Saving Time	Daylight saving is a period from late spring to early fall when many countries set their clocks ahead of normal local time by one hour to give more daytime light in the evening.  Select this option if you use Daylight Saving Time.
Start Date	Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time starts if you selected <b>Daylight Saving Time</b> . The time is displayed in the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples:  Daylight Saving Time starts in most parts of the United States on the second Sunday of March. Each time zone in the United States starts using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select <b>Second, Sunday, March</b> and <b>2:00</b> .  Daylight Saving Time starts in the European Union on the last Sunday of March. All of the time zones in the European Union start using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select <b>Last, Sunday, March</b> and the last field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would select <b>2:00</b> because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).
End Date	Configure the day and time when Daylight Saving Time ends if you selected <b>Daylight Saving Time</b> . The time field uses the 24 hour format. Here are a couple of examples:  Daylight Saving Time ends in the United States on the first Sunday of November. Each time zone in the United States stops using Daylight Saving Time at 2 A.M. local time. So in the United States you would select <b>First, Sunday, November</b> and <b>2:00</b> .  Daylight Saving Time ends in the European Union on the last Sunday of October. All of the time zones in the European Union stop using Daylight Saving Time at the same moment (1 A.M. GMT or UTC). So in the European Union you would select <b>Last, Sunday, October</b> and the last field depends on your time zone. In Germany for instance, you would select <b>2:00</b> because Germany's time zone is one hour ahead of GMT or UTC (GMT+1).
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 8.4 Introduction to VLANs

A VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) allows a physical network to be partitioned into multiple logical networks. Devices on a logical network belong to one group. A device can belong to more than one group. With VLAN, a device cannot directly talk to or hear from devices that are not in the same group(s); the traffic must first go through a router.

In MTU (Multi-Tenant Unit) applications, VLAN is vital in providing isolation and security among the subscribers. When properly configured, VLAN prevents one subscriber from accessing the network resources of another on the same LAN, thus a user will not see the printers and hard disks of another user in the same building.

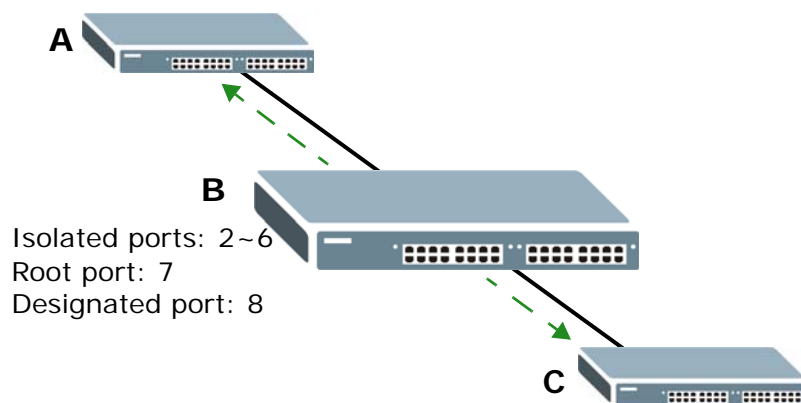
VLAN also increases network performance by limiting broadcasts to a smaller and more manageable logical broadcast domain. In traditional switched environments, all broadcast packets go to each and every individual port. With VLAN, all broadcasts are confined to a specific broadcast domain.

Note: VLAN is unidirectional; it only governs outgoing traffic.

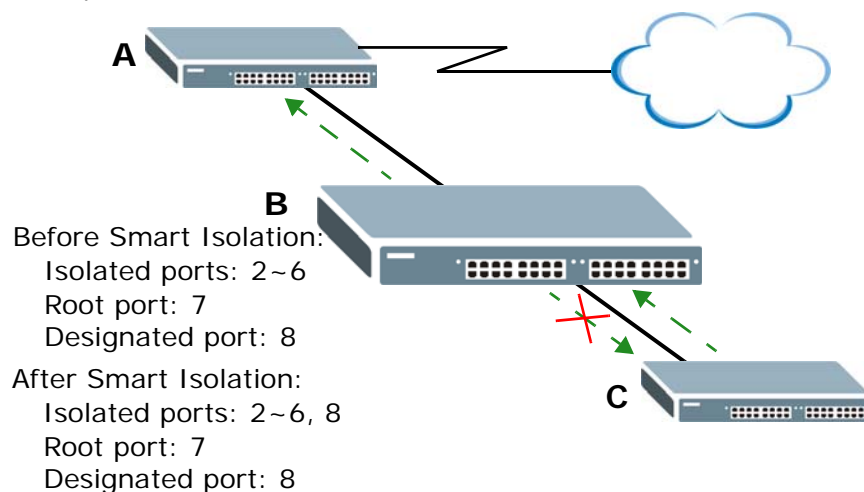
See [Chapter 9 on page 99](#) for information on port-based and 802.1Q tagged VLANs.

### 8.4.1 Smart Isolation

To block traffic between two specific ports within the Switch, you can use port isolation or private VLAN (see [Chapter 33 on page 263](#) for more information). However, it does not work across multiple switches. For example, broadcast traffic from isolated ports on a switch (say **B**) can be forwarded to all ports on other switches (**A** and **C**), including the isolated ports.



Smart isolation allows you to prevent isolated ports on different switches from transmitting traffic to each other. After you enable RSTP/MRSTP and smart isolation on the Switch, the designated port(s) will be added to the isolated port list. In the following example, switch **A** is the root bridge. Switch **B**'s root port **7** connects to switch **A** and switch **B**'s designated port **8** connects to switch **C**. Traffic from isolated ports on switch **B** can only be sent through non-isolated port **1** or root port **7** to switch **A**. This prevents isolated ports on switch **B** sending traffic through designated port **8** to switch **C**. Traffic received on designated port **8** from switch **C** will not be forwarded to any other isolated ports on switch **B**.



You should enable RSTP or MRSTP before you can use smart isolation on the Switch. If the network topology changes, the Switch automatically updates the isolated port list with the latest designated port information.

Note: The uplink port connected to the Internet should be the root port. Otherwise, with smart isolation enabled, the isolated ports cannot access the Internet.

## 8.5 Switch Setup

Click **Basic Setting** > **Switch Setup** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown. The VLAN setup screens change depending on whether you choose **802.1Q** or **Port Based** in the **VLAN Type** field in this screen. Refer to the chapter on VLAN.

**Figure 32** Basic Setting > Switch Setup

**Switch Setup**

**VLAN Type**  
☒ 802.1Q  
☐ Port Based

**Smart Isolation** Active ☐

**MAC Address Learning**  
 Aging Time 300 seconds

**GARP Timer**  
 Join Timer 200 milliseconds  
 Leave Timer 600 milliseconds  
 Leave All Timer 10000 milliseconds

**Priority Queue Assignment**

Level7	7
Level6	6
Level5	5
Level4	4
Level3	3
Level2	1
Level1	0
Level0	2

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 15** Basic Setting > Switch Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Type	Choose <b>802.1Q</b> or <b>Port Based</b> . The <b>VLAN Setup</b> screen changes depending on whether you choose <b>802.1Q</b> VLAN type or <b>Port Based</b> VLAN type in this screen. See <a href="#">Chapter 9 on page 99</a> for more information.
Smart Isolation	Select <b>Active</b> to enable smart isolation on the Switch. The designated port(s) then becomes the isolated port. Smart isolation allows you to prevent isolated ports on different switches from transmitting traffic to each other.  Note: To use smart isolation, you should have configured 802.1Q VLAN port isolation or private VLAN and (M)RSTP on the Switch. Smart isolation does not work with MSTP and/or port-based VLAN.
MAC Address Learning	MAC address learning reduces outgoing traffic broadcasts. For MAC address learning to occur on a port, the port must be active.

**Table 15** Basic Setting > Switch Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Aging Time	Enter a time from 10 to 3000 seconds. This is how long all dynamically learned MAC addresses remain in the MAC address table before they age out (and must be relearned).
<p>GARP Timer: Switches join VLANs by making a declaration. A declaration is made by issuing a <b>Join</b> message using GARP. Declarations are withdrawn by issuing a <b>Leave</b> message. A <b>Leave All</b> message terminates all registrations. GARP timers set declaration timeout values. See the chapter on VLAN setup for more background information.</p>	
Join Timer	Join Timer sets the duration of the Join Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a <b>Join Period</b> timer. The allowed <b>Join Time</b> range is between 100 and 65535 milliseconds; the default is 200 milliseconds. See the chapter on VLAN setup for more background information.
Leave Timer	Leave Time sets the duration of the <b>Leave Period</b> timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a single <b>Leave Period</b> timer. Leave Time must be two times larger than <b>Join Timer</b> ; the default is 600 milliseconds.
Leave All Timer	Leave All Timer sets the duration of the Leave All Period timer for GVRP in milliseconds. Each port has a single Leave All Period timer. Leave All Timer must be larger than Leave Timer.
<p>Priority Queue Assignment</p> <p>IEEE 802.1p defines up to eight separate traffic types by inserting a tag into a MAC-layer frame that contains bits to define class of service. Frames without an explicit priority tag are given the default priority of the ingress port. Use the next fields to configure the priority level-to-physical queue mapping.</p> <p>The Switch has eight physical queues that you can map to the 8 priority levels. On the Switch, traffic assigned to higher index queues gets through faster while traffic in lower index queues is dropped if the network is congested.</p> <p>Priority Level (The following descriptions are based on the traffic types defined in the IEEE 802.1d standard (which incorporates the 802.1p).</p>	
Level 7	Typically used for network control traffic such as router configuration messages.
Level 6	Typically used for voice traffic that is especially sensitive to jitter (jitter is the variations in delay).
Level 5	Typically used for video that consumes high bandwidth and is sensitive to jitter.
Level 4	Typically used for controlled load, latency-sensitive traffic such as SNA (Systems Network Architecture) transactions.
Level 3	Typically used for "excellent effort" or better than best effort and would include important business traffic that can tolerate some delay.
Level 2	This is for "spare bandwidth".
Level 1	This is typically used for non-critical "background" traffic such as bulk transfers that are allowed but that should not affect other applications and users.
Level 0	Typically used for best-effort traffic.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to reset the fields.

## 8.6 IP Setup

Use the **IP Setup** screen to configure the Switch IP address, default gateway device, the default domain name server and the management VLAN ID. The default gateway specifies the IP address of the default gateway (next hop) for outgoing traffic.

### 8.6.1 Management IP Addresses

The Switch needs an IP address for it to be managed over the network. The factory default in-band IP address is 192.168.1.1. The subnet mask specifies the network number portion of an IP address. The factory default subnet mask is 255.255.255.0.

You can configure up to 64 IP addresses which are used to access and manage the Switch from the ports belonging to the pre-defined VLAN(s).

Note: You must configure a VLAN first.

**Figure 33** Basic Setting > IP Setup

**IP Setup**

Domain Name Server: 0.0.0.0

Default Management IP Address: ☐ DHCP Client ☒ Static IP Address

IP Address: 192.168.1.1

IP Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0

Default Gateway: 0.0.0.0

VID: 1

Apply Cancel

**Management IP Addresses**

IP Address	IP Subnet Mask	VID	Default Gateway
0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0		0.0.0.0

Add Cancel

Index	IP Address	IP Subnet Mask	VID	Default Gateway	Delete

Delete Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 16** Basic Setting > IP Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Domain Name Server	DNS (Domain Name System) is for mapping a domain name to its corresponding IP address and vice versa. Enter a domain name server IP address in order to be able to use a domain name instead of an IP address.
Default Management IP Address	
DHCP Client	Select this option if you have a DHCP server that can assign the Switch an IP address, subnet mask, a default gateway IP address and a domain name server IP address automatically.
Static IP Address	Select this option if you don't have a DHCP server or if you wish to assign static IP address information to the Switch. You need to fill in the following fields when you select this option.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of your Switch in dotted decimal notation for example 192.168.1.1.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the IP subnet mask of your Switch in dotted decimal notation for example 255.255.255.0.
Default Gateway	Enter the IP address of the default outgoing gateway in dotted decimal notation, for example 192.168.1.254.
VID	Enter the VLAN identification number associated with the Switch IP address. This is the VLAN ID of the CPU and is used for management only. The default is "1". All ports, by default, are fixed members of this "management VLAN" in order to manage the device from any port. If a port is not a member of this VLAN, then users on that port cannot access the device. To access the Switch make sure the port that you are connected to is a member of Management VLAN.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring the fields again.
Management IP Addresses	
You can create up to 64 IP addresses, which are used to access and manage the Switch from the ports belonging to the pre-defined VLAN(s). You must configure a VLAN first.	
IP Address	Enter the IP address for managing the Switch by the members of the VLAN specified in the <b>VID</b> field below.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the IP subnet mask in dotted decimal notation.
VID	Type the VLAN group identification number.
Default Gateway	Enter the IP address of the default outgoing gateway in dotted decimal notation.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to insert the entry to the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Index	This field displays the index number of the rule. Click an index number to edit the rule.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address.
IP Subnet Mask	This field displays the subnet mask.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group.
Default Gateway	This field displays the IP address of the default gateway.



**Table 16** Basic Setting > IP Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Delete	Check the management IP addresses that you want to remove in the <b>Delete</b> column, then click the <b>Delete</b> button.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the selected check boxes in the <b>Delete</b> column.

## 8.7 Port Setup

Use this screen to configure Switch port settings. Click **Basic Setting > Port Setup** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen.

**Figure 34** Basic Setting > Port Setup

Port	Active	Name	Type	Speed / Duplex	Flow Control	802.1p Priority
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		-	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
...						
27	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0
28	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		10/100/1000M	Auto	<input type="checkbox"/>	0

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 17** Basic Setting > Port Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This is the port index number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports.  Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.  Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to enable a port. The factory default for all ports is enabled. A port must be enabled for data transmission to occur.
Name	Enter a descriptive name that identifies this port. You can enter up to 64 alpha-numerical characters.  Note: Due to space limitation, the port name may be truncated in some web configurator screens.
Type	This field displays <b>10/100M</b> for Fast Ethernet connections and <b>10/100/1000M</b> for Gigabit connections.

**Table 17** Basic Setting > Port Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Speed/Duplex	<p>Select the speed and the duplex mode of the Ethernet connection on this port. Choices are <b>Auto</b>, <b>10M/Half Duplex</b>, <b>10M/Full Duplex</b>, <b>100M/Half Duplex</b>, <b>100M/Full Duplex</b> and <b>1000M/Full Duplex</b> (Gigabit connections only).</p> <p>The dual-personality interfaces with the RJ-45 port active allow 10/100/1000 Mbps speeds to be selected.</p> <p>The dual-personality interfaces with the SFP port active allow 100/1000 Mbps speeds to be selected.</p> <p>Selecting <b>Auto</b> (auto-negotiation) allows one port to negotiate with a peer port automatically to obtain the connection speed and duplex mode that both ends support. When auto-negotiation is turned on, a port on the Switch negotiates with the peer automatically to determine the connection speed and duplex mode. If the peer port does not support auto-negotiation or turns off this feature, the Switch determines the connection speed by detecting the signal on the cable and using half duplex mode. When the Switch's auto-negotiation is turned off, a port uses the pre-configured speed and duplex mode when making a connection, thus requiring you to make sure that the settings of the peer port are the same in order to connect.</p>
Flow Control	<p>A concentration of traffic on a port decreases port bandwidth and overflows buffer memory causing packet discards and frame losses. <b>Flow Control</b> is used to regulate transmission of signals to match the bandwidth of the receiving port.</p> <p>The Switch uses IEEE802.3x flow control in full duplex mode and backpressure flow control in half duplex mode.</p> <p>IEEE802.3x flow control is used in full duplex mode to send a pause signal to the sending port, causing it to temporarily stop sending signals when the receiving port memory buffers fill.</p> <p>Back Pressure flow control is typically used in half duplex mode to send a "collision" signal to the sending port (mimicking a state of packet collision) causing the sending port to temporarily stop sending signals and resend later. Select <b>Flow Control</b> to enable it.</p>
802.1p Priority	This priority value is added to incoming frames without a (802.1p) priority queue tag. See <b>Priority Queue Assignment</b> in <a href="#">Table 15 on page 89</a> for more information.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

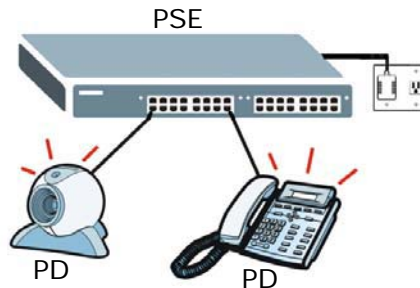
## 8.8 PoE

Note: The following screens are available for the ES3500-24HP model only.

The ES3500-24HP supports the IEEE 802.3at Power over Ethernet plus (PoE+) standard. The Switch is Power Sourcing Equipment (PSE) because it provides a source of power via its Ethernet ports, and each device that receives power through an Ethernet port is a Powered Device (PD).

In the figure below, the IP camera and IP phone get their power directly from the Switch. Aside from minimizing the need for cables and wires, PoE removes the hassle of trying to find a nearby electric outlet to power up devices.

**Figure 35** Powered Device Examples



You can also set priorities so that the Switch is able to reserve and allocate power to certain PDs.

**Note:** The PoE devices that supply or receive power and their connected Ethernet cables must all be completely indoors.

To view the current amount of power that PDs are receiving from the Switch, click **Basic Setting** > **PoE**.

**Figure 36** Basic Setting > PoE Status

PoE Status							PoE Setup
PoE Mode				Classification			
Total Power (W)				183.0			
Consuming Power (W)				0.0			
Allocated Power (W)				0.0			
Remaining Power (W)				183.0			
Port	State	Class	PD Priority	Consuming Power (mW)	Max Power (mW)	Max Current (mA)	
1	Enable	0	Low	0	0	0.0	
2	Enable	0	Low	0	0	0.0	
3	Enable	0	Low	0	0	0.0	
4	Enable	0	Low	0	0	0.0	
5	Enable	0	Low	0	0	0.0	
6	Enable	0	Low	0	0	0.0	
7	Enable	0	Low	0	0	0.0	
8	Enable	0	Low	0	0	0.0	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 18** Basic Setting > PoE Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
PoE Status	
PoE Mode	This field displays the power management mode used by the Switch, whether it is in <b>Classification</b> or <b>Consumption</b> mode.
Total Power	This field displays the total power the Switch can provide to the connected PoE-enabled devices on the PoE ports.

**Table 18** Basic Setting > PoE Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Consuming Power (W)	This field displays the total amount of power the Switch is currently supplying to the connected PoE-enabled devices.
Allocated Power (W)	This field displays the total amount of power the Switch has reserved for PoE after negotiating with the connected PoE device(s).  <b>Consuming Power (W)</b> can be less than or equal but not more than the <b>Allocated Power (W)</b> .
Remaining Power (W)	This field displays the amount of power the Switch can still provide for PoE.  Note: The Switch must have at least 16 W of remaining power in order to supply power to a PoE device, even if the PoE device needs less than 16 W.
Port	This is the port index number.
State	This field shows which ports can receive power from the Switch. You can set this in the Basic Setting > PoE Status screen.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Disable</b> - The PD connected to this port cannot get power.</li> <li>• <b>Enable</b> - The PD connected to this port can receive power.</li> </ul>
Class	This shows the power classification of the PD.  This is a number from 0 to 4, where each value represents a range of power (W) and current (mA) that the PD requires to function. The ranges are as follows.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Class 0 - Default, 0.44 to 12.94</li> <li>• Class 1 - Optional, 0.44 to 3.84</li> <li>• Class 2 - Optional, 3.84 to 6.49</li> <li>• Class 3 - Optional, 6.49 to 12.95</li> <li>• Class 4 - Reserved (PSEs classify as Class 0) in a switch that supports IEEE 802.3af only. Optional, 12.95 to 25.50 in a switch that supports IEEE 802.3at.</li> </ul>
PD Priority	When the total power requested by the PDs exceeds the total PoE power budget on the Switch, you can set the PD priority to allow the Switch to provide power to ports with higher priority first.  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Critical</b> has the highest priority.</li> <li>• <b>High</b> has the Switch assign power to the port after all critical priority ports are served.</li> <li>• <b>Low</b> has the Switch assign power to the port after all critical and high priority ports are served.</li> </ul>
Consuming Power (mW)	This field displays the current amount of power consumed by the PD from the Switch on this port.
Max Power (mW)	This field displays the maximum amount of power the PD could use from the Switch on this port.
Max Current (mA)	This field displays the maximum amount of current drawn by the PD from the Switch on this port.

## 8.8.1 PoE Setup

Use this screen to set the priority levels for the Switch in distributing power to PDs.

Click the **PoE Setup** link in the **Basic Setting > PoE Status** screen. The following screen opens.

**Figure 37** Basic Setting > PoE Setup

Port	PD	PD Priority
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	Critical
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Low
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Low
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Low
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Low
5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Low
6	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Low
24	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Low

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 19** Basic Setting > PoE Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
PoE Mode	<p>Select the power management mode you want the Switch to use.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Classification</b> - Select this if you want the Switch to reserve the Max Power (mW) to each PD according to the power classification of the PD. If the total power supply available is not enough to supply all connected PDs, then PDs with lower priority do not get power to function.</li> <li><b>Consumption</b> - Select this if you want the Switch to manage the total power supply so that each connected PD gets a resource. However, the power allocated by the Switch may be less than the Max Power (mW) of the PD. PDs with higher priority also get more power than those with lower priority levels.</li> </ul>
Port	This is the port index number.
PD	<p>Select this to provide power to a PD connected to the port.</p> <p>If left unchecked, the PD connected to the port cannot receive power from the Switch.</p>
PD Priority	<p>This field is not available for the Gigabit or mini-GBIC ports.</p> <p>When the total power requested by the PDs exceeds the total PoE power budget on the Switch, you can set the PD priority to allow the Switch to provide power to ports with higher priority.</p> <p>Select <b>Critical</b> to give the PD connected to this port the highest priority.</p> <p>Select <b>High</b> to set the Switch to assign the remaining power to the port after all critical priority ports are served.</p> <p>Select <b>Low</b> to set the Switch to assign the remaining power to the port after all critical and high priority ports are served.</p>
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the nonvolatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

Note: If the priority settings for two or more PoE ports are the same, the ports will shut down randomly when the power budget is not enough. We strongly recommend you set the priority for each PoE port to make sure the high priority ports get power.

Note: In classification mode, up to five ports can be active. (The ES3500-24HP reserves 36W per port and the total power budget is 180W). Select consumption mode if you want more ports to be active.

The type of screen you see here depends on the **VLAN Type** you selected in the **Switch Setup** screen. This chapter shows you how to configure 802.1Q tagged and port-based VLANs.

## 9.1 Introduction to IEEE 802.1Q Tagged VLANs

A tagged VLAN uses an explicit tag (VLAN ID) in the MAC header to identify the VLAN membership of a frame across bridges - they are not confined to the switch on which they were created. The VLANs can be created statically by hand or dynamically through GVRP. The VLAN ID associates a frame with a specific VLAN and provides the information that switches need to process the frame across the network. A tagged frame is four bytes longer than an untagged frame and contains two bytes for the TPID (Tag Protocol Identifier, residing within the type/length field of the Ethernet frame) and two bytes for the TCI (Tag Control Information, starting after the source address field of the Ethernet frame).

The CFI (Canonical Format Indicator) is a single-bit flag, always set to zero for Ethernet switches. If a frame received at an Ethernet port has a CFI set to 1, then that frame should not be forwarded as it is to an untagged port. The remaining twelve bits define the VLAN ID, giving a possible maximum number of 4,096 VLANs. Note that user priority and VLAN ID are independent of each other. A frame with VID (VLAN Identifier) of null (0) is called a priority frame, meaning that only the priority level is significant and the default VID of the ingress port is given as the VID of the frame. Of the 4096 possible VIDs, a VID of 0 is used to identify priority frames and the value 4095 (FFF) is reserved, so the maximum possible number of VLAN configurations is 4,094.

TPID	User Priority	CFI	VLAN ID
2 Bytes	3 Bits	1 Bit	12 bits

### 9.1.1 Forwarding Tagged and Untagged Frames

Each port on the Switch is capable of passing tagged or untagged frames. To forward a frame from an 802.1Q VLAN-aware switch to an 802.1Q VLAN-unaware switch, the Switch first decides where to forward the frame and then strips off the VLAN tag. To forward a frame from an 802.1Q VLAN-unaware switch to an 802.1Q VLAN-aware switch, the Switch first decides where to forward the frame, and then inserts a VLAN tag reflecting the ingress port's default VID. The default PVID is VLAN 1 for all ports, but this can be changed.

A broadcast frame (or a multicast frame for a multicast group that is known by the system) is duplicated only on ports that are members of the VID (except the ingress port itself), thus confining the broadcast to a specific domain.

## 9.2 Automatic VLAN Registration

GARP and GVRP are the protocols used to automatically register VLAN membership across switches.

### 9.2.1 GARP

GARP (Generic Attribute Registration Protocol) allows network switches to register and de-register attribute values with other GARP participants within a bridged LAN. GARP is a protocol that provides a generic mechanism for protocols that serve a more specific application, for example, GVRP.

#### 9.2.1.1 GARP Timers

Switches join VLANs by making a declaration. A declaration is made by issuing a Join message using GARP. Declarations are withdrawn by issuing a Leave message. A Leave All message terminates all registrations. GARP timers set declaration timeout values.

### 9.2.2 GVRP

GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) is a registration protocol that defines a way for switches to register necessary VLAN members on ports across the network. Enable this function to permit VLAN groups beyond the local Switch.

Please refer to the following table for common IEEE 802.1Q VLAN terminology.

**Table 20** IEEE 802.1Q VLAN Terminology

VLAN PARAMETER	TERM	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Type	Permanent VLAN	This is a static VLAN created manually.
	Dynamic VLAN	This is a VLAN configured by a GVRP registration/deregistration process.
VLAN Administrative Control	Registration Fixed	Fixed registration ports are permanent VLAN members.
	Registration Forbidden	Ports with registration forbidden are forbidden to join the specified VLAN.
	Normal Registration	Ports dynamically join a VLAN using GVRP.
VLAN Tag Control	Tagged	Ports belonging to the specified VLAN tag all outgoing frames transmitted.
	Untagged	Ports belonging to the specified VLAN don't tag all outgoing frames transmitted.
VLAN Port	Port VID	This is the VLAN ID assigned to untagged frames that this port received.
	Acceptable Frame Type	You may choose to accept both tagged and untagged incoming frames, just tagged incoming frames or just untagged incoming frames on a port.
	Ingress filtering	If set, the Switch discards incoming frames for VLANs that do not have this port as a member.

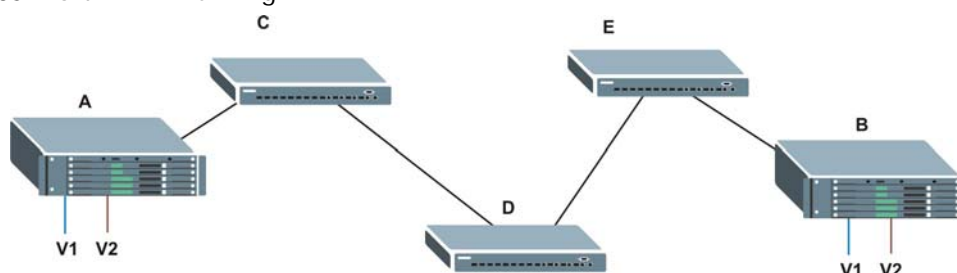


## 9.3 Port VLAN Trunking

Enable **VLAN Trunking** on a port to allow frames belonging to unknown VLAN groups to pass through that port. This is useful if you want to set up VLAN groups on end devices without having to configure the same VLAN groups on intermediary devices.

The following figure describes **VLAN Trunking**. Suppose you want to create VLAN groups 1 and 2 (V1 and V2) on devices A and B. Without **VLAN Trunking**, you must configure VLAN groups 1 and 2 on all intermediary switches C, D and E; otherwise they will drop frames with unknown VLAN group tags. However, with **VLAN Trunking** enabled on a port(s) in each intermediary switch you only need to create VLAN groups in the end devices (A and B). C, D and E automatically allow frames with VLAN group tags 1 and 2 (VLAN groups that are unknown to those switches) to pass through their VLAN trunking port(s).

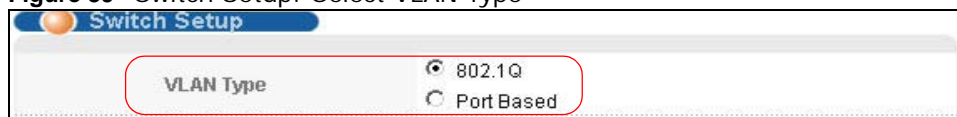
**Figure 38** Port VLAN Trunking



## 9.4 Select the VLAN Type

Select a VLAN type in the **Basic Setting > Switch Setup** screen.

**Figure 39** Switch Setup: Select VLAN Type



## 9.5 Static VLAN

Use a static VLAN to decide whether an incoming frame on a port should be

- sent to a VLAN group as normal depending on its VLAN tag.
- sent to a group whether it has a VLAN tag or not.
- blocked from a VLAN group regardless of its VLAN tag.

You can also tag all outgoing frames (that were previously untagged) from a port with the specified VID.

### 9.5.1 VLAN Status

See [Section 9.1 on page 99](#) for more information on Static VLAN. Click **Advanced Application > VLAN** from the navigation panel to display the **VLAN Status** screen as shown next.

**Figure 40** Advanced Application > VLAN: VLAN Status

Index	VID	Elapsed Time	Status
1	1	0:52:21	Static

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 21** Advanced Application > VLAN: VLAN Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Search by VID	Enter an existing VLAN ID number(s) (separated by a comma) and click <b>Search</b> to display only the specified VLAN(s) in the list below.  Leave this field blank and click <b>Search</b> to display all VLANs configured on the Switch.
The Number of VLAN	This is the number of VLANs configured on the Switch.
The Number of Search Results	This is the number of VLANs that match the searching criteria and display in the list below.  This field displays only when you use the <b>Search</b> button to look for certain VLANs.
Index	This is the VLAN index number. Click on an index number to view more VLAN details.
VID	This is the VLAN identification number that was configured in the <b>Static VLAN</b> screen.
Elapsed Time	This field shows how long it has been since a normal VLAN was registered or a static VLAN was set up.
Status	This field shows how this VLAN was added to the Switch; <b>dynamic</b> - using GVRP, <b>static</b> - added as a permanent entry or <b>other</b> - added in another way such as via Multicast VLAN Registration (MVR).
Change Pages	Click <b>Previous</b> or <b>Next</b> to show the previous/next screen if all status information cannot be seen in one screen.

## 9.5.2 VLAN Details

Use this screen to view detailed port settings and status of the VLAN group. See [Section 9.1 on page 99](#) for more information on static VLAN. Click on an index number in the **VLAN Status** screen to display VLAN details.

**Figure 41** Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Detail

VID	Port Number														Elapsed Time	Status
	2	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	22	24	26	28		
1	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	3:22:07	Static
	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U	U		

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 22** Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Detail

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Status	Click this to go to the <b>VLAN Status</b> screen.
VID	This is the VLAN identification number that was configured in the <b>Static VLAN</b> screen.
Port Number	This column displays the ports that are participating in a VLAN. A tagged port is marked as <b>T</b> , an untagged port is marked as <b>U</b> and ports not participating in a VLAN are marked as <b>—</b> .
Elapsed Time	This field shows how long it has been since a normal VLAN was registered or a static VLAN was set up.
Status	This field shows how this VLAN was added to the Switch; <b>dynamic</b> - using GVRP, <b>static</b> - added as a permanent entry or <b>other</b> - added in another way such as via Multicast VLAN Registration (MVR).

### 9.5.3 Configure a Static VLAN

Use this screen to configure and view 802.1Q VLAN parameters for the Switch. See [Section 9.1 on page 99](#) for more information on static VLAN. To configure a static VLAN, click **Static VLAN** in the **VLAN Status** screen to display the screen as shown next.

**Figure 42** Advanced Application > VLAN > Static VLAN

The screenshot shows the 'Static VLAN' configuration interface. At the top, there's a title bar with 'Static VLAN' and a 'VLAN Status' link. Below this, there's an 'ACTIVE' checkbox. Underneath are input fields for 'Name' and 'VLAN Group ID'. A table follows with columns 'Port', 'Control', and 'Tagging'. The 'Port' column lists ports 1 through 8, plus a '\*' for all ports. The 'Control' column has radio buttons for 'Normal' (selected), 'Fixed', and 'Forbidden'. The 'Tagging' column has a checked 'Tx Tagging' checkbox. Below the table are 'Add', 'Cancel', and 'Clear' buttons. At the bottom, there's a summary table with columns 'VID', 'Active', 'Name', and 'Delete'. It shows VID 1 as active. Below this summary table are 'Delete' and 'Cancel' buttons.

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

**Table 23** Advanced Application > VLAN > Static VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
ACTIVE	Select this check box to activate the VLAN settings.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for the VLAN group for identification purposes. This name consists of up to 64 printable characters; spaces are allowed.
VLAN Group ID	Enter the VLAN ID for this static entry; the valid range is between 1 and 4094.
Port	The port number identifies the port you are configuring.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports.  Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.  Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Control	Select <b>Normal</b> for the port to dynamically join this VLAN group using GVRP. This is the default selection.  Select <b>Fixed</b> for the port to be a permanent member of this VLAN group.  Select <b>Forbidden</b> if you want to prohibit the port from joining this VLAN group.

**Table 23** Advanced Application > VLAN > Static VLAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Tagging	Select <b>TX Tagging</b> if you want the port to tag all outgoing frames transmitted with this VLAN Group ID.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to start configuring the screen again.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group. Click the number to edit the VLAN settings.
Active	This field indicates whether the VLAN settings are enabled ( <b>Yes</b> ) or disabled ( <b>No</b> ).
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this VLAN group.
Delete	Click <b>Delete</b> to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the <b>Delete</b> check boxes.

## 9.5.4 Configure VLAN Port Settings

Use the VLAN Port Setting screen to configure the static VLAN (IEEE 802.1Q) settings on a port. See [Section 9.1 on page 99](#) for more information on static VLAN. Click the **VLAN Port Setting** link in the **VLAN Status** screen.

**Figure 43** Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting

Port	Ingress Check	PVID	GVRP	Acceptable Frame Type	VLAN Trunking	Isolation
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	All	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 24** Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
GVRP	GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) is a registration protocol that defines a way for switches to register necessary VLAN members on ports across the network.  Select this check box to permit VLAN groups beyond the local Switch.
Port	This field displays the port number.

**Table 24** Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
*	<p>Settings in this row apply to all ports.</p> <p>Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
Ingress Check	<p>If this is selected for a port, the Switch discards incoming frames for VLANs that do not include this port in its member set.</p> <p>Clear this to disable ingress filtering.</p>
PVID	<p>A PVID (Port VLAN ID) is a tag that adds to incoming untagged frames received on a port so that the frames are forwarded to the VLAN group that the tag defines.</p> <p>Enter a number between 1 and 4094 as the port VLAN ID.</p>
GVRP	Select this to allow GVRP on this port.
Acceptable Frame Type	<p>Specify the type of frames allowed on a port. Choices are <b>All</b>, <b>Tag Only</b> and <b>Untag Only</b>.</p> <p>Select <b>All</b> to accept all untagged or tagged frames on this port. This is the default setting.</p> <p>Select <b>Tag Only</b> to accept only tagged frames on this port. All untagged frames will be dropped.</p> <p>Select <b>Untag Only</b> to accept only untagged frames on this port. All tagged frames will be dropped.</p>
VLAN Trunking	Enable <b>VLAN Trunking</b> on ports connected to other switches or routers (but not ports directly connected to end users) to allow frames belonging to unknown VLAN groups to pass through the Switch.
Isolation	Select this to allow this port to communicate only with the CPU management port and the ports on which the isolation feature is not enabled.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 9.6 Subnet Based VLANs

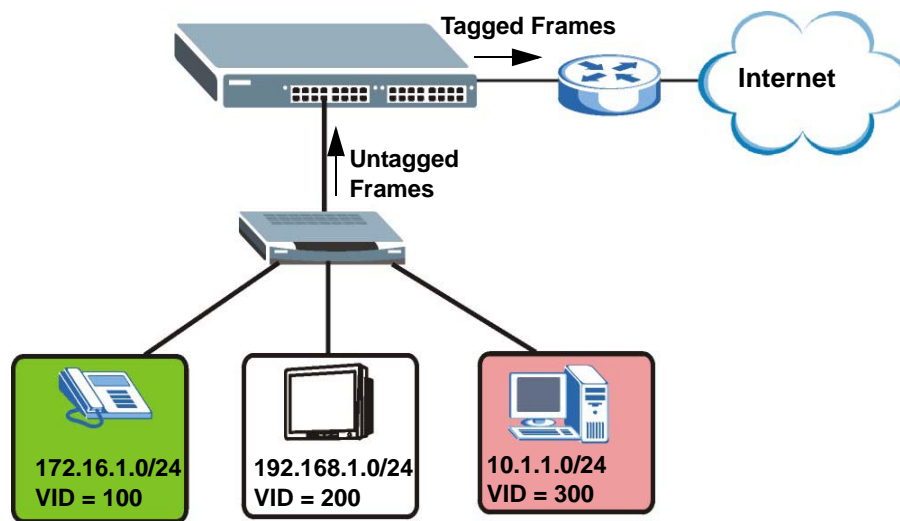
Subnet based VLANs allow you to group traffic into logical VLANs based on the source IP subnet you specify. When a frame is received on a port, the Switch checks if a tag is added already and the IP subnet it came from. The untagged packets from the same IP subnet are then placed in the same subnet based VLAN. One advantage of using subnet based VLANs is that priority can be assigned to traffic from the same IP subnet.

For example, an ISP (Internet Service Provider) may divide different types of services it provides to customers into different IP subnets. Traffic for voice services is designated for IP subnet 172.16.1.0/24, video for 192.168.1.0/24 and data for 10.1.1.0/24. The Switch can then be configured to group incoming traffic based on the source IP subnet of incoming frames.

You can then configure a subnet based VLAN with priority 6 and VID of 100 for traffic received from IP subnet 172.16.1.0/24 (voice services). You can also have a subnet based VLAN with priority 5 and VID of 200 for traffic received from IP subnet 192.168.1.0/24 (video services). Lastly, you can configure VLAN with priority 3 and VID of 300 for traffic received from IP subnet 10.1.1.0/24 (data

services). All untagged incoming frames will be classified based on their source IP subnet and prioritized accordingly. That is, video services receive the highest priority and data the lowest.

**Figure 44** Subnet Based VLAN Application Example



## 9.7 Configuring Subnet Based VLAN

Click **Subnet Based VLAN** in the **VLAN Port Setting** screen to display the configuration screen as shown.

Note: Subnet based VLAN applies to un-tagged packets and is applicable only when you use IEEE 802.1Q tagged VLAN.

**Figure 45** Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Subnet Based VLAN

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 25** Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Subnet Based VLAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Check this to activate this subnet based VLANs on the Switch.
DHCP-Vlan Override	When DHCP snooping is enabled DHCP clients can renew their IP address through the DHCP VLAN or via another DHCP server on the subnet based VLAN.  Select this to force the DHCP clients in this IP subnet to obtain their IP addresses through the DHCP VLAN.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Active	Select this to activate the IP subnet VLAN you are creating or editing.
Name	Enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters to identify this subnet based VLAN.
IP	Enter the IP address of the subnet for which you want to configure this subnet based VLAN.
Mask-Bits	Enter the bit number of the subnet mask. To find the bit number, convert the subnet mask to binary format and add all the 1's together. Take "255.255.255.0" for example. 255 converts to eight 1s in binary. There are three 255s, so add three eights together and you get the bit number (24).
VID	Enter the ID of a VLAN with which the untagged frames from the IP subnet specified in this subnet based VLAN are tagged. This must be an existing VLAN which you defined in the <b>Advanced Applications &gt; VLAN</b> screens.
Priority	Select the priority level that the Switch assigns to frames belonging to this VLAN.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.



**Table 25** Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Subnet Based VLAN Setup

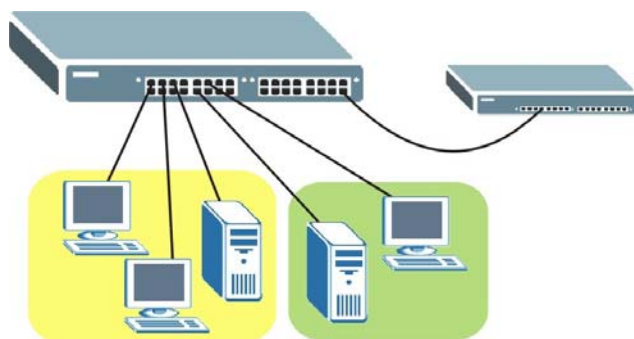
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the index number identifying this subnet based VLAN. Click on any of these numbers to edit an existing subnet based VLAN.
Active	This field shows whether the subnet based VLAN is active or not.
Name	This field shows the name the subnet based VLAN.
IP	This field shows the IP address of the subnet for this subnet based VLAN.
Mask-Bits	This field shows the subnet mask in bit number format for this subnet based VLAN.
VID	This field shows the VLAN ID of the frames which belong to this subnet based VLAN.
Priority	This field shows the priority which is assigned to frames belonging to this subnet based VLAN.
Delete	Click this to delete the subnet based VLANs which you marked for deletion.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 9.8 Protocol Based VLANs

Protocol based VLANs allow you to group traffic into logical VLANs based on the protocol you specify. When an upstream frame is received on a port (configured for a protocol based VLAN), the Switch checks if a tag is added already and its protocol. The untagged packets of the same protocol are then placed in the same protocol based VLAN. One advantage of using protocol based VLANs is that priority can be assigned to traffic of the same protocol.

Note: Protocol based VLAN applies to un-tagged packets and is applicable only when you use IEEE 802.1Q tagged VLAN.

For example, ports 1, 2, 3 and 4 belong to static VLAN 100, and ports 4, 5, 6, 7 belong to static VLAN 120. You can configure a protocol based VLAN A with priority 3 for ARP traffic received on port 1, 2 and 3. You can also have a protocol based VLAN B with priority 2 for Apple Talk traffic received on port 6 and 7. All upstream ARP traffic from port 1, 2 and 3 will be grouped together, and all upstream Apple Talk traffic from port 6 and 7 will be in another group and have higher priority than ARP traffic when they go through the uplink port to a backbone switch C.

**Figure 46** Protocol Based VLAN Application Example

# 9.9 Configuring Protocol Based VLAN

Click **Protocol Based VLAN** in the **VLAN Port Setting** screen to display the configuration screen as shown.

**Figure 47** Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Protocol Based VLAN

The screenshot shows the 'Protocol Based VLAN' configuration interface. At the top, there's a title bar with 'Protocol Based VLAN' and a sub-header 'Vlan Port Setting'. The main area contains several configuration fields: 'Active' (checkbox), 'Port' (text box), 'Name' (text box), 'Ethernet-type' (radio buttons for 'IP' and 'Others', with a dropdown for 'IP' and a text box for 'Others' followed by '(Hex)'), 'VID' (text box), and 'Priority' (dropdown menu). Below these fields are 'Add' and 'Cancel' buttons. At the bottom, there is a table with columns: Index, Active, Port, Name, Ethernet-type, VID, Priority, and Delete. Below the table are 'Delete' and 'Cancel' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 26** Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Protocol Based VLAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to activate this protocol based VLAN.
Port	Type a port number to be included in this protocol based VLAN.  This port must belong to a static VLAN in order to participate in a protocol based VLAN. See <a href="#">Chapter 9 on page 99</a> for more details on setting up VLANs.
Name	Enter up to 32 alphanumeric characters to identify this protocol based VLAN.
Ethernet-type	Select a predefined protocol to be included in this protocol based VLAN or select <b>Others</b> and type the protocol number in hexadecimal notation. For example, the IP protocol in hexadecimal notation is 0800, and Novell IPX protocol is 8137.  Note: Protocols in the hexadecimal number range of 0x0000 to 0x05ff are not allowed to be used for protocol based VLANs.
VID	Enter the ID of a VLAN to which the port belongs. This must be an existing VLAN which you defined in the <b>Advanced Applications &gt; VLAN</b> screens.
Priority	Select the priority level that the Switch will assign to frames belonging to this VLAN.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	This is the index number identifying this protocol based VLAN. Click on any of these numbers to edit an existing protocol based VLAN.

**Table 26** Advanced Application > VLAN > VLAN Port Setting > Protocol Based VLAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	This field shows whether the protocol based VLAN is active or not.
Port	This field shows which port belongs to this protocol based VLAN.
Name	This field shows the name the protocol based VLAN.
Ethernet-type	This field shows which Ethernet protocol is part of this protocol based VLAN.
VID	This field shows the VLAN ID of the port.
Priority	This field shows the priority which is assigned to frames belonging to this protocol based VLAN.
Delete	Click this to delete the protocol based VLANs which you marked for deletion.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 9.10 Create an IP-based VLAN Example

This example shows you how to create an IP VLAN which includes ports 1, 4 and 8. Follow these steps using the screen below:

- 1 Activate this protocol based VLAN.
- 2 Type the port number you want to include in this protocol based VLAN. Type **1**.
- 3 Give this protocol-based VLAN a descriptive name. Type **IP-VLAN**.
- 4 Select the protocol. Leave the default value **IP**.
- 5 Type the VLAN ID of an existing VLAN. In our example we already created a static VLAN with an ID of 5. Type **5**.
- 6 Leave the priority set to **0** and click **Add**.

**Figure 48** Protocol Based VLAN Configuration Example

**Protocol Based VLAN**

Active ☒

Port

Name

Ethernet-type ☒ IP ☐ Others  (Hex)

VID

Priority

Index	Active	Port	Name	Ethernet-type	VID	Priority	Delete
<input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>							

**EXAMPLE**

To add more ports to this protocol based VLAN.

- 1 Click the index number of the protocol based VLAN entry. Click **1**.
- 2 Change the value in the **Port** field to the next port you want to add.
- 3 Click **Add**.

## 9.11 Port-based VLAN Setup

Port-based VLANs are VLANs where the packet forwarding decision is based on the destination MAC address and its associated port.

Port-based VLANs require allowed outgoing ports to be defined for each port. Therefore, if you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, for example, between conference rooms in a hotel, you must define the egress (an egress port is an outgoing port, that is, a port through which a data packet leaves) for both ports.

Port-based VLANs are specific only to the Switch on which they were created.

Note: When you activate port-based VLAN, the Switch uses a default VLAN ID of 1. You cannot change it.

Note: In screens (such as **IP Setup** and **Filtering**) that require a VID, you must enter 1 as the VID.

The port-based VLAN setup screen is shown next. The **CPU** management port forms a VLAN with all Ethernet ports.

### 9.11.1 Configure a Port-based VLAN

Select **Port Based** as the **VLAN Type** in the **Switch Setup** screen and then click **VLAN** from the navigation panel to display the following screen. Select either **All Connected** or **Port Isolated** from the drop-down list depending on your VLAN and VLAN security requirements. If VLAN members need to communicate directly with each other, then select **All Connected**. Select **Port Isolated** if you want to restrict users from communicating directly. Click **Apply** to save your settings.

113

Figure 10 Port Based VLAN Setup (All Connected)

Setting Wizard: All connected

**Incoming**

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	
1	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	1
2	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	2
3	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	3
4	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	4
5	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	5
6	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	6
7	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	7
8	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	8
9	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	9
10	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	10
11	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	11
12	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	12
13	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	13
14	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	14
15	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	15
16	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	16
17	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	17
18	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	18
19	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	19
20	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	20
21	✓	✓	✓	✓																									



The following screen shows users on a port-based, port-isolated VLAN configuration.

**Figure 50** Advanced Application > VLAN: Port Based VLAN Setup (Port Isolation)

Port Based VLAN Setup

Setting WizardPort isolationApply

Incoming

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	2
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	3
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	4
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	5
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	6
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	7
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	8
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	9
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	10
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	11
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	12
13	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	13
14	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	14
15	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	15
16	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	16
17	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	17
18	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	18
19	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	19
20	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	20
21	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	21
22	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	22
23	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	23
24	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	24
25	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	25
26	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	26
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	27
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	28
CPU	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	CPU
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	

Outgoing

ApplyCancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 27** Advanced Application > VLAN: Port Based VLAN Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Setting Wizard	<p>Choose <b>All connected</b> or <b>Port isolation</b>.</p> <p><b>All connected</b> means all ports can communicate with each other, that is, there are no virtual LANs. All incoming and outgoing ports are selected. This option is the most flexible but also the least secure.</p> <p><b>Port isolation</b> means that each port can only communicate with the CPU management port and cannot communicate with each other. All incoming ports are selected while only the CPU outgoing port is selected. This option is the most limiting but also the most secure.</p> <p>After you make your selection, click <b>Apply</b> (top right of screen) to display the screens as mentioned above. You can still customize these settings by adding/deleting incoming or outgoing ports, but you must also click <b>Apply</b> at the bottom of the screen.</p>
Incoming	<p>These are the ingress ports; an ingress port is an incoming port, that is, a port through which a data packet enters. If you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, you must define the ingress port for both ports. The numbers in the top row denote the incoming port for the corresponding port listed on the left (its outgoing port). <b>CPU</b> refers to the Switch management port. By default it forms a VLAN with all Ethernet ports. If it does not form a VLAN with a particular port then the Switch cannot be managed from that port.</p>
Outgoing	<p>These are the egress ports. An egress port is an outgoing port, that is, a port through which a data packet leaves. If you wish to allow two subscriber ports to talk to each other, you must define the egress port for both ports. <b>CPU</b> refers to the Switch management port. By default it forms a VLAN with all Ethernet ports. If it does not form a VLAN with a particular port then the Switch cannot be managed from that port.</p>
Apply	<p>Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.</p>
Cancel	<p>Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.</p>

# Static MAC Forward Setup

Use these screens to configure static MAC address forwarding.

## 10.1 Overview

This chapter discusses how to configure forwarding rules based on MAC addresses of devices on your network.

## 10.2 Configuring Static MAC Forwarding

A static MAC address is an address that has been manually entered in the MAC address table. Static MAC addresses do not age out. When you set up static MAC address rules, you are setting static MAC addresses for a port. This may reduce the need for broadcasting.

Static MAC address forwarding together with port security allows only computers in the MAC address table on a port to access the Switch. See [Chapter 19 on page 165](#) for more information on port security.

Click **Advanced Applications > Static MAC Forwarding** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen as shown.

**Figure 51** Advanced Application > Static MAC Forwarding

Index	Active	Name	MAC Address	VID	Port	Delete



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 28** Advanced Application > Static MAC Forwarding

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to activate your rule. You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it by clearing this.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for identification purposes for this static MAC address forwarding rule.
MAC Address	Enter the MAC address in valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs. <b>Note:</b> Static MAC addresses do not age out.
VID	Enter the VLAN identification number.
Port	Enter the port where the MAC address entered in the previous field will be automatically forwarded.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save your rule to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses this rule if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	Click an index number to modify a static MAC address rule for a port.
Active	This field displays whether this static MAC address forwarding rule is active ( <b>Yes</b> ) or not ( <b>No</b> ). You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for identification purposes for this static MAC address-forwarding rule.
MAC Address	This field displays the MAC address that will be forwarded and the VLAN identification number to which the MAC address belongs.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group.
Port	This field displays the port where the MAC address shown in the next field will be forwarded.
Delete	Click <b>Delete</b> to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the <b>Delete</b> check boxes.

# Static Multicast Forward Setup

Use these screens to configure static multicast address forwarding.

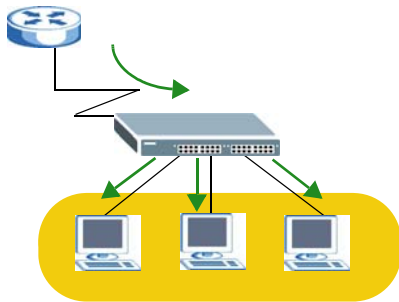
## 11.1 Static Multicast Forwarding Overview

A multicast MAC address is the MAC address of a member of a multicast group. A static multicast address is a multicast MAC address that has been manually entered in the multicast table. Static multicast addresses do not age out. Static multicast forwarding allows you (the administrator) to forward multicast frames to a member without the member having to join the group first.

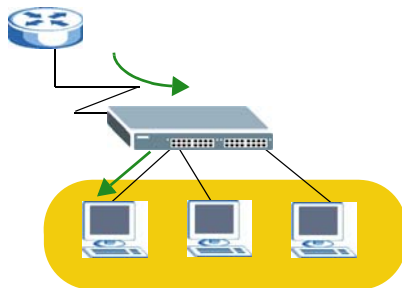
If a multicast group has no members, then the switch will either flood the multicast frames to all ports or drop them. You can configure this in the **Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting** screen (see [Section 24.3 on page 189](#)). [Figure 52](#) shows such unknown multicast frames flooded to all ports. With static multicast forwarding, you can forward these multicasts to port(s)

within a VLAN group. [Figure 53](#) shows frames being forwarded to devices connected to port 3. [Figure 54](#) shows frames being forwarded to ports 2 and 3 within VLAN group 4.

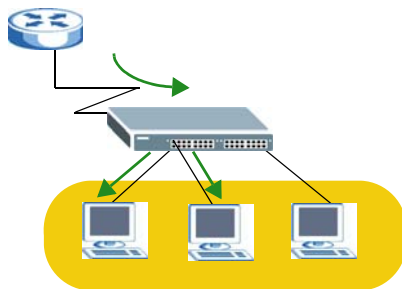
**Figure 52** No Static Multicast Forwarding



**Figure 53** Static Multicast Forwarding to A Single Port



**Figure 54** Static Multicast Forwarding to Multiple Ports



## 11.2 Configuring Static Multicast Forwarding

Use this screen to configure rules to forward specific multicast frames, such as streaming or control frames, to specific port(s).

Click **Advanced Application > Static Multicast Forwarding** to display the configuration screen as shown.

**Figure 55** Advanced Application > Static Multicast Forwarding

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 29** Advanced Application > Static Multicast Forwarding

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to activate your rule. You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it by clearing this check box.
Name	Type a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for this static multicast MAC address forwarding rule. This is for identification only.
MAC Address	Enter a multicast MAC address which identifies the multicast group. The last binary bit of the first octet pair in a multicast MAC address must be 1. For example, the first octet pair 00000001 is 01 and 00000011 is 03 in hexadecimal, so 01:00:5e:00:00:0A and 03:00:5e:00:00:27 are valid multicast MAC addresses.
VID	You can forward frames with matching destination MAC address to port(s) within a VLAN group. Enter the ID that identifies the VLAN group here. If you don't have a specific target VLAN, enter 1.
Port	Enter the port(s) where frames with destination MAC address that matched the entry above are forwarded. You can enter multiple ports separated by (no space) comma (,) or hyphen (-). For example, enter "3-5" for ports 3, 4, and 5. Enter "3,5,7" for ports 3, 5, and 7.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save your rule to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses this rule if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to reset the fields to their last saved values.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	Click an index number to modify a static multicast MAC address rule for port(s).
Active	This field displays whether a static multicast MAC address forwarding rule is active ( <b>Yes</b> ) or not ( <b>No</b> ). You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for identification purposes for a static multicast MAC address-forwarding rule.
MAC Address	This field displays the multicast MAC address that identifies a multicast group.
VID	This field displays the ID number of a VLAN group to which frames containing the specified multicast MAC address will be forwarded.

**Table 29** Advanced Application > Static Multicast Forwarding (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port(s) within a identified VLAN group to which frames containing the specified multicast MAC address will be forwarded.
Delete	Click <b>Delete</b> to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the <b>Delete</b> check boxes.

## Filtering

This chapter discusses MAC address port filtering.

### 12.1 Configure a Filtering Rule

Configure the Switch to filter traffic based on the traffic's source, destination MAC addresses and/or VLAN group (ID).

Click **Advanced Application > Filtering** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown next.

**Figure 56** Advanced Application > Filtering

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

**Table 30** Advanced Application > Filtering

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Make sure to select this check box to activate your rule. You may temporarily deactivate a rule without deleting it by deselecting this check box.
Name	Type a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for this rule. This is for identification only.
Action	<p>Select <b>Discard source</b> to drop frames from the source MAC address (specified in the <b>MAC</b> field). The Switch can still send frames to the MAC address.</p> <p>Select <b>Discard destination</b> to drop frames to the destination MAC address (specified in the <b>MAC</b> address). The Switch can still receive frames originating from the MAC address.</p> <p>Select <b>Discard source</b> and <b>Discard destination</b> to block traffic to/from the MAC address specified in the <b>MAC</b> field.</p>

**Table 30** Advanced Application > Filtering (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MAC	Type a MAC address in a valid MAC address format, that is, six hexadecimal character pairs.
VID	Type the VLAN group identification number.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to clear the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays the index number of the rule. Click an index number to change the settings.
Active	This field displays <b>Yes</b> when the rule is activated and <b>No</b> when is it deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this rule. This is for identification purposes only.
MAC Address	This field displays the source/destination MAC address with the VLAN identification number to which the MAC address belongs.
VID	This field displays the VLAN group identification number.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the <b>Delete</b> column and then click the <b>Delete</b> button.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the selected checkbox(es) in the <b>Delete</b> column.

# Spanning Tree Protocol

The Switch supports Spanning Tree Protocol (STP), Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) and Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (MSTP) as defined in the following standards.

- IEEE 802.1D Spanning Tree Protocol
- IEEE 802.1w Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol
- IEEE 802.1s Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol

The Switch also allows you to set up multiple STP configurations (or trees). Ports can then be assigned to the trees.

## 13.1 STP/RSTP Overview

(R)STP detects and breaks network loops and provides backup links between switches, bridges or routers. It allows a Switch to interact with other (R)STP-compliant switches in your network to ensure that only one path exists between any two stations on the network.

The Switch uses IEEE 802.1w RSTP (Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol) that allows faster convergence of the spanning tree than STP (while also being backwards compatible with STP-only aware bridges). In RSTP, topology change information is directly propagated throughout the network from the device that generates the topology change. In STP, a longer delay is required as the device that causes a topology change first notifies the root bridge and then the root bridge notifies the network. Both RSTP and STP flush unwanted learned addresses from the filtering database. In RSTP, the port states are Discarding, Learning, and Forwarding.

Note: In this user's guide, "STP" refers to both STP and RSTP.

### 13.1.1 STP Terminology

The root bridge is the base of the spanning tree.

Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame onto a LAN through that port. The recommended cost is assigned according to the speed of the link to which a port is attached. The slower the media, the higher the cost.

**Table 31** STP Path Costs

	LINK SPEED	RECOMMENDED VALUE	RECOMMENDED RANGE	ALLOWED RANGE
Path Cost	4Mbps	250	100 to 1000	1 to 65535
Path Cost	10Mbps	100	50 to 600	1 to 65535
Path Cost	16Mbps	62	40 to 400	1 to 65535
Path Cost	100Mbps	19	10 to 60	1 to 65535



**Table 31** STP Path Costs

	LINK SPEED	RECOMMENDED VALUE	RECOMMENDED RANGE	ALLOWED RANGE
Path Cost	1Gbps	4	3 to 10	1 to 65535
Path Cost	10Gbps	2	1 to 5	1 to 65535

On each bridge, the bridge communicates with the root through the root port. The root port is the port on this Switch with the lowest path cost to the root (the root path cost). If there is no root port, then this Switch has been accepted as the root bridge of the spanning tree network.

For each LAN segment, a designated bridge is selected. This bridge has the lowest cost to the root among the bridges connected to the LAN.

### 13.1.2 How STP Works

After a bridge determines the lowest cost-spanning tree with STP, it enables the root port and the ports that are the designated ports for connected LANs, and disables all other ports that participate in STP. Network packets are therefore only forwarded between enabled ports, eliminating any possible network loops.

STP-aware switches exchange Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) periodically. When the bridged LAN topology changes, a new spanning tree is constructed.

Once a stable network topology has been established, all bridges listen for Hello BPDUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) transmitted from the root bridge. If a bridge does not get a Hello BPDU after a predefined interval (Max Age), the bridge assumes that the link to the root bridge is down. This bridge then initiates negotiations with other bridges to reconfigure the network to re-establish a valid network topology.

### 13.1.3 STP Port States

STP assigns five port states to eliminate packet looping. A bridge port is not allowed to go directly from blocking state to forwarding state so as to eliminate transient loops.

**Table 32** STP Port States

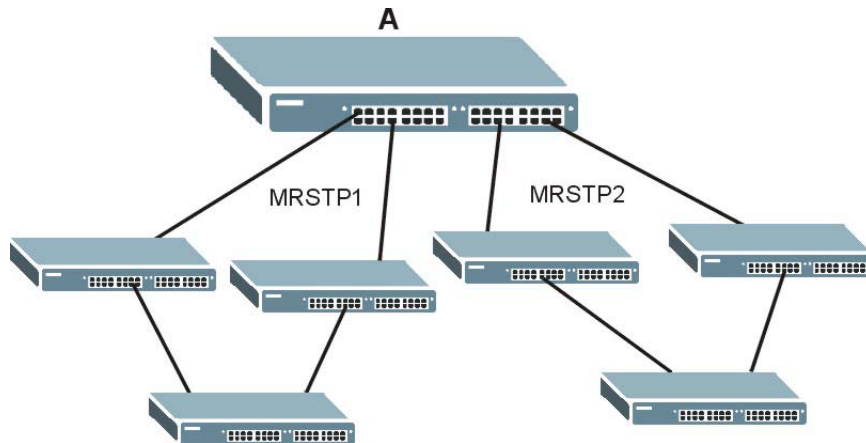
PORT STATE	DESCRIPTION
Disabled	STP is disabled (default).
Blocking	Only configuration and management BPDUs are received and processed.
Listening	All BPDUs are received and processed.  Note: The listening state does not exist in RSTP.
Learning	All BPDUs are received and processed. Information frames are submitted to the learning process but not forwarded.
Forwarding	All BPDUs are received and processed. All information frames are received and forwarded.

### 13.1.4 Multiple RSTP

MRSTP (Multiple RSTP) is ZyXEL's proprietary feature that is compatible with RSTP and STP. With MRSTP, you can have more than one spanning tree on your Switch and assign port(s) to each tree. Each spanning tree operates independently with its own bridge information.

In the following example, there are two RSTP instances (**MRSTP 1** and **MRSTP2**) on switch **A**.

**Figure 57** MRSTP Network Example



To set up MRSTP, activate MRSTP on the Switch and specify which port(s) belong to which spanning tree.

Note: Each port can belong to one STP tree only.

### 13.1.5 Multiple STP

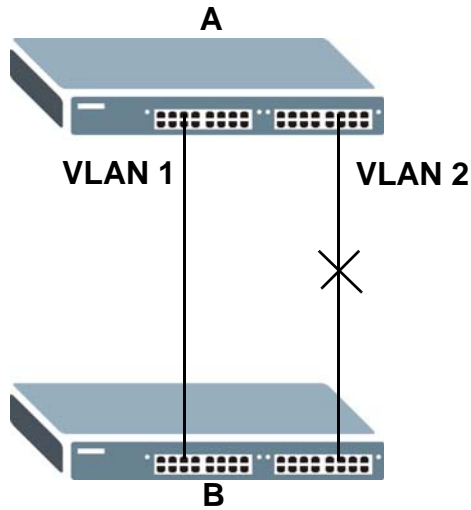
Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol (IEEE 802.1s) is backwards compatible with STP/RSTP and addresses the limitations of existing spanning tree protocols (STP and RSTP) in networks to include the following features:

- One Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST) that represents the entire network's connectivity.
- Grouping of multiple bridges (or switching devices) into regions that appear as one single bridge on the network.
- A VLAN can be mapped to a specific Multiple Spanning Tree Instance (MSTI). MSTI allows multiple VLANs to use the same spanning tree.
- Load-balancing is possible as traffic from different VLANs can use distinct paths in a region.

### 13.1.5.1 MSTP Network Example

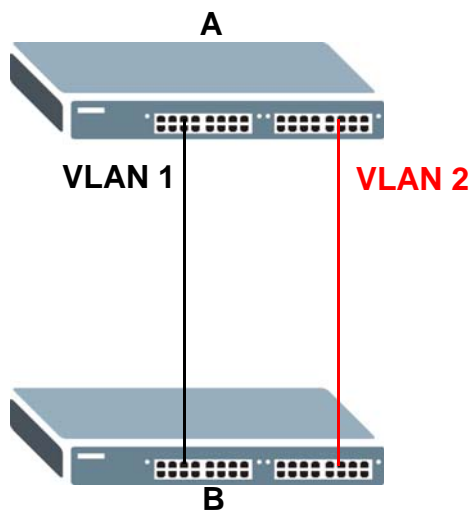
The following figure shows a network example where two VLANs are configured on the two switches. If the switches are using STP or RSTP, the link for VLAN 2 will be blocked as STP and RSTP allow only one link in the network and block the redundant link.

**Figure 58** STP/RSTP Network Example



With MSTP, VLANs 1 and 2 are mapped to different spanning trees in the network. Thus traffic from the two VLANs travel on different paths. The following figure shows the network example using MSTP.

**Figure 59** MSTP Network Example



### 13.1.5.2 MST Region

An MST region is a logical grouping of multiple network devices that appears as a single device to the rest of the network. Each MSTP-enabled device can only belong to one MST region. When BPDUs enter an MST region, external path cost (of paths outside this region) is increased by one. Internal path cost (of paths within this region) is increased by one when BPDUs traverse the region.

Devices that belong to the same MST region are configured to have the same MSTP configuration identification settings. These include the following parameters:

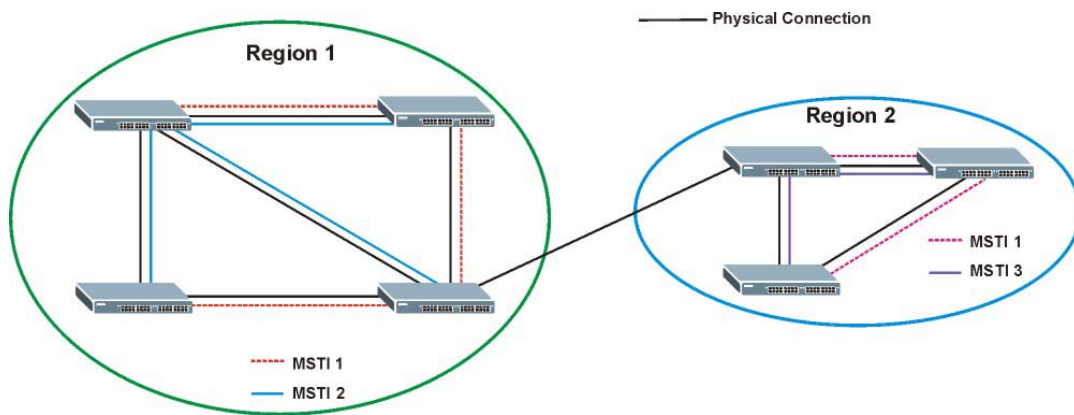
- Name of the MST region
- Revision level as the unique number for the MST region
- VLAN-to-MST Instance mapping

### 13.1.5.3 MST Instance

An MST Instance (MSTI) is a spanning tree instance. VLANs can be configured to run on a specific MSTI. Each created MSTI is identified by a unique number (known as an MST ID) known internally to a region. Thus an MSTI does not span across MST regions.

The following figure shows an example where there are two MST regions. Regions 1 and 2 have 2 spanning tree instances.

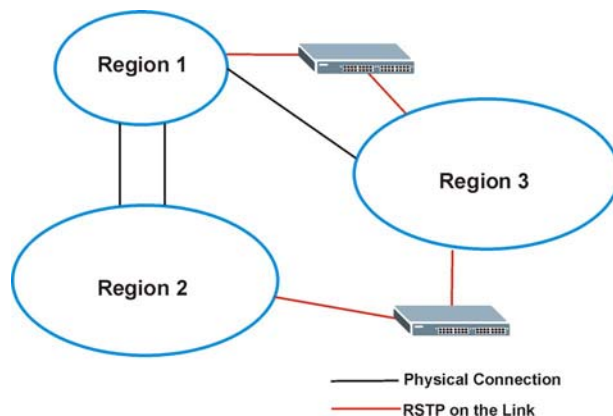
**Figure 60** MSTIs in Different Regions



### 13.1.5.4 Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST)

A CIST represents the connectivity of the entire network and it is equivalent to a spanning tree in an STP/RSTP. The CIST is the default MST instance (MSTID 0). Any VLANs that are not members of an MST instance are members of the CIST. In an MSTP-enabled network, there is only one CIST that runs between MST regions and single spanning tree devices. A network may contain multiple MST regions and other network segments running RSTP.

**Figure 61** MSTP and Legacy RSTP Network Example



## 13.2 Spanning Tree Protocol Status Screen

The Spanning Tree Protocol status screen changes depending on what standard you choose to implement on your network. Click **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** to see the screen as shown.

**Figure 62** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol

The screenshot shows the 'Spanning Tree Protocol Status' screen with tabs for Configuration, RSTP, MRSTP, and MSTP. The 'RSTP' tab is selected, displaying the following table:

Bridge	Root	Our Bridge
Bridge ID	0000-000000000000	0000-000000000000
Hello Time (second)	0	0
Max Age (second)	0	0
Forwarding Delay (second)	0	0
Cost to Bridge	0	
Port ID	0x0000	
Topology Changed Times	0	
Time Since Last Change	0:00:00	

This screen differs depending on which STP mode (RSTP, MRSTP or MSTP) you configure on the Switch. This screen is described in detail in the section that follows the configuration section for each STP mode. Click **Configuration** to activate one of the STP standards on the Switch.

## 13.3 Spanning Tree Configuration

Use the **Spanning Tree Configuration** screen to activate one of the STP modes on the Switch. Click **Configuration** in the **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol**.

**Figure 63** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Configuration

The screenshot shows the 'Spanning Tree Configuration' screen with a 'Status' tab. Under 'Spanning Tree Mode', the following options are listed:

- ☒ Rapid Spanning Tree
- ☐ Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree
- ☐ Multiple Spanning Tree

At the bottom, there are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 33** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Spanning Tree Mode	<p>You can activate one of the STP modes on the Switch.</p> <p>Select <b>Rapid Spanning Tree</b>, <b>Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree</b> or <b>Multiple Spanning Tree</b>. See <a href="#">Section 13.1 on page 124</a> for background information on STP.</p>

**Table 33** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Configuration (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 13.4 Configure Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol

Use this screen to configure RSTP settings, see [Section 13.1 on page 124](#) for more information on RSTP. Click **RSTP** in the **Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol** screen.

**Figure 64** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > RSTP

Port	Active	Edge	Priority	Path Cost
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	128	19
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	128	19
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	128	19
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	128	19
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	128	19
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	128	19
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	128	19
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	128	4
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	128	4

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 34** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > RSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	Click <b>Status</b> to display the <b>RSTP Status</b> screen (see <a href="#">Figure 65 on page 132</a> ).
Active	Select this check box to activate RSTP. Clear this checkbox to disable RSTP.  Note: You must also activate <b>Rapid Spanning Tree</b> in the <b>Advanced Application &gt; Spanning Tree Protocol &gt; Configuration</b> screen to enable RSTP on the Switch.

**Table 34** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > RSTP (continued)

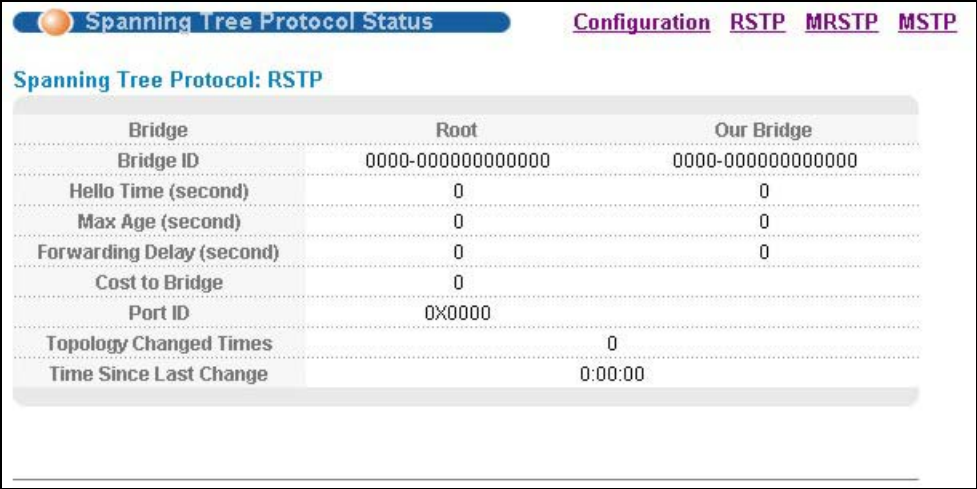
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Bridge Priority	<p>Bridge priority is used in determining the root switch, root port and designated port. The switch with the highest priority (lowest numeric value) becomes the STP root switch. If all switches have the same priority, the switch with the lowest MAC address will then become the root switch. Select a value from the drop-down list box.</p> <p>The lower the numeric value you assign, the higher the priority for this bridge.</p> <p>Bridge Priority determines the root bridge, which in turn determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.</p>
Hello Time	<p>This is the time interval in seconds between BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) configuration message generations by the root switch. The allowed range is 1 to 10 seconds.</p>
Max Age	<p>This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure. All switch ports (except for designated ports) should receive BPDUs at regular intervals. Any port that ages out STP information (provided in the last BPDU) becomes the designated port for the attached LAN. If it is a root port, a new root port is selected from among the switch ports attached to the network. The allowed range is 6 to 40 seconds.</p>
Forwarding Delay	<p>This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch will wait before changing states. This delay is required because every switch must receive information about topology changes before it starts to forward frames. In addition, each port needs time to listen for conflicting information that would make it return to a blocking state; otherwise, temporary data loops might result. The allowed range is 4 to 30 seconds.</p> <p>As a general rule:</p> <p>Note: <math>2 * (\text{Forward Delay} - 1) \geq \text{Max Age} \geq 2 * (\text{Hello Time} + 1)</math></p>
Port	<p>This field displays the port number.</p>
*	<p>Settings in this row apply to all ports.</p> <p>Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p>Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
Active	<p>Select this check box to activate RSTP on this port.</p>
Edge	<p>Select this check box to configure a port as an edge port when it is directly attached to a computer. An edge port changes its initial STP port state from blocking state to forwarding state immediately without going through listening and learning states right after the port is configured as an edge port or when its link status changes.</p> <p>Note: An edge port becomes a non-edge port as soon as it receives a Bridge Protocol Data Unit (BPDU).</p>
Priority	<p>Configure the priority for each port here.</p> <p>Priority decides which port should be disabled when more than one port forms a loop in a switch. Ports with a higher priority numeric value are disabled first. The allowed range is between 0 and 255 and the default value is 128.</p>
Path Cost	<p>Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame on to a LAN through that port. It is recommended to assign this value according to the speed of the bridge. The slower the media, the higher the cost - see <a href="#">Table 31 on page 124</a> for more information.</p>
Apply	<p>Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.</p>
Cancel	<p>Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.</p>

# 13.5 Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Status

Click **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** in the navigation panel to display the status screen as shown next. See [Section 13.1 on page 124](#) for more information on RSTP.

Note: This screen is only available after you activate RSTP on the Switch.

**Figure 65** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: RSTP



Bridge	Root	Our Bridge
Bridge ID	0000-000000000000	0000-000000000000
Hello Time (second)	0	0
Max Age (second)	0	0
Forwarding Delay (second)	0	0
Cost to Bridge	0	
Port ID	0x0000	
Topology Changed Times	0	
Time Since Last Change	0:00:00	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 35** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: RSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Configuration	Click <b>Configuration</b> to specify which STP mode you want to activate. Click <b>RSTP</b> to edit RSTP settings on the Switch.
Bridge	<b>Root</b> refers to the base of the spanning tree (the root bridge). <b>Our Bridge</b> is this Switch. This Switch may also be the root bridge.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of the bridge priority plus the MAC address. This ID is the same for <b>Root</b> and <b>Our Bridge</b> if the Switch is the root switch.
Hello Time (second)	This is the time interval (in seconds) at which the root switch transmits a configuration message. The root bridge determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.
Max Age (second)	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch can wait without receiving a configuration message before attempting to reconfigure.
Forwarding Delay (second)	This is the time (in seconds) the root switch will wait before changing states (that is, listening to learning to forwarding). See <a href="#">Section 13.1.3 on page 125</a> for information on port states.  Note: The listening state does not exist in RSTP.
Cost to Bridge	This is the path cost from the root port on this Switch to the root switch.
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the Switch through which this Switch must communicate with the root of the Spanning Tree.
Topology Changed Times	This is the number of times the spanning tree has been reconfigured.
Time Since Last Change	This is the time since the spanning tree was last reconfigured.



## 13.6 Configure Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol

To configure MRSTP, click **MRSTP** in the **Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol** screen. See [Section 13.1 on page 124](#) for more information on MRSTP.

**Figure 66** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MRSTP

Tree	Active	Bridge Priority	Hello Time	MAX Age	Forwarding Delay
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	2 seconds	20 seconds	15
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	2 seconds	20 seconds	15

Port	Active	Edge	Priority	Path Cost	Tree
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>			1
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	128	19	1
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	128	19	1
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	128	19	1
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	128	19	1

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 36** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MRSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	Click <b>Status</b> to display the <b>MRSTP Status</b> screen (see <a href="#">Figure 65 on page 132</a> ).
Tree	This is a read-only index number of the STP trees.
Active	<p>Select this check box to activate an STP tree. Clear this checkbox to disable an STP tree.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You must also activate <b>Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree</b> in the <b>Advanced Application &gt; Spanning Tree Protocol &gt; Configuration</b> screen to enable MRSTP on the Switch.</p>
Bridge Priority	<p>Bridge priority is used in determining the root switch, root port and designated port. The switch with the highest priority (lowest numeric value) becomes the STP root switch. If all switches have the same priority, the switch with the lowest MAC address will then become the root switch. Select a value from the drop-down list box.</p> <p>The lower the numeric value you assign, the higher the priority for this bridge.</p> <p>Bridge Priority determines the root bridge, which in turn determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.</p>
Hello Time	This is the time interval in seconds between BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) configuration message generations by the root switch. The allowed range is 1 to 10 seconds.

**Table 36** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MRSTP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Max Age	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure. All switch ports (except for designated ports) should receive BPDUs at regular intervals. Any port that ages out STP information (provided in the last BPDU) becomes the designated port for the attached LAN. If it is a root port, a new root port is selected from among the Switch ports attached to the network. The allowed range is 6 to 40 seconds.
Forwarding Delay	<p>This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch will wait before changing states. This delay is required because every switch must receive information about topology changes before it starts to forward frames. In addition, each port needs time to listen for conflicting information that would make it return to a blocking state; otherwise, temporary data loops might result. The allowed range is 4 to 30 seconds.</p> <p>As a general rule:</p> <p><b>Note:</b> <math>2 * (\text{Forward Delay} - 1) \geq \text{Max Age} \geq 2 * (\text{Hello Time} + 1)</math></p>
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	<p>Settings in this row apply to all ports.</p> <p>Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
Active	Select this check box to activate STP on this port.
Edge	<p>Select this check box to configure a port as an edge port when it is directly attached to a computer. An edge port changes its initial STP port state from blocking state to forwarding state immediately without going through listening and learning states right after the port is configured as an edge port or when its link status changes.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> An edge port becomes a non-edge port as soon as it receives a Bridge Protocol Data Unit (BPDU).</p>
Priority	<p>Configure the priority for each port here.</p> <p>Priority decides which port should be disabled when more than one port forms a loop in the Switch. Ports with a higher priority numeric value are disabled first. The allowed range is between 0 and 255 and the default value is 128.</p>
Path Cost	Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame on to a LAN through that port. It is recommended that you assign this value according to the speed of the bridge. The slower the media, the higher the cost - see <a href="#">Table 31 on page 124</a> for more information.
Tree	Select which STP tree configuration this port should participate in.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 13.7 Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol Status

Click **Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol** in the navigation panel to display the status screen as shown next. See [Section 13.1 on page 124](#) for more information on MRSTP.

Note: This screen is only available after you activate MRSTP on the Switch.

**Figure 67** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MRSTP

Spanning Tree Protocol Status			Configuration	RSTP	MRSTP	MSTP
Spanning Tree Protocol: MRSTP						
Tree <span>1</span>						
Bridge	Root	Our Bridge				
Bridge ID	8000-001349000002	8000-001349000002				
Hello Time (second)	2	2				
Max Age (second)	20	20				
Forwarding Delay (second)	15	15				
Cost to Bridge	0					
Port ID	0x0000					
Topology Changed Times	0					
Time Since Last Change	0:00:00					

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 37** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MRSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Configuration	Click <b>Configuration</b> to specify which STP mode you want to activate. Click <b>MRSTP</b> to edit MRSTP settings on the Switch.
Tree	Select which STP tree configuration you want to view.
Bridge	<b>Root</b> refers to the base of the spanning tree (the root bridge). <b>Our Bridge</b> is this Switch. This Switch may also be the root bridge.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of bridge priority plus MAC address. This ID is the same for <b>Root</b> and <b>Our Bridge</b> if the Switch is the root switch.
Hello Time (second)	This is the time interval (in seconds) at which the root switch transmits a configuration message. The root bridge determines Hello Time, Max Age and Forwarding Delay.
Max Age (second)	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch can wait without receiving a configuration message before attempting to reconfigure.
Forwarding Delay (second)	This is the time (in seconds) the root switch will wait before changing states (that is, listening to learning to forwarding).  Note: The listening state does not exist in RSTP.
Cost to Bridge	This is the path cost from the root port on this Switch to the root switch.
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the Switch through which this Switch must communicate with the root of the Spanning Tree.
Topology Changed Times	This is the number of times the spanning tree has been reconfigured.
Time Since Last Change	This is the time since the spanning tree was last reconfigured.

# 13.8 Configure Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol

To configure MSTP, click **MSTP** in the **Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol** screen. See [Section 13.1.5 on page 126](#) for more information on MSTP.

**Figure 68** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP

Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol

PortStatus

Bridge:

Active

☐

Hello Time

2

seconds

MAX Age

20

seconds

Forwarding Delay

15

seconds

Maximum hops

20

Configuration Name

0019cb004701

Revision Number

0

Apply

Cancel

Instance:

Instance

Bridge Priority

32768

VLAN Range

Start

End

Add

Remove

Clear

Enabled VLAN(s)

Port	Active	Priority	Path Cost
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	128	19

Add

Cancel

Instance	VLAN	Active Port	Delete
0	1-4094	-	

Delete

Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 38** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	Click <b>Port</b> to display the <b>MSTP Port Configuration</b> screen (see <a href="#">Figure 69 on page 139</a> ).
Status	Click <b>Status</b> to display the <b>MSTP Status</b> screen (see <a href="#">Figure 70 on page 140</a> ).
Active	Select this check box to activate MSTP on the Switch. Clear this checkbox to disable MSTP on the Switch.  Note: You must also activate <b>Multiple Spanning Tree</b> in the <b>Advanced Application &gt; Spanning Tree Protocol &gt; Configuration</b> screen to enable MSTP on the Switch.
Hello Time	This is the time interval in seconds between BPDU (Bridge Protocol Data Units) configuration message generations by the root switch. The allowed range is 1 to 10 seconds.
MaxAge	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch can wait without receiving a BPDU before attempting to reconfigure. All switch ports (except for designated ports) should receive BPDUs at regular intervals. Any port that ages out STP information (provided in the last BPDU) becomes the designated port for the attached LAN. If it is a root port, a new root port is selected from among the Switch ports attached to the network. The allowed range is 6 to 40 seconds.
Forwarding Delay	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch will wait before changing states. This delay is required because every switch must receive information about topology changes before it starts to forward frames. In addition, each port needs time to listen for conflicting information that would make it return to a blocking state; otherwise, temporary data loops might result. The allowed range is 4 to 30 seconds. As a general rule:  Note: $2 * (\text{Forward Delay} - 1) \geq \text{Max Age} \geq 2 * (\text{Hello Time} + 1)$
Maximum hops	Enter the number of hops (between 1 and 255) in an MSTP region before the BPDU is discarded and the port information is aged.
Configuration Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 characters) of an MST region.
Revision Number	Enter a number to identify a region's configuration. Devices must have the same revision number to belong to the same region.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Instance	Use this section to configure MSTI (Multiple Spanning Tree Instance) settings.
Instance	Enter the number you want to use to identify this MST instance on the Switch. The Switch supports instance numbers 0-16.
Bridge Priority	Set the priority of the Switch for the specific spanning tree instance. The lower the number, the more likely the Switch will be chosen as the root bridge within the spanning tree instance.  Enter priority values between 0 and 61440 in increments of 4096 (thus valid values are 4096, 8192, 12288, 16384, 20480, 24576, 28672, 32768, 36864, 40960, 45056, 49152, 53248, 57344 and 61440).

**Table 38** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN Range	<p>Enter the start of the VLAN ID range that you want to add or remove from the VLAN range edit area in the <b>Start</b> field. Enter the end of the VLAN ID range that you want to add or remove from the VLAN range edit area in the <b>End</b> field.</p> <p>Next click:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Add</b> - to add this range of VLAN(s) to be mapped to the MST instance.</li> <li>• <b>Remove</b> - to remove this range of VLAN(s) from being mapped to the MST instance.</li> <li>• <b>Clear</b> - to remove all VLAN(s) from being mapped to this MST instance.</li> </ul>
Enabled VLAN(s)	This field displays which VLAN(s) are mapped to this MST instance.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	<p>Settings in this row apply to all ports.</p> <p>Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p>Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
Active	Select this check box to add this port to the MST instance.
Priority	<p>Configure the priority for each port here.</p> <p>Priority decides which port should be disabled when more than one port forms a loop in the Switch. Ports with a higher priority numeric value are disabled first. The allowed range is between 0 and 255 and the default value is 128.</p>
Path Cost	Path cost is the cost of transmitting a frame on to a LAN through that port. It is recommended to assign this value according to the speed of the bridge. The slower the media, the higher the cost - see <a href="#">Table 31 on page 124</a> for more information.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save this MST instance to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses this change if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Instance	This field displays the ID of an MST instance.
VLAN	This field displays the VID (or VID ranges) to which the MST instance is mapped.
Active Port	This field display the ports configured to participate in the MST instance.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the <b>Delete</b> column and then click the <b>Delete</b> button.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

### 13.8.1 Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Port Configuration

To configure MSTP ports, click **Port** in the **Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP** screen.

**Figure 69** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP > Port

Port	Edge
*	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
6	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
7	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
8	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
9	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
11	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
12	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
13	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
14	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 39** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > MSTP > Port

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	<p>Settings in this row apply to all ports.</p> <p>Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
Edge	<p>Select this check box to configure a port as an edge port when it is directly attached to a computer. An edge port changes its initial STP port state from blocking state to forwarding state immediately without going through listening and learning states right after the port is configured as an edge port or when its link status changes.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> An edge port becomes a non-edge port as soon as it receives a Bridge Protocol Data Unit (BPDU).</p>
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.



## 13.9 Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol Status

Click **Advanced Application** > **Spanning Tree Protocol** in the navigation panel to display the status screen as shown next. See [Section 13.1.5 on page 126](#) for more information on MSTP.

Note: This screen is only available after you activate MSTP on the Switch.

**Figure 70** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MSTP

The screenshot shows the 'Spanning Tree Protocol Status' screen. At the top, there are tabs for 'Configuration', 'RSTP', 'MRSTP', and 'MSTP'. The 'MSTP' tab is selected. Below the tabs, the title 'Spanning Tree Protocol: MSTP' is displayed. Underneath, there is a section for 'CST' (Common Spanning Tree) and a section for 'MSTI' (Multiple Spanning Tree Instance).

**CST Section:**

Bridge	Root	Our Bridge
Bridge ID	0000-000000000000	8000-000000000000
Hello Time (second)	0	2
Max Age (second)	0	20
Forwarding Delay (second)	0	15
Cost to Bridge	0	0
Port ID	0x0000	0x0000
Configuration Name	001349000002	
Revision Number	0	
Configuration Digest	A317523DB32DA2D62	
Topology Changed Times	0	
Time Since Last Change	0	

**Instance:**

Instance	VLAN
0	1-4093

**MSTI 1**

Bridge	Regional Root	Our Bridge
Bridge ID	0000-000000000000	8001-000000000000
Internal Cost	0	0
Port ID	0x0000	0x0000

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 40** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MSTP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Configuration	Click <b>Configuration</b> to specify which STP mode you want to activate. Click <b>MSTP</b> to edit MSTP settings on the Switch.
CST	This section describes the Common Spanning Tree settings.
Bridge	<b>Root</b> refers to the base of the spanning tree (the root bridge). <b>Our Bridge</b> is this Switch. This ID is the same for <b>Root</b> and <b>Our Bridge</b> if the Switch is the root switch.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of bridge priority plus MAC address. This ID is the same for <b>Root</b> and <b>Our Bridge</b> if the Switch is the root switch.
Hello Time (second)	This is the time interval (in seconds) at which the root switch transmits a configuration message.
Max Age (second)	This is the maximum time (in seconds) a switch can wait without receiving a configuration message before attempting to reconfigure.
Forwarding Delay (second)	This is the time (in seconds) the root switch will wait before changing states (that is, listening to learning to forwarding).
Cost to Bridge	This is the path cost from the root port on this Switch to the root switch.



**Table 40** Advanced Application > Spanning Tree Protocol > Status: MSTP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the Switch through which this Switch must communicate with the root of the Spanning Tree.
Configuration Name	This field displays the configuration name for this MST region.
Revision Number	This field displays the revision number for this MST region.
Configuration Digest	A configuration digest is generated from the VLAN-MSTI mapping information.  This field displays the 16-octet signature that is included in an MSTP BPDU. This field displays the digest when MSTP is activated on the system.
Topology Changed Times	This is the number of times the spanning tree has been reconfigured.
Time Since Last Change	This is the time since the spanning tree was last reconfigured.
Instance:	These fields display the MSTI to VLAN mapping. In other words, which VLANs run on each spanning tree instance.
Instance	This field displays the MSTI ID.
VLAN	This field displays which VLANs are mapped to an MSTI.
MSTI	Select the MST instance settings you want to view.
Bridge	<b>Root</b> refers to the base of the MST instance. <b>Our Bridge</b> is this Switch. This Switch may also be the root bridge.
Bridge ID	This is the unique identifier for this bridge, consisting of bridge priority plus MAC address. This ID is the same for <b>Root</b> and <b>Our Bridge</b> if the Switch is the root switch.
Internal Cost	This is the path cost from the root port in this MST instance to the regional root switch.
Port ID	This is the priority and number of the port on the Switch through which this Switch must communicate with the root of the MST instance.

# Bandwidth Control

This chapter shows you how you can cap the maximum bandwidth using the **Bandwidth Control** screen.

## 14.1 Bandwidth Control Overview

Bandwidth control means defining a maximum allowable bandwidth for incoming and/or out-going traffic flows on a port.

### 14.1.1 CIR and PIR

The Committed Information Rate (CIR) is the guaranteed bandwidth for the incoming traffic flow on a port. The Peak Information Rate (PIR) is the maximum bandwidth allowed for the incoming traffic flow on a port when there is no network congestion.

The CIR and PIR should be set for all ports that use the same uplink bandwidth. If the CIR is reached, packets are sent at the rate up to the PIR. When network congestion occurs, packets through the ingress port exceeding the CIR will be marked for drop.

Note: The CIR should be less than the PIR.

Note: The sum of CIRs cannot be greater than or equal to the uplink bandwidth.

## 14.2 Bandwidth Control Setup

Click **Advanced Application > Bandwidth Control** in the navigation panel to bring up the screen as shown next.

**Figure 71** Advanced Application > Bandwidth Control

Port	Active	Commit Rate	Ingress Rate	Active	Peak Rate	Active	Egress Rate
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

**Table 41** Advanced Application > Bandwidth Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable bandwidth control on the Switch.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	<p>Settings in this row apply to all ports.</p> <p>Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p>Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
Ingress Rate	
Active	Select this check box to activate commit rate limits on this port.
Commit Rate	Specify the guaranteed bandwidth allowed in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the incoming traffic flow on a port. The commit rate should be less than the peak rate. The sum of commit rates cannot be greater than or equal to the uplink bandwidth.
Active	Select this check box to activate peak rate limits on this port.
Peak Rate	Specify the maximum bandwidth allowed in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the incoming traffic flow on a port.
Active	Select this check box to activate egress rate limits on this port.
Egress Rate	Specify the maximum bandwidth allowed in kilobits per second (Kbps) for the out-going traffic flow on a port.

**Table 41** Advanced Application > Bandwidth Control (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## Broadcast Storm Control

This chapter introduces and shows you how to configure the broadcast storm control feature.

### 15.1 Broadcast Storm Control Setup

Broadcast storm control limits the number of broadcast, multicast and destination lookup failure (DLF) packets the Switch receives per second on the ports. When the maximum number of allowable broadcast, multicast and/or DLF packets is reached per second, the subsequent packets are discarded. Enable this feature to reduce broadcast, multicast and/or DLF packets in your network. You can specify limits for each packet type on each port.

Click **Advanced Application > Broadcast Storm Control** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown next.

**Figure 72** Advanced Application > Broadcast Storm Control

Port	Broadcast (pkt/s)	Multicast (pkt/s)	DLF (pkt/s)
*	<input type="checkbox"/> [ ]	<input type="checkbox"/> [ ]	<input type="checkbox"/> [ ]
1	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0
2	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0
3	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0
4	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0
5	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0
6	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0
7	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0
8	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0	<input type="checkbox"/> 0

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 42** Advanced Application > Broadcast Storm Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable traffic storm control on the Switch. Clear this check box to disable this feature.
Port	This field displays a port number.

**Table 42** Advanced Application > Broadcast Storm Control (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
*	<p>Settings in this row apply to all ports.</p> <p>Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
Broadcast (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many broadcast packets the port receives per second.
Multicast (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many multicast packets the port receives per second.
DLF (pkt/s)	Select this option and specify how many destination lookup failure (DLF) packets the port receives per second.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

# Mirroring

This chapter discusses port mirroring setup screens.

## 16.1 Port Mirroring Setup

Port mirroring allows you to copy a traffic flow to a monitor port (the port you copy the traffic to) in order that you can examine the traffic from the monitor port without interference.

Click **Advanced Application > Mirroring** in the navigation panel to display the **Mirroring** screen. Use this screen to select a monitor port and specify the traffic flow to be copied to the monitor port.

**Figure 73** Advanced Application > Mirroring

Port	Mirrored	Direction
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	Ingress

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 43** Advanced Application > Mirroring

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to activate port mirroring on the Switch. Clear this check box to disable the feature.
Monitor Port	The monitor port is the port you copy the traffic to in order to examine it in more detail without interfering with the traffic flow on the original port(s). Type the port number of the monitor port.
Port	This field displays the port number.

**Table 43** Advanced Application > Mirroring (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
*	<p>Settings in this row apply to all ports.</p> <p>Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p>Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
Mirrored	Select this option to mirror the traffic on a port.
Direction	Specify the direction of the traffic to mirror by selecting from the drop-down list box. Choices are <b>Egress</b> (outgoing), <b>Ingress</b> (incoming) and <b>Both</b> .
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.



# Link Aggregation

This chapter shows you how to logically aggregate physical links to form one logical, higher-bandwidth link.

## 17.1 Link Aggregation Overview

Link aggregation (trunking) is the grouping of physical ports into one logical higher-capacity link. You may want to trunk ports if for example, it is cheaper to use multiple lower-speed links than to under-utilize a high-speed, but more costly, single-port link.

However, the more ports you aggregate then the fewer available ports you have. A trunk group is one logical link containing multiple ports.

The beginning port of each trunk group must be physically connected to form a trunk group.

The Switch supports both static and dynamic link aggregation.

**Note:** In a properly planned network, it is recommended to implement static link aggregation only. This ensures increased network stability and control over the trunk groups on your Switch.

See [Section 17.6 on page 155](#) for a static port trunking example.

## 17.2 Dynamic Link Aggregation

The Switch adheres to the IEEE 802.3ad standard for static and dynamic (LACP) port trunking.

The Switch supports the link aggregation IEEE802.3ad standard. This standard describes the Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP), which is a protocol that dynamically creates and manages trunk groups.

When you enable LACP link aggregation on a port, the port can automatically negotiate with the ports at the remote end of a link to establish trunk groups. LACP also allows port redundancy, that is, if an operational port fails, then one of the “standby” ports become operational without user intervention. Please note that:

- You must connect all ports point-to-point to the same Ethernet switch and configure the ports for LACP trunking.
- LACP only works on full-duplex links.
- All ports in the same trunk group must have the same media type, speed, duplex mode and flow control settings.

Configure trunk groups or LACP before you connect the Ethernet switch to avoid causing network topology loops.

## 17.2.1 Link Aggregation ID

LACP aggregation ID consists of the following information<sup>1</sup>:

**Table 44** Link Aggregation ID: Local Switch

SYSTEM PRIORITY	MAC ADDRESS	KEY	PORT PRIORITY	PORT NUMBER
0000	00-00-00-00-00-00	0000	00	0000

**Table 45** Link Aggregation ID: Peer Switch

SYSTEM PRIORITY	MAC ADDRESS	KEY	PORT PRIORITY	PORT NUMBER
0000	00-00-00-00-00-00	0000	00	0000

## 17.3 Link Aggregation Status

Click **Advanced Application** > **Link Aggregation** in the navigation panel. The **Link Aggregation Status** screen displays by default. See [Section 17.1 on page 149](#) for more information.

**Figure 74** Advanced Application > Link Aggregation Status

Group ID	Enabled Ports	Synchronized Ports	Aggregator ID	Criteria	Status
T1	1,2,3	-	-	src-dst-mac	Static
T2	4,5	-	[(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)] [(0000,00-00-00-00-00-00,0000,00,0000)]	src-dst-mac	LACP
T3	-	-	-	src-dst-mac	-
T4	-	-	-	src-dst-mac	-
T5	-	-	-	src-dst-mac	-
T6	-	-	-	src-dst-mac	-
T7	-	-	-	src-dst-mac	-
T8	-	-	-	src-dst-mac	-

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 46** Advanced Application > Link Aggregation Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Group ID	This field displays the group ID to identify a trunk group, that is, one logical link containing multiple ports.
Enabled Port	These are the ports you have configured in the <b>Link Aggregation</b> screen to be in the trunk group.  The port number(s) displays only when this trunk group is activated and there is a port belonging to this group.
Synchronized Ports	These are the ports that are currently transmitting data as one logical link in this trunk group.

1. Port Priority and Port Number are 0 as it is the aggregator ID for the trunk group, not the individual port.

**Table 46** Advanced Application > Link Aggregation Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Aggregator ID	<p>Link Aggregator ID consists of the following: system priority, MAC address, key, port priority and port number. Refer to <a href="#">Section 17.2.1 on page 150</a> for more information on this field.</p> <p>The ID displays only when there is a port belonging to this trunk group and LACP is also enabled for this group.</p>
Criteria	<p>This shows the outgoing traffic distribution algorithm used in this trunk group. Packets from the same source and/or to the same destination are sent over the same link within the trunk.</p> <p><b>src-mac</b> means the Switch distributes traffic based on the packet's source MAC address.</p> <p><b>dst-mac</b> means the Switch distributes traffic based on the packet's destination MAC address.</p> <p><b>src-dst-mac</b> means the Switch distributes traffic based on a combination of the packet's source and destination MAC addresses.</p> <p><b>src-ip</b> means the Switch distributes traffic based on the packet's source IP address.</p> <p><b>dst-ip</b> means the Switch distributes traffic based on the packet's destination IP address.</p> <p><b>src-dst-ip</b> means the Switch distributes traffic based on a combination of the packet's source and destination IP addresses.</p>
Status	<p>This field displays how these ports were added to the trunk group. It displays:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Static</b> - if the ports are configured as static members of a trunk group.</li> <li>• <b>LACP</b> - if the ports are configured to join a trunk group via LACP.</li> </ul>

## 17.4 Link Aggregation Setting

Click **Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting** to display the screen shown next. See [Section 17.1 on page 149](#) for more information on link aggregation.

**Figure 75** Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting

Group ID	Active	Criteria
T1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac
T2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	src-ip
T3	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac
T4	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac
T5	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac
T6	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac
T7	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac
T8	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac

Port	Group
1	T1
2	T1
3	T1
4	T2
5	T2
6	None
7	None
8	None

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 47** Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Link Aggregation Setting	This is the only screen you need to configure to enable static link aggregation.
Group ID	The field identifies the link aggregation group, that is, one logical link containing multiple ports.
Active	Select this option to activate a trunk group.

**Table 47** Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Criteria	<p>Select the outgoing traffic distribution type. Packets from the same source and/or to the same destination are sent over the same link within the trunk. By default, the Switch uses the <b>src-dst-mac</b> distribution type. If the Switch is behind a router, the packet's destination or source MAC address will be changed. In this case, set the Switch to distribute traffic based on its IP address to make sure port trunking can work properly.</p> <p>Select <b>src-mac</b> to distribute traffic based on the packet's source MAC address.</p> <p>Select <b>dst-mac</b> to distribute traffic based on the packet's destination MAC address.</p> <p>Select <b>src-dst-mac</b> to distribute traffic based on a combination of the packet's source and destination MAC addresses.</p> <p>Select <b>src-ip</b> to distribute traffic based on the packet's source IP address.</p> <p>Select <b>dst-ip</b> to distribute traffic based on the packet's destination IP address.</p> <p>Select <b>src-dst-ip</b> to distribute traffic based on a combination of the packet's source and destination IP addresses.</p>
Port	This field displays the port number.
Group	<p>Select the trunk group to which a port belongs.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> When you enable the port security feature on the Switch and configure port security settings for a port, you cannot include the port in an active trunk group.</p>
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

# 17.5 Link Aggregation Control Protocol

Click in the **Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting > LACP** to display the screen shown next. See [Section 17.2 on page 149](#) for more information on dynamic link aggregation.

**Figure 76** Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting > LACP

Link Aggregation Control Protocol		Link Aggregation Setting
Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
System Priority	65535	
Group ID	LACP Active	
T1	<input type="checkbox"/>	
T2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
T3	<input type="checkbox"/>	
T4	<input type="checkbox"/>	
T5	<input type="checkbox"/>	
T6	<input type="checkbox"/>	
T7	<input type="checkbox"/>	
T8	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Port	LACP Timeout	
*	30	seconds
1	30	seconds
2	30	seconds
3	30	seconds
4	30	seconds
5	30	seconds
6	30	seconds
7	30	seconds
8	30	seconds
<div>Apply Cancel</div>		

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 48** Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting > LACP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Link Aggregation Control Protocol	Note: Do not configure this screen unless you want to enable dynamic link aggregation.
Active	Select this checkbox to enable Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP).
System Priority	LACP system priority is a number between 1 and 65,535. The switch with the lowest system priority (and lowest port number if system priority is the same) becomes the LACP “server”. The LACP “server” controls the operation of LACP setup. Enter a number to set the priority of an active port using Link Aggregation Control Protocol (LACP). The smaller the number, the higher the priority level.
Group ID	The field identifies the link aggregation group, that is, one logical link containing multiple ports.

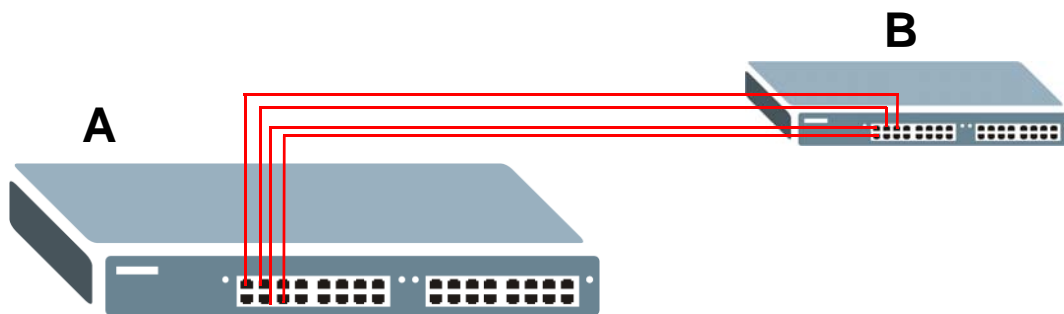
**Table 48** Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting > LACP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
LACP Active	Select this option to enable LACP for a trunk.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	<p>Settings in this row apply to all ports.</p> <p>Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p>Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
LACP Timeout	<p>Timeout is the time interval between the individual port exchanges of LACP packets in order to check that the peer port in the trunk group is still up. If a port does not respond after three tries, then it is deemed to be “down” and is removed from the trunk. Set a short timeout (one second) for busy trunked links to ensure that disabled ports are removed from the trunk group as soon as possible.</p> <p>Select either 1 second or 30 seconds.</p>
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 17.6 Static Trunking Example

This example shows you how to create a static port trunk group for ports 2-5.

- 1 **Make your physical connections** - make sure that the ports that you want to belong to the trunk group are connected to the same destination. The following figure shows ports 2-5 on switch **A** connected to switch **B**.

**Figure 77** Trunking Example - Physical Connections

- 2 **Configure static trunking** - Click **Advanced Application > Link Aggregation > Link Aggregation Setting**. In this screen activate trunk group **T1**, select the traffic distribution algorithm used by this group and select the ports that should belong to this group as shown in the figure below. Click **Apply** when you are done.

**Figure 78** Trunking Example - Configuration Screen

**Link Aggregation Setting** Status LACP

Group ID	Active	Criteria
T1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac
T2	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac
T3	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac
T4	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac
T5	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac
T6	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac
T7	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac
T8	<input type="checkbox"/>	src-dst-mac

Port	Group
1	None
2	T1
3	T1
4	T1
5	T1
6	None
7	None
8	None
9	None
10	None

**EXAMPLE**

Your trunk group 1 (**T1**) configuration is now complete.



# Port Authentication

This chapter describes the IEEE 802.1x and MAC authentication methods.

## 18.1 Port Authentication Overview

Port authentication is a way to validate access to ports on the Switch to clients based on an external server (authentication server). The Switch supports the following methods for port authentication:

- **IEEE 802.1x<sup>2</sup>** - An authentication server validates access to a port based on a username and password provided by the user.
- **MAC** - An authentication server validates access to a port based on the MAC address and password of the client.

Both types of authentication use the RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service, RFC 2138, 2139) protocol to validate users. See [Section 25.1.2 on page 203](#) for more information on configuring your RADIUS server settings.

Note: If you enable IEEE 802.1x authentication and MAC authentication on the same port, the Switch performs IEEE 802.1x authentication first. If a user fails to authenticate via the IEEE 802.1x method, then access to the port is denied.

### 18.1.1 IEEE 802.1x Authentication

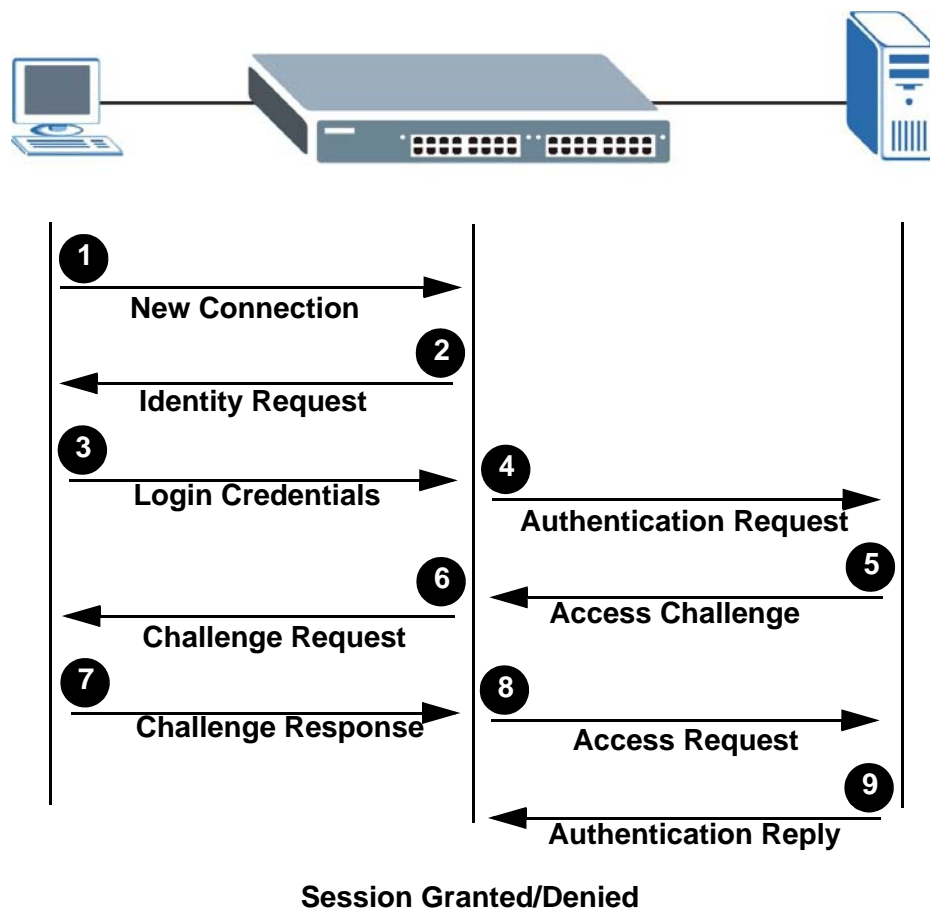
The following figure illustrates how a client connecting to an IEEE 802.1x authentication enabled port goes through a validation process. The Switch prompts the client for login information in the form of a user name and password after the client responds to its identity request. When the client

---

2. At the time of writing, IEEE 802.1x is not supported by all operating systems. See your operating system documentation. If your operating system does not support 802.1x, then you may need to install 802.1x client software.

provides the login credentials, the Switch sends an authentication request to a RADIUS server. The RADIUS server validates whether this client is allowed access to the port.

**Figure 79** IEEE 802.1x Authentication Process

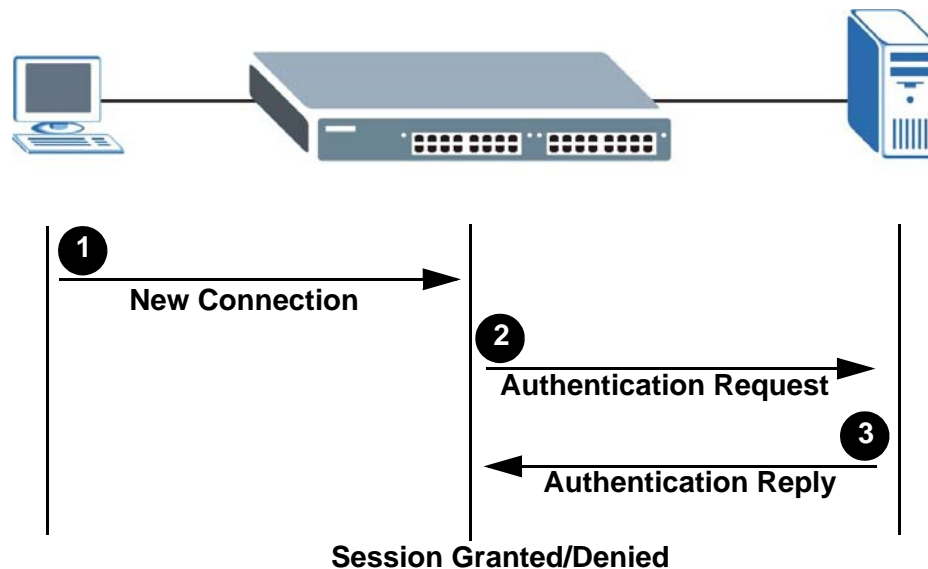


### 18.1.2 MAC Authentication

MAC authentication works in a very similar way to IEEE 802.1x authentication. The main difference is that the Switch does not prompt the client for login credentials. The login credentials are based

on the source MAC address of the client connecting to a port on the Switch along with a password configured specifically for MAC authentication on the Switch.

**Figure 80** MAC Authentication Process

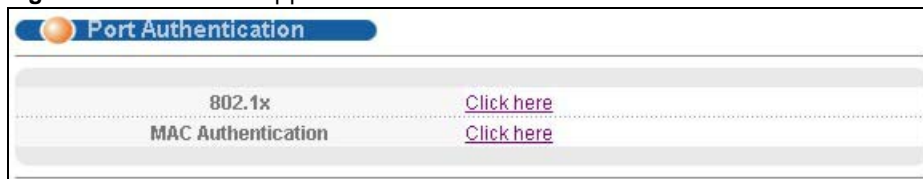


## 18.2 Port Authentication Configuration

To enable port authentication, first activate the port authentication method(s) you want to use (both on the Switch and the port(s)), then configure the RADIUS server settings in the **AAA > Radius Server Setup** screen.

To activate a port authentication method, click **Advanced Application > Port Authentication** in the navigation panel. Select a port authentication method in the screen that appears.

**Figure 81** Advanced Application > Port Authentication



## 18.2.1 Activate IEEE 802.1x Security

Use this screen to activate IEEE 802.1x security. In the **Port Authentication** screen click **802.1x** to display the configuration screen as shown.

**Figure 82** Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x

Port	Active	Max-Req	Reauth	Reauth-period secs	Quiet-period secs	Tx-period secs	Supp-Timeout secs
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	On ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
...							
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	2	On ▼	3600	60	30	30

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 49** Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x

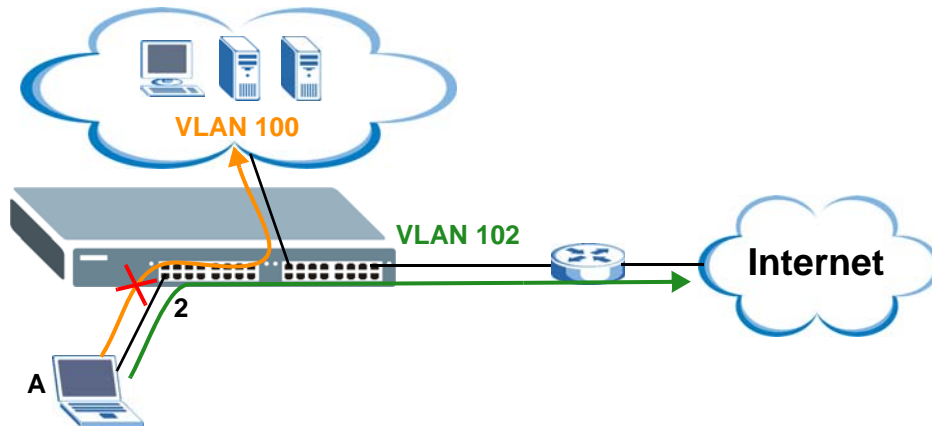
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to permit 802.1x authentication on the Switch.  Note: You must first enable 802.1x authentication on the Switch before configuring it on each port.
Port	This field displays a port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports.  Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.  Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this checkbox to permit 802.1x authentication on this port. You must first allow 802.1x authentication on the Switch before configuring it on each port.
Max-Req	Specify the number of times the Switch tries to authenticate client(s) before sending unresponsive ports to the Guest VLAN.  This is set to 2 by default. That is, the Switch attempts to authenticate a client twice. If the client does not respond to the first authentication request, the Switch tries again. If the client still does not respond to the second request, the Switch sends the client to the Guest VLAN. The client needs to send a new request to be authenticated by the Switch again.

**Table 49** Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Reauth	Specify if a subscriber has to periodically re-enter his or her username and password to stay connected to the port.
Reauth-period	Specify the length of time required to pass before a client has to re-enter his or her username and password to stay connected to the port.
Quiet-period	Specify the number of seconds the port remains in the HELD state and rejects further authentication requests from the connected client after a failed authentication exchange.
Tx-period	Specify the number of seconds the Switch waits for client's response before re-sending an identity request to the client.
Supp-Timeout	Specify the number of seconds the Switch waits for client's response to a challenge request before sending another request.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 18.2.2 Guest VLAN

When 802.1x port authentication is enabled on the Switch and its ports, clients that do not have the correct credentials are blocked from using the port(s). You can configure your Switch to have one VLAN that acts as a guest VLAN. If you enable the guest VLAN (**102** in the example) on a port (**2** in the example), the user (**A** in the example) that is not IEEE 802.1x capable or fails to enter the correct username and password can still access the port, but traffic from the user is forwarded to the guest VLAN. That is, unauthenticated users can have access to limited network resources in the same guest VLAN, such as the Internet. The rights granted to the Guest VLAN depends on how the network administrator configures switches or routers with the guest network feature.

**Figure 83** Guest VLAN Example

Use this screen to enable and assign a guest VLAN to a port. In the **Port Authentication > 802.1x** screen click **Guest Vlan** to display the configuration screen as shown.

**Figure 84** Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x > Guest VLAN

Port	Active	Guest Vlan	Host-mode	Multi-Secure Num
*	<input type="checkbox"/>		Multi-Host	
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
...				
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Multi-Host	1

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 50** Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x > Guest VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays a port number.
*	<p>Settings in this row apply to all ports.</p> <p>Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
Active	<p>Select this checkbox to enable the guest VLAN feature on this port.</p> <p>Clients that fail authentication are placed in the guest VLAN and can receive limited services.</p>
Guest Vlan	<p>A guest VLAN is a pre-configured VLAN on the Switch that allows non-authenticated users to access limited network resources through the Switch. You must also enable IEEE 802.1x authentication on the Switch and the associated ports. Enter the number that identifies the guest VLAN.</p> <p>Make sure this is a VLAN recognized in your network.</p>

**Table 50** Advanced Application > Port Authentication > 802.1x > Guest VLAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Host-mode	Specify how the Switch authenticates users when more than one user connect to the port (using a hub).  Select <b>Multi-Host</b> to authenticate only the first user that connects to this port. If the first user enters the correct credential, any other users are allowed to access the port without authentication. If the first user fails to enter the correct credential, they are all put in the guest VLAN. Once the first user who did authentication logs out or disconnects from the port, rest of the users are blocked until a user does the authentication process again.  Select <b>Multi-Secure</b> to authenticate each user that connects to this port.
Multi-Secure Num	If you set <b>Host-mode</b> to <b>Multi-Secure</b> , specify the maximum number of users (between 1 and 5) that the Switch will authenticate on this port.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

### 18.2.3 Activate MAC Authentication

Use this screen to activate MAC authentication. In the **Port Authentication** screen click **MAC Authentication** to display the configuration screen as shown.

**Figure 85** Advanced Application > Port Authentication > MAC Authentication

MAC Authentication Port Authentication

Active ☐

Name Prefix

Password

Timeout

Port	Active
*	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 51** Advanced Application > Port Authentication > MAC Authentication

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	<p>Select this check box to permit MAC authentication on the Switch.</p> <p>Note: You must first enable MAC authentication on the Switch before configuring it on each port.</p>
Name Prefix	<p>Type the prefix that is appended to all MAC addresses sent to the RADIUS server for authentication. You can enter up to 32 printable ASCII characters.</p> <p>If you leave this field blank, then only the MAC address of the client is forwarded to the RADIUS server.</p>
Password	<p>Type the password the Switch sends along with the MAC address of a client for authentication with the RADIUS server. You can enter up to 32 printable ASCII characters.</p>
Timeout	<p>Specify the amount of time before the Switch allows a client MAC address that fails authentication to try and authenticate again. Maximum time is 3000 seconds.</p> <p>When a client fails MAC authentication, its MAC address is learned by the MAC address table with a status of denied. The timeout period you specify here is the time the MAC address entry stays in the MAC address table until it is cleared. If you specify 0 for the timeout value, then this entry will not be deleted from the MAC address table.</p> <p>Note: If the <b>Aging Time</b> in the <b>Switch Setup</b> screen is set to a lower value, then it supersedes this setting. See <a href="#">Section 8.5 on page 89</a>.</p>
Port	<p>This field displays a port number.</p>
*	<p>Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p>Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
Active	<p>Select this checkbox to permit MAC authentication on this port. You must first allow MAC authentication on the Switch before configuring it on each port.</p>
Apply	<p>Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.</p>
Cancel	<p>Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.</p>



## Port Security

This chapter shows you how to set up port security.

### 19.1 About Port Security

Port security allows only packets with dynamically learned MAC addresses and/or configured static MAC addresses to pass through a port on the Switch. The Switch can learn up to 16K MAC addresses in total with no limit on individual ports other than the sum cannot exceed 16K.

For maximum port security, enable this feature, disable MAC address learning and configure static MAC address(es) for a port. It is not recommended you disable port security together with MAC address learning as this will result in many broadcasts. By default, MAC address learning is still enabled even though the port security is not activated.

### 19.2 Port Security Setup

Click **Advanced Application > Port Security** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 86** Advanced Application > Port Security

**Port Security**

MAC Freeze :

Port List  MAC freeze

**Port Security :**

Active ☐

Port	Active	Address Learning	Limited Number of Learned MAC Address
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 52** Advanced Application > Port Security

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port List	Enter the number of the port(s) (separated by a comma) on which you want to enable port security and disable MAC address learning. After you click <b>MAC freeze</b> , all previously learned MAC addresses on the specified port(s) will become static MAC addresses and display in the <b>Static MAC Forwarding</b> screen.
MAC freeze	Click <b>MAC freeze</b> to have the Switch automatically select the <b>Active</b> check boxes and clear the <b>Address Learning</b> check boxes only for the ports specified in the <b>Port list</b> .
Active	Select this option to enable port security on the Switch.
Port	This field displays a port number.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports.  Use this row only if you want to make some of the settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.  <b>Note:</b> Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to enable the port security feature on this port. The Switch forwards packets whose MAC address(es) is in the MAC address table on this port. Packets with no matching MAC address(es) are dropped.  Clear this check box to disable the port security feature. The Switch forwards all packets on this port.
Address Learning	MAC address learning reduces outgoing broadcast traffic. For MAC address learning to occur on a port, the port itself must be active with address learning enabled.
Limited Number of Learned MAC Address	Use this field to limit the number of (dynamic) MAC addresses that may be learned on a port. For example, if you set this field to "5" on port 2, then only the devices with these five learned MAC addresses may access port 2 at any one time. A sixth device must wait until one of the five learned MAC addresses ages out. MAC address aging out time can be set in the <b>Switch Setup</b> screen. The valid range is from "0" to "16384". "0" means this feature is disabled.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

# Classifier

This chapter introduces and shows you how to configure the packet classifier on the Switch.

## 20.1 About the Classifier and QoS

Quality of Service (QoS) refers to both a network's ability to deliver data with minimum delay, and the networking methods used to control the use of bandwidth. Without QoS, all traffic data is equally likely to be dropped when the network is congested. This can cause a reduction in network performance and make the network inadequate for time-critical application such as video-on-demand.

A classifier groups traffic into data flows according to specific criteria such as the source address, destination address, source port number, destination port number or incoming port number. For example, you can configure a classifier to select traffic from the same protocol port (such as Telnet) to form a flow.

Configure QoS on the Switch to group and prioritize application traffic and fine-tune network performance. Setting up QoS involves two separate steps:

- 1 Configure classifiers to sort traffic into different flows.
- 2 Configure policy rules to define actions to be performed for a classified traffic flow (refer to [Chapter 21 on page 172](#) to configure policy rules).

## 20.2 Configuring the Classifier

Use the **Classifier** screen to define the classifiers. After you define the classifier, you can specify actions (or policy) to act upon the traffic that matches the rules. To configure policy rules, refer to [Chapter 21 on page 172](#).

Click **Advanced Application > Classifier** in the navigation panel to display the configuration screen as shown.

**Figure 87** Advanced Application > Classifier

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 53** Advanced Application > Classifier

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable this rule.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for this rule for identifying purposes.
Layer 2	
Specify the fields below to configure a layer-2 classifier.	
VLAN	Select <b>Any</b> to classify traffic from any VLAN or select the second option and specify the source VLAN ID in the field provided.
Priority	Select <b>Any</b> to classify traffic from any priority level or select the second option and specify a priority level in the field provided.
Ethernet Type	Select an Ethernet type or select <b>Other</b> and enter the Ethernet type number in hexadecimal value. Refer to <a href="#">Table 55 on page 170</a> for information.
Source	
MAC Address	Select <b>Any</b> to apply the rule to all MAC addresses. To specify a source, select the second choice and type a MAC address in valid MAC address format (six hexadecimal character pairs).

**Table 53** Advanced Application > Classifier (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	Type the port number to which the rule should be applied. You may choose one port only or all ports ( <b>Any</b> ).
Destination	
MAC Address	Select <b>Any</b> to apply the rule to all MAC addresses.  To specify a destination, select the second choice and type a MAC address in valid MAC address format (six hexadecimal character pairs).
Layer 3	Specify the fields below to configure a layer-3 classifier.
DSCP	Select <b>Any</b> to classify traffic from any DSCP or select the second option and specify a DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) number between 0 and 63 in the field provided.
IP Protocol	Select an IP protocol type or select <b>Other</b> and enter the protocol number in decimal value. Refer to <a href="#">Table 56 on page 170</a> for more information.  You may select <b>Establish Only</b> for <b>TCP</b> protocol type. This means that the Switch will pick out the packets that are sent to establish TCP connections.
Source	
IP Address/ Address Prefix	Enter a source IP address in dotted decimal notation.  Specify the address prefix by entering the number of ones in the subnet mask.
Socket Number	<b>Note:</b> You must select either <b>UDP</b> or <b>TCP</b> in the <b>IP Protocol</b> field before you configure the socket numbers.  Select <b>Any</b> to apply the rule to all TCP/UDP protocol port numbers or select the second option and enter a TCP/UDP protocol port number.
Destination	
IP Address/ Address Prefix	Enter a destination IP address in dotted decimal notation.  Specify the address prefix by entering the number of ones in the subnet mask.
Socket Number	<b>Note:</b> You must select either <b>UDP</b> or <b>TCP</b> in the <b>IP Protocol</b> field before you configure the socket numbers.  Select <b>Any</b> to apply the rule to all TCP/UDP protocol port numbers or select the second option and enter a TCP/UDP protocol port number.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to insert the entry in the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.

## 20.3 Viewing and Editing Classifier Configuration

To view a summary of the classifier configuration, scroll down to the summary table at the bottom of the **Classifier** screen. To change the settings of a rule, click a number in the **Index** field.

Note: When two rules conflict with each other, a higher layer rule has priority over a lower layer rule.

**Figure 88** Advanced Application > Classifier: Summary Table

Index	Active	Name	Rule	Delete
1	Yes	Example	EtherType = IP; SrcMac = 00:50:ba:ad:4f:81; SrcPort = port 2;	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 54** Classifier: Summary Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the index number of the rule. Click an index number to edit the rule.
Active	This field displays <b>Yes</b> when the rule is activated and <b>No</b> when it is deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this rule. This is for identification purposes only.
Rule	This field displays a summary of the classifier rule's settings.
Delete	Click <b>Delete</b> to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the <b>Delete</b> check boxes.

The following table shows some other common Ethernet types and the corresponding protocol number.

**Table 55** Common Ethernet Types and Protocol Number

ETHERNET TYPE	PROTOCOL NUMBER
IP ETHII	0800
X.75 Internet	0801
NBS Internet	0802
ECMA Internet	0803
Chaosnet	0804
X.25 Level 3	0805
XNS Compat	0807
Banyan Systems	0BAD
BBN Simnet	5208
IBM SNA	80D5
AppleTalk AARP	80F3

Some of the most common IP ports are:

**Table 56** Common IP Ports

PORT NUMBER	PORT NAME
21	FTP
23	Telnet
25	SMTP
53	DNS
80	HTTP
110	POP3

## 20.4 Classifier Example

The following screen shows an example of configuring a classifier that identifies all traffic from MAC address 00:50:ba:ad:4f:81 on port 2.

**Figure 89** Classifier: Example

The screenshot displays the 'Classifier' configuration window. At the top, the 'Active' checkbox is checked, and the 'Name' field is set to 'Example'. The configuration is divided into 'Layer 2' and 'Layer 3' sections.

**Layer 2 Settings:**

- VLAN:** ☒ Any
- Priority:** ☒ Any
- Ethernet Type:** ☒ All
- Source (highlighted with a red oval):**
  - MAC Address: ☒ MAC 00 : 50 : ba : ad : 4f : 81
  - Port: ☒ 2
- Destination:** ☒ Any

**Layer 3 Settings:**

- DSCP:** ☒ Any
- IP Protocol:** ☒ All
- Source:**
  - IP Address / Address Prefix: 0.0.0.0 /
  - Socket Number: ☒ Any
- Destination:**
  - IP Address / Address Prefix: 0.0.0.0 /
  - Socket Number: ☒ Any

At the bottom, there are 'Add', 'Cancel', and 'Clear' buttons. A red oval labeled 'EXAMPLE' is positioned to the right of these buttons.

After you have configured a classifier, you can configure a policy to define action(s) on the classified traffic flow. See [Chapter 21 on page 172](#) for information on configuring a policy rule.

## Policy Rule

This chapter shows you how to configure policy rules.

### 21.1 Policy Rules Overview

A classifier distinguishes traffic into flows based on the configured criteria (refer to [Chapter 20 on page 167](#) for more information). A policy rule ensures that a traffic flow gets the requested treatment in the network.

#### 21.1.1 DiffServ

DiffServ (Differentiated Services) is a class of service (CoS) model that marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow. Packets are marked with DiffServ Code Points (DSCPs) indicating the level of service desired. This allows the intermediary DiffServ-compliant network devices to handle the packets differently depending on the code points without the need to negotiate paths or remember state information for every flow. In addition, applications do not have to request a particular service or give advanced notice of where the traffic is going.

#### 21.1.2 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior

DiffServ defines a new DS (Differentiated Services) field to replace the Type of Service (TOS) field in the IP header. The DS field contains a 2-bit unused field and a 6-bit DSCP field which can define up to 64 service levels. The following figure illustrates the DS field.

DSCP is backward compatible with the three precedence bits in the ToS octet so that non-DiffServ compliant, ToS-enabled network device will not conflict with the DSCP mapping.

DSCP (6 bits)	Unused (2 bits)
---------------	-----------------

The DSCP value determines the forwarding behavior, the PHB (Per-Hop Behavior), that each packet gets across the DiffServ network. Based on the marking rule, different kinds of traffic can be marked for different kinds of forwarding. Resources can then be allocated according to the DSCP values and the configured policies.

### 21.2 Configuring Policy Rules

You must first configure a classifier in the **Classifier** screen. Refer to [Section 20.2 on page 167](#) for more information.



Click **Advanced Applications > Policy Rule** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 90** Advanced Application > Policy Rule

**Policy**

Active ☐

Name

Classifier(s)

**Parameters**

General

Egress Port

Priority

DSCP

TOS

Bandwidth  Kbps

Rate Limit

**Action**

Forwarding

☒ No change

☐ Discard the packet

☐ Do not drop the matching frame previously marked for dropping

Priority

☒ No change

☐ Set the packet's 802.1p priority and send the packet to priority queue

☐ Replace the 802.1p priority field with the IP TOS value and send the packet to priority queue

Diffserv

☒ No change

☐ Set the packet's TOS field

☐ Set the Diffserv Codepoint field in the frame

Outgoing

☐ Send the packet to the egress port

Rate Limit

☐ Enable

Add Cancel Clear

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 57** Advanced Application > Policy Rule

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable the policy.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for identification purposes.
Classifier(s)	This field displays the active classifier(s) you configure in the <b>Classifier</b> screen.  Select the classifier(s) to which this policy rule applies. To select more than one classifier, press [SHIFT] and select the choices at the same time.
Parameters	Set the fields below for this policy. You only have to set the field(s) that is related to the action(s) you configure in the <b>Action</b> field.

**Table 57** Advanced Application > Policy Rule (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General	
Egress Port	Type the number of an outgoing port.
Priority	Specify a priority level.
DSCP	Specify a DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) number between 0 and 63.
TOS	Specify the type of service (TOS) priority level.
Rate Limit	You can configure the desired bandwidth available to a traffic flow.
Bandwidth	Specify the bandwidth in kilobit per second (Kbps). Enter a number between 1 and 1000000.
Action	
	Specify the action(s) the Switch takes on the associated classified traffic flow.
Forwarding	<p>Select <b>No change</b> to forward the packets.</p> <p>Select <b>Discard the packet</b> to drop the packets.</p> <p>Select <b>Do not drop the matching frame previously marked for dropping</b> to retain the frames that were marked to be dropped before.</p>
Priority	<p>Select <b>No change</b> to keep the priority setting of the frames.</p> <p>Select <b>Set the packet's 802.1p priority and send the packet to priority queue</b> to replace the packet's 802.1p priority field with the value you set in the Priority field. Then put the packets in the designated queue.</p> <p>Select <b>Replace the 802.1p priority field with the IP TOS value and send the packet to priority queue</b> to replace the packet's 802.1p priority field with the value you set in the TOS field. Then put the packets in the designated queue.</p>
Diffserv	<p>Select <b>No change</b> to keep the TOS and/or DSCP fields in the packets.</p> <p>Select <b>Set the packet's TOS field</b> to set the TOS field with the value you configure in the TOS field.</p> <p>Select <b>Set the Diffserv Codepoint field in the frame</b> to set the DSCP field with the value you configure in the DSCP field.</p>
Outgoing	Select <b>Send the packet to the egress port</b> to send the packet to the egress port.
Rate Limit	Select <b>Enable</b> to activate bandwidth limitation on the traffic flow(s).
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to insert the entry in the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.

## 21.3 Viewing and Editing Policy Configuration

To view a summary of the classifier configuration, scroll down to the summary table at the bottom of the **Policy** screen. To change the settings of a rule, click a number in the **Index** field.

**Figure 91** Advanced Application > Policy Rule: Summary Table

Index	Active	Name	Classifier(s)	Delete
1	Yes	Test	Example;	<input type="checkbox"/>

Delete
Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 58** Policy: Summary Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays the policy index number. Click an index number to edit the policy.
Active	This field displays <b>Yes</b> when policy is activated and <b>No</b> when is it deactivated.
Name	This field displays the name you have assigned to this policy.
Classifier(s)	This field displays the name(s) of the classifier to which this policy applies.
Delete	Click <b>Delete</b> to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the <b>Delete</b> check boxes.

# 21.4 Policy Example

The figure below shows an example **Policy** screen where you configure a policy to limit bandwidth on a traffic flow classified using the **Example** classifier (refer to [Section 20.4 on page 171](#)).

**Figure 92** Policy Example

Policy

Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Name	Test
Classifier(s)	Example
Parameters	General
	Rate Limit
	Bandwidth 10000 Kbps
	Egress Port 1
	Priority 0
DSCP	
TOS	0
Action	Forwarding
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> No change
	<input type="radio"/> Discard the packet
	<input type="radio"/> Do not drop the matching frame previously marked for dropping
	Priority
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> No change
	<input type="radio"/> Set the packet's 802.1p priority and send the packet to priority queue
	<input type="radio"/> Replace the 802.1p priority field with the IP TOS value and send the packet to priority queue
	Diffserv
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> No change
	<input type="radio"/> Set the packet's TOS field
	<input type="radio"/> Set the Diffserv Codepoint field in the frame
Outgoing	
<input type="checkbox"/> Send the packet to the egress port	
Rate Limit	
<input type="checkbox"/> Enable	

Add

Cancel

Clear

## Queuing Method

This chapter introduces the queuing methods supported.

### 22.1 Queuing Method Overview

Queuing is used to help solve performance degradation when there is network congestion. Use the **Queuing Method** screen to configure queuing algorithms for outgoing traffic. See also **Priority Queue Assignment** in **Switch Setup** and **802.1p Priority** in **Port Setup** for related information.

Queuing algorithms allow switches to maintain separate queues for packets from each individual source or flow and prevent a source from monopolizing the bandwidth.

#### 22.1.1 Strictly Priority Queuing

Strictly Priority Queuing (SPQ) services queues based on priority only. As traffic comes into the Switch, traffic on the highest priority queue, Q7 is transmitted first. When that queue empties, traffic on the next highest-priority queue, Q6 is transmitted until Q6 empties, and then traffic is transmitted on Q5 and so on. If higher priority queues never empty, then traffic on lower priority queues never gets sent. SP does not automatically adapt to changing network requirements.

#### 22.1.2 Weighted Fair Queuing

Weighted Fair Queuing is used to guarantee each queue's minimum bandwidth based on its bandwidth weight (the number you configure in the **Weight** field) when there is traffic congestion. WFQ is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. Queues with larger weights get more guaranteed bandwidth than queues with smaller weights. By default, the weight for Q0 is 1, for Q1 is 2, for Q2 is 3, and so on.

The weights range from 1 to 15 and the actual guaranteed bandwidth is calculated as follows:

$$2^{(\text{Weight} - 1)} \times 10 \text{ KB}$$

If the weight setting is 5, the actual quantum guaranteed to the associated queue would be as follows:

$$2^4 \times 10\text{KB} = 160 \text{ KB}$$

### 22.1.3 Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR)

Round Robin Scheduling services queues on a rotating basis and is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. A queue is given an amount of bandwidth irrespective of the incoming traffic on that port. This queue then moves to the back of the list. The next queue is given an equal amount of bandwidth, and then moves to the end of the list; and so on, depending on the number of queues being used. This works in a looping fashion until a queue is empty.

Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR) uses the same algorithm as round robin scheduling, but services queues based on their priority and queue weight (the number you configure in the queue **Weight** field) rather than a fixed amount of bandwidth. WRR is activated only when a port has more traffic than it can handle. Queues with larger weights get more service than queues with smaller weights. This queuing mechanism is highly efficient in that it divides any available bandwidth across the different traffic queues and returns to queues that have not yet emptied.

## 22.2 Configuring Queuing

Click **Advanced Application > Queuing Method** in the navigation panel.

**Figure 93** Advanced Application > Queuing Method

Port	Method	Weight								Hybrid-SPQ Lowest-Queue
		Q0	Q1	Q2	Q3	Q4	Q5	Q6	Q7	
*	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ									None
1	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WFQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	None
2	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WFQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	None
3	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WFQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	None
4	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WFQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	None
5	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WFQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	None
6	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WFQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	None
7	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WFQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	None
8	<input checked="" type="radio"/> SPQ <input type="radio"/> WFQ <input type="radio"/> WRR	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	None

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 59** Advanced Application > Queuing Method

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This label shows the port you are configuring.
*	<p>Settings in this row apply to all ports.</p> <p>Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p>Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
Method	<p>Select <b>SPQ</b> (Strictly Priority Queuing), <b>WFQ</b> (Weighted Fair Queuing) or <b>WRR</b> (Weighted Round Robin).</p> <p>Strictly Priority services queues based on priority only. When the highest priority queue empties, traffic on the next highest-priority queue begins. Q7 has the highest priority and Q0 the lowest.</p> <p>Weighted Fair Queuing is used to guarantee each queue's minimum bandwidth based on their bandwidth weight (the number you configure in the <b>Weight</b> field). Queues with larger weights get more guaranteed bandwidth than queues with smaller weights.</p> <p>Weighted Round Robin Scheduling services queues on a rotating basis based on their queue weight (the number you configure in the queue <b>Weight</b> field). Queues with larger weights get more service than queues with smaller weights.</p>
Weight Q0-Q7	When you select <b>WFQ</b> or <b>WRR</b> enter the queue weight here. Bandwidth is divided across the different traffic queues according to their weights.
Hybrid- SPQ  Lowest- Queue	<p>This field is applicable only when you select <b>WFQ</b> or <b>WRR</b>.</p> <p>Select a queue (<b>Q0</b> to <b>Q7</b>) to have the Switch use <b>SPQ</b> to service the subsequent queue(s) after and including the specified queue. For example, if you select <b>Q5</b>, the Switch services traffic on <b>Q5</b>, <b>Q6</b> and <b>Q7</b> using <b>SPQ</b>.</p> <p>Select <b>None</b> to always use <b>WFQ</b> or <b>WRR</b>.</p>
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

# VLAN Stacking

This chapter shows you how to configure VLAN stacking on your Switch. See the chapter on VLANs for more background information on Virtual LAN

## 23.1 VLAN Stacking Overview

A service provider can use VLAN stacking to allow it to distinguish multiple customers VLANs, even those with the same (customer-assigned) VLAN ID, within its network.

Use VLAN stacking to add an outer VLAN tag to the inner IEEE 802.1Q tagged frames that enter the network. By tagging the tagged frames ("double-tagged" frames), the service provider can manage up to 4,094 VLAN groups with each group containing up to 4,094 customer VLANs. This allows a service provider to provide different service, based on specific VLANs, for many different customers.

A service provider's customers may require a range of VLANs to handle multiple applications. A service provider's customers can assign their own inner VLAN tags on ports for these applications. The service provider can assign an outer VLAN tag for each customer. Therefore, there is no VLAN tag overlap among customers, so traffic from different customers is kept separate.

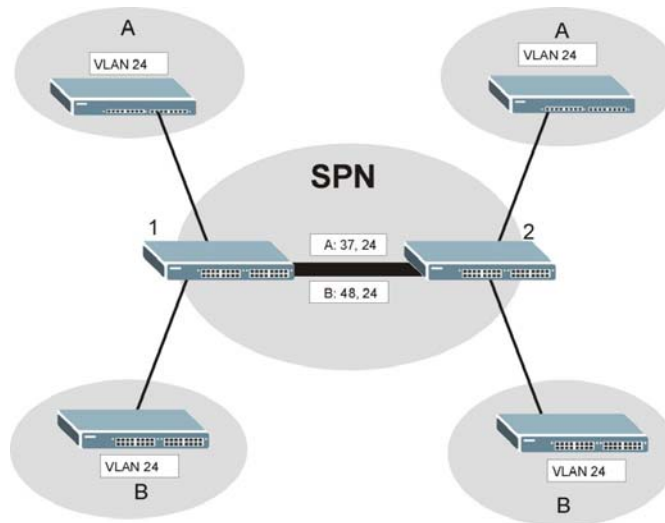
### 23.1.1 VLAN Stacking Example

In the following example figure, both **A** and **B** are Service Provider's Network (SPN) customers with VPN tunnels between their head offices and branch offices respectively. Both have an identical VLAN tag for their VLAN group. The service provider can separate these two VLANs within its network by



adding tag 37 to distinguish customer **A** and tag 48 to distinguish customer **B** at edge device **1** and then stripping those tags at edge device **2** as the data frames leave the network.

**Figure 94** VLAN Stacking Example



## 23.2 VLAN Stacking Port Roles

Each port can have three VLAN stacking “roles”, **Normal**, **Access Port** and **Tunnel Port** (the latter is for Gigabit ports only).

- Select **Normal** for “regular” (non-VLAN stacking) IEEE 802.1Q frame switching.
- Select **Access Port** for ingress ports on the service provider's edge devices (**1** and **2** in the VLAN stacking example figure). The incoming frame is treated as “untagged”, so a second VLAN tag (outer VLAN tag) can be added.

Note: Static VLAN **Tx Tagging** MUST be disabled on a port where you choose **Normal** or **Access Port**.

- Select **Tunnel Port** (available for Gigabit ports only) for egress ports at the edge of the service provider's network. All VLANs belonging to a customer can be aggregated into a single service provider's VLAN (using the outer VLAN tag defined by the Service Provider's (SP) VLAN ID (VID)).

Note: Static VLAN **Tx Tagging** MUST be enabled on a port where you choose **Tunnel Port**.

## 23.3 VLAN Tag Format

A VLAN tag (service provider VLAN stacking or customer IEEE 802.1Q) consists of the following three fields.

**Table 60** VLAN Tag Format

Type	Priority	VID
------	----------	-----

**Type** is a standard Ethernet type code identifying the frame and indicates that whether the frame carries IEEE 802.1Q tag information. **SP TPID** (Service Provider Tag Protocol Identifier) is the service provider VLAN stacking tag type. Many vendors use 0x8100 or 0x9100.

**TPID** (Tag Protocol Identifier) is the customer IEEE 802.1Q tag.

- If the VLAN stacking port role is **Access Port**, then the Switch adds the **SP TPID** tag to all incoming frames on the service provider's edge devices (1 and 2 in the VLAN stacking example figure).
- If the VLAN stacking port role is **Tunnel Port**, then the Switch only adds the **SP TPID** tag to all incoming frames on the service provider's edge devices (1 and 2 in the VLAN stacking example figure) that have an **SP TPID** different to the one configured on the Switch. (If an incoming frame's **SP TPID** is the same as the one configured on the Switch, then the Switch will not add the tag.)

**Priority** refers to the IEEE 802.1p standard that allows the service provider to prioritize traffic based on the class of service (CoS) the customer has paid for.

- On the Switch, configure priority level of the inner IEEE 802.1Q tag in the **Port Setup** screen.
- "0" is the lowest priority level and "7" is the highest.

**VID** is the VLAN ID. **SP VID** is the VID for the second (service provider's) VLAN tag.

### 23.3.1 Frame Format

The frame format for an untagged Ethernet frame, a single-tagged 802.1Q frame (customer) and a "double-tagged" 802.1Q frame (service provider) is shown next.

Configure the fields as highlighted in the Switch **VLAN Stacking** screen.

**Table 61** Single and Double Tagged 802.11Q Frame Format

						DA	SA	Len/Etype	Data	FCS	Untagged Ethernet frame
			DA	SA	<b>TPID</b>	<b>Priority</b>	<b>VID</b>	Len/Etype	Data	FCS	IEEE 802.1Q customer tagged frame
DA	SA	<b>SPTPID</b>	<b>Priority</b>	<b>VID</b>	<b>TPID</b>	<b>Priority</b>	<b>VID</b>	Len/Etype	Data	FCS	Double-tagged frame

**Table 62** 802.1Q Frame

DA	Destination Address	Priority	802.1p Priority
SA	Source Address	Len/Etype	Length and type of Ethernet frame
(SP)TPID	(Service Provider) Tag Protocol Identifier	Data	Frame data
VID	VLAN ID	FCS	Frame Check Sequence

## 23.4 Configuring VLAN Stacking

Click **Advanced Applications > VLAN Stacking** to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 95** Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking

Port	Role	Tunnel TPID
*	Normal	
1	Normal	8100
2	Normal	8100
3	Normal	8100
4	Normal	8100

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 63** Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this checkbox to enable VLAN stacking on the Switch.
Port	The port number identifies the port you are configuring.
*	<p>Settings in this row apply to all ports.</p> <p>Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p>Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
Role	<p>Select <b>Normal</b> to have the Switch ignore frames received (or transmitted) on this port with VLAN stacking tags. Anything you configure in <b>SPVID</b> and <b>Priority</b> of the <b>Port-based QinQ</b> or the <b>Selective QinQ</b> screen are ignored.</p> <p>Select <b>Access Port</b> to have the Switch add the SP TPID tag to all incoming frames received on this port. Select <b>Access Port</b> for ingress ports at the edge of the service provider's network.</p> <p>Select <b>Tunnel Port</b> (available for Gigabit ports only) for egress ports at the edge of the service provider's network. Select <b>Tunnel Port</b> to have the Switch add the <b>Tunnel TPID</b> tag to all outgoing frames sent on this port.</p> <p>In order to support VLAN stacking on a port, the port must be able to allow frames of 1526 Bytes (1522 Bytes + 4 Bytes for the second tag) to pass through it.</p>
Tunnel TPID	<p>TPID is a standard Ethernet type code identifying the frame and indicates whether the frame carries IEEE 802.1Q tag information. Enter a four-digit hexadecimal number from 0000 to FFFF that the Switch adds in the outer VLAN tag of the frames sent on the tunnel port(s). The Switch also uses this to check if the received frames are double-tagged.</p> <p>The value of this field is 0x8100 as defined in IEEE 802.1Q. If the Switch needs to communicate with other vendors' devices, they should use the same TPID.</p> <p>Note: You can define up to four different tunnel TPIDs (including <b>8100</b>) in this screen at a time.</p>

**Table 63** Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

### 23.4.1 Port-based Q-in-Q

Port-based Q-in-Q lets the Switch treat all frames received on the same port as the same VLAN flows and add the same outer VLAN tag to them, even they have different customer VLAN IDs.

Click **Port-based QinQ** in the **Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking** screen to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 96** Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking > Port-based QinQ

Port	SPVID	Priority
*	<input type="text"/>	0
1	1	0
2	1	0
3	1	0
4	1	0
5	1	0
6	1	0
7	1	0
8	1	0
9	1	0
10	1	0
11	1	0
12	1	0
13	1	0
14	1	0
15	1	0
16	1	0
17	1	0
18	1	0
19	1	0
20	1	0
21	1	0
22	1	0
23	1	0
24	1	0
25	1	0
26	1	0
27	1	0
28	1	0

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 64** Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking > Port-based QinQ

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	The port number identifies the port you are configuring.
SPVID	<b>SPVID</b> is the service provider's VLAN ID (the outer VLAN tag). Enter the service provider ID (from 1 to 4094) for frames received on this port. See <a href="#">Chapter 9 on page 99</a> for more background information on VLAN ID.
Priority	Select a priority level (from 0 to 7). This is the service provider's priority level that adds to the frames received on this port. "0" is the lowest priority level and "7" is the highest.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 23.4.2 Selective Q-in-Q

Selective Q-in-Q is VLAN-based. It allows the Switch to add different outer VLAN tags to the incoming frames received on one port according to their inner VLAN tags.

Note: Selective Q-in-Q rules are only applied to single-tagged frames received on the access ports. If the incoming frames are untagged or single-tagged but received on a tunnel port or cannot match any selective Q-in-Q rules, the Switch applies the port-based Q-in-Q rules to them.

Click **Selective QinQ** in the **Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking** screen to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 97** Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking > Selective QinQ

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 65** Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking > Selective QinQ

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Check this box to activate this rule.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Port	The port number identifies the port you are configuring.
CVID	Enter a customer VLAN ID (the inner VLAN tag) from 1 to 4094. This is the VLAN tag carried in the packets from the subscribers.
SPVID	<b>SPVID</b> is the service provider's VLAN ID (the outer VLAN tag). Enter the service provider ID (from 1 to 4094) for frames received on this port. See <a href="#">Chapter 9 on page 99</a> for more background information on VLAN ID.
Priority	Select a priority level (from 0 to 7). This is the service provider's priority level that adds to the frames received on this port.  "0" is the lowest priority level and "7" is the highest.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Index	This is the number of the selective VLAN stacking rule.

**Table 65** Advanced Application > VLAN Stacking > Selective QinQ (continued)

<b>LABEL</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>
Active	This shows whether this rule is activated or not.
Name	This is the descriptive name for this rule.
Port	This is the port number to which this rule is applied.
CVID	This is the customer VLAN ID in the incoming packets.
SPVID	This is the service provider's VLAN ID that adds to the packets from the subscribers.
Priority	This is the service provider's priority level in the packets.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the <b>Delete</b> column and then click the <b>Delete</b> button.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the <b>Delete</b> check boxes.

## Multicast

This chapter shows you how to configure various multicast features.

### 24.1 Multicast Overview

Traditionally, IP packets are transmitted in one of either two ways - Unicast (1 sender to 1 recipient) or Broadcast (1 sender to everybody on the network). Multicast delivers IP packets to just a group of hosts on the network.

IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) is a network-layer protocol used to establish membership in a multicast group - it is not used to carry user data. Refer to RFC 1112, RFC 2236 and RFC 3376 for information on IGMP versions 1, 2 and 3 respectively.

#### 24.1.1 IP Multicast Addresses

In IPv4, a multicast address allows a device to send packets to a specific group of hosts (multicast group) in a different subnetwork. A multicast IP address represents a traffic receiving group, not individual receiving devices. IP addresses in the Class D range (224.0.0.0 to 239.255.255.255) are used for IP multicasting. Certain IP multicast numbers are reserved by IANA for special purposes (see the IANA website for more information).

#### 24.1.2 IGMP Filtering

With the IGMP filtering feature, you can control which IGMP groups a subscriber on a port can join. This allows you to control the distribution of multicast services (such as content information distribution) based on service plans and types of subscription.

You can set the Switch to filter the multicast group join reports on a per-port basis by configuring an IGMP filtering profile and associating the profile to a port.

#### 24.1.3 IGMP Snooping

The Switch can passively snoop on IGMP packets transferred between IP multicast routers/switches and IP multicast hosts to learn the IP multicast group membership. It checks IGMP packets passing through it, picks out the group registration information, and configures multicasting accordingly. IGMP snooping allows the Switch to learn multicast groups without you having to manually configure them.

The Switch forwards multicast traffic destined for multicast groups (that it has learned from IGMP snooping or that you have manually configured) to ports that are members of that group. IGMP snooping generates no additional network traffic, allowing you to significantly reduce multicast traffic passing through your Switch.

### 24.1.4 IGMP Snooping and VLANs

The Switch can perform IGMP snooping on up to 16 VLANs. You can configure the Switch to automatically learn multicast group membership of any VLANs. The Switch then performs IGMP snooping on the first 16 VLANs that send IGMP packets. This is referred to as auto mode. Alternatively, you can specify the VLANs that IGMP snooping should be performed on. This is referred to as fixed mode. In fixed mode the Switch does not learn multicast group membership of any VLANs other than those explicitly added as an IGMP snooping VLAN.

## 24.2 Multicast Status

Click **Advanced Applications > Multicast** to display the screen as shown. This screen shows the multicast group information. See [Section 24.1 on page 187](#) for more information on multicasting.

**Figure 98** Advanced Application > Multicast



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 66** Multicast Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This is the index number of the entry.
VID	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID.
Port	This field displays the port number that belongs to the multicast group.
Multicast Group	This field displays IP multicast group addresses.



## 24.3 Multicast Setting

Click **Advanced Applications > Multicast > Multicast Setting** link to display the screen as shown. See [Section 24.1 on page 187](#) for more information on multicasting.

**Figure 99** Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting

Port	Immed. Leave	Normal Leave	Fast Leave	Group Limited	Max Group Num.	Throttling	IGMP Filtering Profile	IGMP Querier Mode
*	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Deny	Default	Auto
1	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Deny	Default	Auto
2	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Deny	Default	Auto
3	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Deny	Default	Auto
4	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Deny	Default	Auto
5	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Deny	Default	Auto
6	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	0	Deny	Default	Auto

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 67** Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
IGMP Snooping	Use these settings to configure IGMP Snooping.
Active	Select <b>Active</b> to enable IGMP Snooping to forward group multicast traffic only to ports that are members of that group.
Querier	Select this option to allow the Switch to send IGMP General Query messages to the VLANs with the multicast hosts attached.
Host Timeout	Specify the time (from 1 to 16 711 450) in seconds that elapses before the Switch removes an IGMP group membership entry if it does not receive report messages from the port.
802.1p Priority	Select a priority level (0-7) to which the Switch changes the priority in outgoing IGMP control packets. Otherwise, select <b>No-Change</b> to not replace the priority.
IGMP Filtering	<p>Select <b>Active</b> to enable IGMP filtering to control which IGMP groups a subscriber on a port can join.</p> <p>Note: If you enable IGMP filtering, you must create and assign IGMP filtering profiles for the ports that you want to allow to join multicast groups.</p>

**Table 67** Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Unknown Multicast Frame	Specify the action to perform when the Switch receives an unknown multicast frame. Select <b>Drop</b> to discard the frame(s). Select <b>Flooding</b> to send the frame(s) to all ports.
Reserved Multicast Group	<p>The IP address range of 224.0.0.0 to 224.0.0.255 are reserved for multicasting on the local network only. For example, 224.0.0.1 is for all hosts on a local network segment and 224.0.0.9 is used to send RIP routing information to all RIP v2 routers on the same network segment. A multicast router will not forward a packet with the destination IP address within this range to other networks. See the IANA web site for more information.</p> <p>The layer-2 multicast MAC addresses used by Cisco layer-2 protocols, 01:00:0C:CC:CC:CC and 01:00:0C:CC:CC:CD, are also included in this group.</p> <p>Specify the action to perform when the Switch receives a frame with a reserved multicast address. Select <b>Drop</b> to discard the frame(s). Select <b>Flooding</b> to send the frame(s) to all ports.</p>
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	<p>Settings in this row apply to all ports.</p> <p>Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.</p>
Immed. Leave	<p>Select this option to set the Switch to remove this port from the multicast tree when an IGMP version 2 leave message is received on this port.</p> <p>Select this option if there is only one host connected to this port.</p>
Normal Leave	<p>Enter an IGMP normal leave timeout value (from 200 to 6,348,800) in milliseconds. Select this option to have the Switch use this timeout to update the forwarding table for the port.</p> <p>In normal leave mode, when the Switch receives an IGMP leave message from a host on a port, the Switch waits for IGMP reports after the multicast router sends out an IGMP Group-Specific Query (GSQ) message to determine whether other hosts connected to the port should remain in the specific multicast group.</p> <p>This defines how many seconds the Switch waits for an IGMP report before removing an IGMP snooping membership entry when an IGMP leave message is received on this port from a host.</p>
Fast Leave	<p>Enter an IGMP fast leave timeout value (from 200 to 6,348,800) in milliseconds. Select this option to have the Switch use this timeout to update the forwarding table for the port.</p> <p>In fast leave mode, right after receiving an IGMP leave message from a host on a port, the Switch sends out an IGMP Group-Specific Query (GSQ) message to determine whether other hosts connected to the port should remain in the specific multicast group. This helps speed up the leave process.</p> <p>This defines how many seconds the Switch waits for an IGMP report before removing an IGMP snooping membership entry when an IGMP leave message is received on this port from a host.</p>
Group Limited	Select this option to limit the number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join.
Max Group Num.	Enter the number of multicast groups this port is allowed to join. Once a port is registered in the specified number of multicast groups, any new IGMP join report frame(s) is dropped on this port.

**Table 67** Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Throttling	<p>IGMP throttling controls how the Switch deals with the IGMP reports when the maximum number of the IGMP groups a port can join is reached.</p> <p>Select <b>Deny</b> to drop any new IGMP join report received on this port until an existing multicast forwarding table entry is aged out.</p> <p>Select <b>Replace</b> to replace an existing entry in the multicast forwarding table with the new IGMP report(s) received on this port.</p>
IGMP Filtering Profile	<p>Select the name of the IGMP filtering profile to use for this port. Otherwise, select <b>Default</b> to prohibit the port from joining any multicast group.</p> <p>You can create IGMP filtering profiles in the <b>Multicast &gt; Multicast Setting &gt; IGMP Filtering Profile</b> screen.</p>
IGMP Querier Mode	<p>The Switch treats an IGMP query port as being connected to an IGMP multicast router (or server). The Switch forwards IGMP join or leave packets to an IGMP query port.</p> <p>Select <b>Auto</b> to have the Switch use the port as an IGMP query port if the port receives IGMP query packets.</p> <p>Select <b>Fixed</b> to have the Switch always use the port as an IGMP query port. Select this when you connect an IGMP multicast server to the port.</p> <p>Select <b>Edge</b> to stop the Switch from using the port as an IGMP query port. The Switch will not keep any record of an IGMP router being connected to this port. The Switch does not forward IGMP join or leave packets to this port.</p>
Apply	<p>Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.</p>
Cancel	<p>Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.</p>

# 24.4 IGMP Snooping VLAN

Click **Advanced Applications > Multicast** in the navigation panel. Click the **Multicast Setting** link and then the **IGMP Snooping VLAN** link to display the screen as shown. See [Section 24.1.4 on page 188](#) for more information on IGMP Snooping VLAN.

**Figure 100** Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > IGMP Snooping VLAN

The screenshot shows the 'IGMP Snooping VLAN' configuration interface. At the top, there's a title bar with 'IGMP Snooping VLAN' and a 'Multicast Setting' link. Below the title bar, there's a 'Mode' section with two radio buttons: 'auto' (selected) and 'fixed'. There are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons. Below this is a 'VLAN' section with input fields for 'Name' and 'VID'. There are 'Add', 'Cancel', and 'Clear' buttons. At the bottom, there's a table with columns 'Index', 'Name', 'VID', and 'Delete'. Below the table, there are 'Delete' and 'Cancel' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 68** Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > IGMP Snooping VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Mode	Select <b>auto</b> to have the Switch learn multicast group membership information of any VLANs automatically.  Select <b>fixed</b> to have the Switch only learn multicast group membership information of the VLAN(s) that you specify below.  In either <b>auto</b> or <b>fixed</b> mode, the Switch can learn up to 16 VLANs (including up to five VLANs you configured in the <b>MVR</b> screen). For example, if you have configured one multicast VLAN in the <b>MVR</b> screen, you can only specify up to 15 VLANs in this screen.  The Switch drops any IGMP control messages which do not belong to these 16 VLANs.  Note: You must also enable IGMP snooping in the <b>Multicast Setting</b> screen first.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
VLAN	Use this section of the screen to add VLANs upon which the Switch is to perform IGMP snooping.
Name	Enter the descriptive name of the VLAN for identification purposes.
VID	Enter the ID of a static VLAN; the valid range is between 1 and 4094.  Note: You cannot configure the same VLAN ID as in the <b>MVR</b> screen.

**Table 68** Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > IGMP Snooping VLAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to insert the entry in the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click this to clear the fields.
Index	This is the number of the IGMP snooping VLAN entry in the table.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this VLAN group.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the <b>Delete</b> column, then click the <b>Delete</b> button.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the <b>Delete</b> check boxes.

## 24.5 IGMP Filtering Profile

An IGMP filtering profile specifies a range of multicast groups that clients connected to the Switch are able to join. A profile contains a range of multicast IP addresses which you want clients to be able to join. Profiles are assigned to ports (in the **Multicast Setting** screen). Clients connected to those ports are then able to join the multicast groups specified in the profile. Each port can be assigned a single profile. A profile can be assigned to multiple ports.

Click **Advanced Applications > Multicast > Multicast Setting > IGMP Filtering Profile** link to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 101** Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > IGMP Filtering Profile

The screenshot shows the 'IGMP Filtering Profile' configuration interface. It includes a 'Profile Setup' section with text input for 'Profile Name', and numeric input for 'Start Address' (224.0.0.0) and 'End Address' (224.0.0.0). Below these are 'Add' and 'Clear' buttons. A table below lists existing profiles. The table has five columns: 'Profile Name', 'Start Address', 'End Address', 'Delete Profile', and 'Delete Rule'. One profile named 'Default' is listed with '0.0.0.0' for both addresses and checkboxes for deletion. At the bottom right are 'Delete' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Profile Name	Start Address	End Address	Delete Profile	Delete Rule
Default	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 69** Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > IGMP Filtering Profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Enter a descriptive name for the profile for identification purposes.  To configure additional rule(s) for a profile that you have already added, enter the profile name and specify a different IP multicast address range.
Start Address	Type the starting multicast IP address for a range of multicast IP addresses that you want to belong to the IGMP filter profile.
End Address	Type the ending multicast IP address for a range of IP addresses that you want to belong to the IGMP filter profile.  If you want to add a single multicast IP address, enter it in both the <b>Start Address</b> and <b>End Address</b> fields.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save the profile to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to clear the fields to the factory defaults.
Profile Name	This field displays the descriptive name of the profile.
Start Address	This field displays the start of the multicast address range.
End Address	This field displays the end of the multicast address range.
Delete	To delete the profile(s) and all the accompanying rules, select the profile(s) that you want to remove in the <b>Delete Profile</b> column, then click the <b>Delete</b> button.  To delete a rule(s) from a profile, select the rule(s) that you want to remove in the <b>Delete Rule</b> column, then click the <b>Delete</b> button.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the <b>Delete Profile/Delete Rule</b> check boxes.

## 24.6 MVR Overview

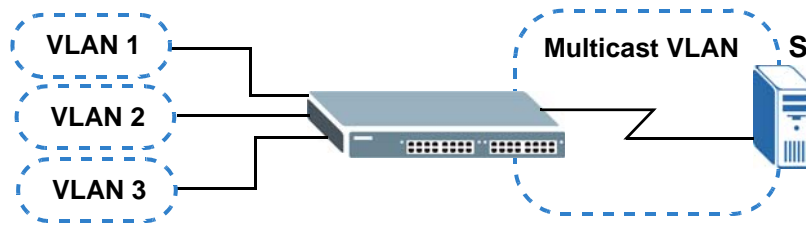
Multicast VLAN Registration (MVR) is designed for applications (such as Media-on-Demand (MoD)) that use multicast traffic across an Ethernet ring-based service provider network.

MVR allows one single multicast VLAN to be shared among different subscriber VLANs on the network. While isolated in different subscriber VLANs, connected devices can subscribe to and unsubscribe from the multicast stream in the multicast VLAN. This improves bandwidth utilization with reduced multicast traffic in the subscriber VLANs and simplifies multicast group management.

MVR only responds to IGMP join and leave control messages from multicast groups that are configured under MVR. Join and leave reports from other multicast groups are managed by IGMP snooping.

The following figure shows a network example. The subscriber VLAN (**1**, **2** and **3**) information is hidden from the streaming media server, **S**. In addition, the multicast VLAN information is only visible to the Switch and **S**.

**Figure 102** MVR Network Example



## 24.6.1 Types of MVR Ports

In MVR, a source port is a port on the Switch that can send and receive multicast traffic in a multicast VLAN while a receiver port can only receive multicast traffic. Once configured, the Switch maintains a forwarding table that matches the multicast stream to the associated multicast group.

## 24.6.2 MVR Modes

You can set your Switch to operate in either dynamic or compatible mode.

In dynamic mode, the Switch sends IGMP leave and join reports to the other multicast devices (such as multicast routers or servers) in the multicast VLAN. This allows the multicast devices to update the multicast forwarding table to forward or not forward multicast traffic to the receiver ports.

In compatible mode, the Switch does not send any IGMP reports. In this case, you must manually configure the forwarding settings on the multicast devices in the multicast VLAN.

## 24.6.3 How MVR Works

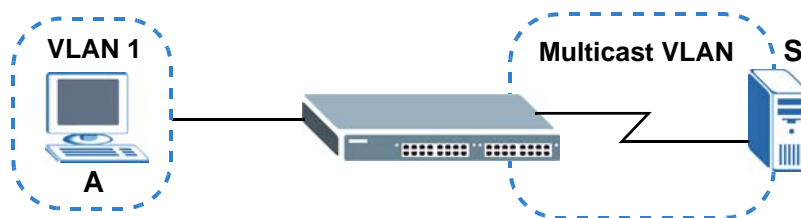
The following figure shows a multicast television example where a subscriber device (such as a computer) in VLAN 1 receives multicast traffic from the streaming media server, **S**, via the Switch. Multiple subscriber devices can connect through a port configured as the receiver on the Switch.

When the subscriber selects a television channel, computer **A** sends an IGMP report to the Switch to join the appropriate multicast group. If the IGMP report matches one of the configured MVR multicast group addresses on the Switch, an entry is created in the forwarding table on the Switch. This maps the subscriber VLAN to the list of forwarding destinations for the specified multicast traffic.

When the subscriber changes the channel or turns off the computer, an IGMP leave message is sent to the Switch to leave the multicast group. The Switch sends a query to VLAN 1 on the receiver port (in this case, an uplink port on the Switch). If there is another subscriber device connected to this

port in the same subscriber VLAN, the receiving port will still be on the list of forwarding destination for the multicast traffic. Otherwise, the Switch removes the receiver port from the forwarding table.

**Figure 103** MVR Multicast Television Example



## 24.7 General MVR Configuration

Use the **MVR** screen to create multicast VLANs and select the receiver port(s) and a source port for each multicast VLAN. Click **Advanced Applications > Multicast > Multicast Setting > MVR** link to display the screen as shown next.

Note: You can create up to five multicast VLANs and up to 256 multicast rules on the Switch.



Note: Your Switch automatically creates a static VLAN (with the same VID) when you create a multicast VLAN in this screen.

**Figure 104** Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > MVR

The following table describes the related labels in this screen.

**Table 70** Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > MVR

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable MVR to allow one single multicast VLAN to be shared among different subscriber VLANs on the network.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Multicast VLAN ID	Enter the VLAN ID (1 to 4094) of the multicast VLAN.
802.1p Priority	Select a priority level (0-7) with which the Switch replaces the priority in outgoing IGMP control packets (belonging to this multicast VLAN).
Mode	Specify the MVR mode on the Switch. Choices are <b>Dynamic</b> and <b>Compatible</b> . Select <b>Dynamic</b> to send IGMP reports to all MVR source ports in the multicast VLAN. Select <b>Compatible</b> to set the Switch not to send IGMP reports.
Port	This field displays the port number on the Switch.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports. Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.  Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.

**Table 70** Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > MVR (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Source Port	Select this option to set this port as the MVR source port that sends and receives multicast traffic. All source ports must belong to a single multicast VLAN.
Receiver Port	Select this option to set this port as a receiver port that only receives multicast traffic.
None	Select this option to set the port not to participate in MVR. No MVR multicast traffic is sent or received on this port.
Tagging	Select this checkbox if you want the port to tag the VLAN ID in all outgoing frames transmitted.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
VLAN	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID.
Active	This field displays whether the multicast group is enabled or not.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this setting.
Mode	This field displays the MVR mode.
Source Port	This field displays the source port number(s).
Receiver Port	This field displays the receiver port number(s).
802.1p	This field displays the priority level.
Delete	To delete a multicast VLAN(s), select the rule(s) that you want to remove in the <b>Delete</b> column, then click the <b>Delete</b> button.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the <b>Delete</b> check boxes.

## 24.8 MVR Group Configuration

All source ports and receiver ports belonging to a multicast group can receive multicast data sent to this multicast group.

Configure MVR IP multicast group address(es) in the **Group Configuration** screen. Click **Group Configuration** in the **MVR** screen.

Note: A port can belong to more than one multicast VLAN. However, IP multicast group addresses in different multicast VLANs cannot overlap.

**Figure 105** Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > MVR: Group Configuration

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 71** Advanced Application > Multicast > Multicast Setting > MVR: Group Configuration

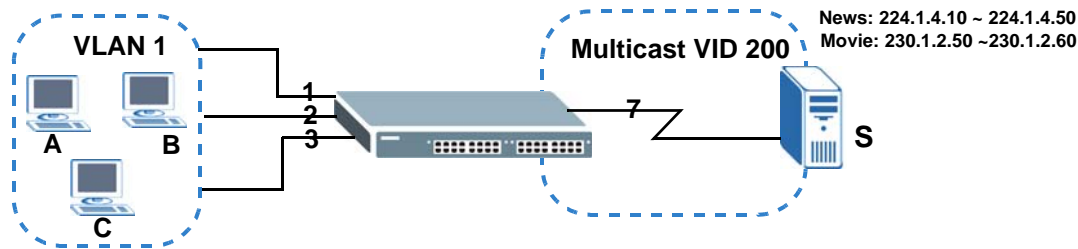
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Multicast VLAN ID	Select a multicast VLAN ID (that you configured in the <b>MVR</b> screen) from the drop-down list box.
Name	Enter a descriptive name for identification purposes.
Start Address	Enter the starting IP multicast address of the multicast group in dotted decimal notation. Refer to <a href="#">Section 24.1.1 on page 187</a> for more information on IP multicast addresses.
End Address	Enter the ending IP multicast address of the multicast group in dotted decimal notation. Enter the same IP address as the <b>Start Address</b> field if you want to configure only one IP address for a multicast group. Refer to <a href="#">Section 24.1.1 on page 187</a> for more information on IP multicast addresses.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
MVLAN	This field displays the multicast VLAN ID.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this setting.
Start Address	This field displays the starting IP address of the multicast group.
End Address	This field displays the ending IP address of the multicast group.
Delete	Select <b>Delete All</b> or <b>Delete Group</b> and click <b>Delete</b> to remove the selected entry(ies) from the table.
Cancel	Select <b>Cancel</b> to clear the checkbox(es) in the table.

## 24.8.1 MVR Configuration Example

The following figure shows a network example where ports 1, 2 and 3 on the Switch belong to VLAN 1. In addition, port 7 belongs to the multicast group with VID 200 to receive multicast traffic (the

**News** and **Movie** channels) from the remote streaming media server, **S**. Computers A, B and C in VLAN 1 are able to receive the traffic.

**Figure 106** MVR Configuration Example



To configure the MVR settings on the Switch, create a multicast group in the **MVR** screen and set the receiver and source ports.

**Figure 107** MVR Configuration Example

**MVR** Multicast Setting Group Configuration

Active ☒

Name

Multicast VLAN ID

802.1p Priority

Mode ☒ Dynamic ☐ Compatible

Port	Source Port	Receiver Port	None	Tagging
*		None		<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**EXAMPLE**

To set the Switch to forward the multicast group traffic to the subscribers, configure multicast group settings in the **Group Configuration** screen. The following figure shows an example where two multicast groups (**News** and **Movie**) are configured for the multicast VLAN 200.

**Figure 108** MVR Group Configuration Example

**Group Configuration** MVR

Multicast VLAN ID: 200

Name	Start Address	End Address
<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Movie</span>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">230.1.2.50</span>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">230.1.2.60</span>

Add
Cancel

MVLAN	Name	Start Address	End Address	Delete All	Delete Group
200	News	224.1.4.10	224.1.4.50	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Delete
Cancel

EXAMPLE

**Figure 109** MVR Group Configuration Example

**Group Configuration** MVR

Multicast VLAN ID: 200

Name	Start Address	End Address
<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"></span>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">0.0.0.0</span>	<span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">0.0.0.0</span>

Add
Cancel

MVLAN	Name	Start Address	End Address	Delete All	Delete Group
200	Movie	230.1.2.50	230.1.2.60	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	News	224.1.4.10	224.1.4.50	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Delete
Cancel

EXAMPLE

This chapter describes how to configure authentication, authorization and accounting settings on the Switch.

## 25.1 Authentication, Authorization and Accounting (AAA)

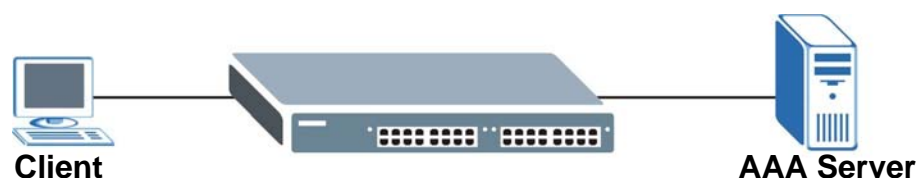
Authentication is the process of determining who a user is and validating access to the Switch. The Switch can authenticate users who try to log in based on user accounts configured on the Switch itself. The Switch can also use an external authentication server to authenticate a large number of users.

Authorization is the process of determining what a user is allowed to do. Different user accounts may have higher or lower privilege levels associated with them. For example, user A may have the right to create new login accounts on the Switch but user B cannot. The Switch can authorize users based on user accounts configured on the Switch itself or it can use an external server to authorize a large number of users.

Accounting is the process of recording what a user is doing. The Switch can use an external server to track when users log in, log out, execute commands and so on. Accounting can also record system related actions such as boot up and shut down times of the Switch.

The external servers that perform authentication, authorization and accounting functions are known as AAA servers. The Switch supports RADIUS (Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service, see [Section 25.1.2 on page 203](#)) and TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus, see [Section 25.1.2 on page 203](#)) as external authentication, authorization and accounting servers.

**Figure 110** AAA Server



### 25.1.1 Local User Accounts

By storing user profiles locally on the Switch, your Switch is able to authenticate and authorize users without interacting with a network AAA server. However, there is a limit on the number of users you may authenticate in this way (See [Chapter 39 on page 292](#)).

## 25.1.2 RADIUS and TACACS+

RADIUS and TACACS+ are security protocols used to authenticate users by means of an external server instead of (or in addition to) an internal device user database that is limited to the memory capacity of the device. In essence, RADIUS and TACACS+ authentication both allow you to validate an unlimited number of users from a central location.

The following table describes some key differences between RADIUS and TACACS+.

**Table 72** RADIUS vs TACACS+

	<b>RADIUS</b>	<b>TACACS+</b>
Transport Protocol	UDP (User Datagram Protocol)	TCP (Transmission Control Protocol)
Encryption	Encrypts the password sent for authentication.	All communication between the client (the Switch) and the TACACS server is encrypted.

## 25.2 AAA Screens

The **AAA** screens allow you to enable authentication, authorization, accounting or all of them on the Switch. First, configure your authentication and accounting server settings (RADIUS, TACACS+ or both) and then set up the authentication priority, activate authorization and configure accounting settings.

Click **Advanced Application > AAA** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 111** Advanced Application > AAA



### 25.2.1 RADIUS Server Setup

Use this screen to configure your RADIUS server settings. See [Section 25.1.2 on page 203](#) for more information on RADIUS servers and [Section 25.3 on page 211](#) for RADIUS attributes utilized by the

authentication and accounting features on the Switch. Click on the **RADIUS Server Setup** link in the **AAA** screen to view the screen as shown.

**Figure 112** Advanced Application > AAA > RADIUS Server Setup

**RADIUS Server Setup** AAA

**Authentication Server**

Mode: index-priority

Timeout: 30 seconds

Index	IP Address	UDP Port	Shared Secret	Delete
1	0.0.0.0	1812		<input type="checkbox"/>
2	0.0.0.0	1812		<input type="checkbox"/>

Apply Cancel

**Accounting Server**

Timeout: 30 seconds

Index	IP Address	UDP Port	Shared Secret	Delete
1	0.0.0.0	1813		<input type="checkbox"/>
2	0.0.0.0	1813		<input type="checkbox"/>

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 73** Advanced Application > AAA > RADIUS Server Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authentication Server	Use this section to configure your RADIUS authentication settings.
Mode	<p>This field only applies if you configure multiple RADIUS servers.</p> <p>Select <b>index-priority</b> and the Switch tries to authenticate with the first configured RADIUS server, if the RADIUS server does not respond then the Switch tries to authenticate with the second RADIUS server.</p> <p>Select <b>round-robin</b> to alternate between the RADIUS servers that it sends authentication requests to.</p>
Timeout	<p>Specify the amount of time in seconds that the Switch waits for an authentication request response from the RADIUS server.</p> <p>If you are using <b>index-priority</b> for your authentication and you are using two RADIUS servers then the timeout value is divided between the two RADIUS servers. For example, if you set the timeout value to 30 seconds, then the Switch waits for a response from the first RADIUS server for 15 seconds and then tries the second RADIUS server.</p>
Index	This is a read-only number representing a RADIUS server entry.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of an external RADIUS server in dotted decimal notation.
UDP Port	The default port of a RADIUS server for authentication is <b>1812</b> . You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.



**Table 73** Advanced Application > AAA > RADIUS Server Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Shared Secret	Specify a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external RADIUS server and the Switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external RADIUS server and the Switch.
Delete	Select this box if you want to remove an existing RADIUS server entry from the Switch. This entry is deleted when you click <b>Apply</b> .
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Accounting Server	Use this section to configure your RADIUS accounting server settings.
Timeout	Specify the amount of time in seconds that the Switch waits for an accounting request response from the RADIUS accounting server.
Index	This is a read-only number representing a RADIUS accounting server entry.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of an external RADIUS accounting server in dotted decimal notation.
UDP Port	The default port of a RADIUS accounting server for accounting is <b>1813</b> . You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.
Shared Secret	Specify a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external RADIUS accounting server and the Switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external RADIUS accounting server and the Switch.
Delete	Check this box if you want to remove an existing RADIUS accounting server entry from the Switch. This entry is deleted when you click <b>Apply</b> .
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 25.2.2 TACACS+ Server Setup

Use this screen to configure your TACACS+ server settings. See [Section 25.1.2 on page 203](#) for more information on TACACS+ servers. Click on the **TACACS+ Server Setup** link in the **Authentication and Accounting** screen to view the screen as shown.

**Figure 113** Advanced Application > AAA > TACACS+ Server Setup

**TACACS+ Server Setup** Auth and Acct

**Authentication Server**

Mode: index-priority

Timeout: 30 seconds

Index	IP Address	TCP Port	Shared Secret	Delete
1	0.0.0.0	49		<input type="checkbox"/>
2	0.0.0.0	49		<input type="checkbox"/>

Apply Cancel

**Accounting Server**

Timeout: 30 seconds

Index	IP Address	TCP Port	Shared Secret	Delete
1	0.0.0.0	49		<input type="checkbox"/>
2	0.0.0.0	49		<input type="checkbox"/>

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 74** Advanced Application > AAA > TACACS+ Server Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authentication Server	Use this section to configure your TACACS+ authentication settings.
Mode	<p>This field is only valid if you configure multiple TACACS+ servers.</p> <p>Select <b>index-priority</b> and the Switch tries to authenticate with the first configured TACACS+ server, if the TACACS+ server does not respond then the Switch tries to authenticate with the second TACACS+ server.</p> <p>Select <b>round-robin</b> to alternate between the TACACS+ servers that it sends authentication requests to.</p>
Timeout	<p>Specify the amount of time in seconds that the Switch waits for an authentication request response from the TACACS+ server.</p> <p>If you are using <b>index-priority</b> for your authentication and you are using two TACACS+ servers then the timeout value is divided between the two TACACS+ servers. For example, if you set the timeout value to 30 seconds, then the Switch waits for a response from the first TACACS+ server for 15 seconds and then tries the second TACACS+ server.</p>
Index	This is a read-only number representing a TACACS+ server entry.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of an external TACACS+ server in dotted decimal notation.

**Table 74** Advanced Application > AAA > TACACS+ Server Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
TCP Port	The default port of a TACACS+ server for authentication is <b>49</b> . You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.
Shared Secret	Specify a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external TACACS+ server and the Switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external TACACS+ server and the Switch.
Delete	Check this box if you want to remove an existing TACACS+ server entry from the Switch. This entry is deleted when you click <b>Apply</b> .
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Accounting Server	Use this section to configure your TACACS+ accounting settings.
Timeout	Specify the amount of time in seconds that the Switch waits for an accounting request response from the TACACS+ server.
Index	This is a read-only number representing a TACACS+ accounting server entry.
IP Address	Enter the IP address of an external TACACS+ accounting server in dotted decimal notation.
TCP Port	The default port of a TACACS+ accounting server is <b>49</b> . You need not change this value unless your network administrator instructs you to do so.
Shared Secret	Specify a password (up to 32 alphanumeric characters) as the key to be shared between the external TACACS+ accounting server and the Switch. This key is not sent over the network. This key must be the same on the external TACACS+ accounting server and the Switch.
Delete	Check this box if you want to remove an existing TACACS+ accounting server entry from the Switch. This entry is deleted when you click <b>Apply</b> .
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

### 25.2.3 AAA Setup

Use this screen to configure authentication, authorization and accounting settings on the Switch. Click on the **AAA Setup** link in the **AAA** screen to view the screen as shown.

**Figure 114** Advanced Application > AAA > AAA Setup

**AAA Setup** AAA

**Authentication**

Type	Method 1	Method 2	Method 3
Privilege Enable	local	-	-
Login	local	-	-

**Authorization**

Type	Active	Method
Exec	<input type="checkbox"/>	radius
Dot1x	<input type="checkbox"/>	radius

**Accounting**

Update Period: 0 minutes

Type	Active	Broadcast	Mode	Method	Privilege
System	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	-	radius	-
Exec	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	start-stop	radius	-
Dot1x	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	start-stop	radius	-
Commands	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	stop-only	tacacs+	0

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 75** Advanced Application > AAA > AAA Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Authentication	Use this section to specify the methods used to authenticate users accessing the Switch.
Privilege Enable	<p>These fields specify which database the Switch should use (first, second and third) to authenticate access privilege level for administrator accounts (users for Switch management).</p> <p>Configure the access privilege of accounts via commands (see the Ethernet Switch CLI Reference Guide) for <b>local</b> authentication. The <b>TACACS+</b> and <b>RADIUS</b> are external servers. Before you specify the priority, make sure you have set up the corresponding database correctly first.</p> <p>You can specify up to three methods for the Switch to authenticate the access privilege level of administrators. The Switch checks the methods in the order you configure them (first <b>Method 1</b>, then <b>Method 2</b> and finally <b>Method 3</b>). You must configure the settings in the <b>Method 1</b> field. If you want the Switch to check other sources for access privilege level specify them in <b>Method 2</b> and <b>Method 3</b> fields.</p> <p>Select <b>local</b> to have the Switch check the access privilege configured for local authentication.</p> <p>Select <b>radius</b> or <b>tacacs+</b> to have the Switch check the access privilege via the external servers.</p>

**Table 75** Advanced Application > AAA > AAA Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Login	<p>These fields specify which database the Switch should use (first, second and third) to authenticate administrator accounts (users for Switch management).</p> <p>Configure the local user accounts in the <b>Access Control &gt; Logins</b> screen. The TACACS+ and RADIUS are external servers. Before you specify the priority, make sure you have set up the corresponding database correctly first.</p> <p>You can specify up to three methods for the Switch to authenticate administrator accounts. The Switch checks the methods in the order you configure them (first <b>Method 1</b>, then <b>Method 2</b> and finally <b>Method 3</b>). You must configure the settings in the <b>Method 1</b> field. If you want the Switch to check other sources for administrator accounts, specify them in <b>Method 2</b> and <b>Method 3</b> fields.</p> <p>Select <b>local</b> to have the Switch check the administrator accounts configured in the <b>Access Control &gt; Logins</b> screen.</p> <p>Select <b>radius</b> to have the Switch check the administrator accounts configured via the RADIUS Server.</p> <p>Select <b>tacacs+</b> to have the Switch check the administrator accounts configured via the TACACS+ Server.</p>
Authorization	Use this section to configure authorization settings on the Switch.
Type	<p>Set whether the Switch provides the following services to a user.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Exec</b>: Allow an administrator which logs in the Switch through Telnet or SSH to have different access privilege level assigned via the external server.</li> <li>• <b>Dot1x</b>: Allow an IEEE 802.1x client to have different bandwidth limit or VLAN ID assigned via the external server.</li> </ul>
Active	Select this to activate authorization for a specified event types.
Method	<p>Select whether you want to use RADIUS or TACACS+ for authorization of specific types of events.</p> <p>RADIUS is the only method for IEEE 802.1x authorization.</p>
Accounting	Use this section to configure accounting settings on the Switch.
Update Period	This is the amount of time in minutes before the Switch sends an update to the accounting server. This is only valid if you select the <b>start-stop</b> option for the <b>Exec</b> or <b>Dot1x</b> entries.
Type	<p>The Switch supports the following types of events to be sent to the accounting server(s):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>System</b> - Configure the Switch to send information when the following system events occur: system boots up, system shuts down, system accounting is enabled, system accounting is disabled</li> <li>• <b>Exec</b> - Configure the Switch to send information when an administrator logs in and logs out via the console port, telnet or SSH.</li> <li>• <b>Dot1x</b> - Configure the Switch to send information when an IEEE 802.1x client begins a session (authenticates via the Switch), ends a session as well as interim updates of a session.</li> <li>• <b>Commands</b> - Configure the Switch to send information when commands of specified privilege level and higher are executed on the Switch.</li> </ul>
Active	Select this to activate accounting for a specified event types.
Broadcast	<p>Select this to have the Switch send accounting information to all configured accounting servers at the same time.</p> <p>If you don't select this and you have two accounting servers set up, then the Switch sends information to the first accounting server and if it doesn't get a response from the accounting server then it tries the second accounting server.</p>

**Table 75** Advanced Application > AAA > AAA Setup (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Mode	The Switch supports two modes of recording login events. Select: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>start-stop</b> - to have the Switch send information to the accounting server when a user begins a session, during a user's session (if it lasts past the <b>Update Period</b>), and when a user ends a session.</li> <li>• <b>stop-only</b> - to have the Switch send information to the accounting server only when a user ends a session.</li> </ul>
Method	Select whether you want to use RADIUS or TACACS+ for accounting of specific types of events.  TACACS+ is the only method for recording <b>Commands</b> type of event.
Privilege	This field is only configurable for <b>Commands</b> type of event. Select the threshold command privilege level for which the Switch should send accounting information. The Switch will send accounting information when commands at the level you specify and higher are executed on the Switch.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 25.2.4 Vendor Specific Attribute

RFC 2865 standard specifies a method for sending vendor-specific information between a RADIUS server and a network access device (for example, the Switch). A company can create Vendor Specific Attributes (VSAs) to expand the functionality of a RADIUS server.

The Switch supports VSAs that allow you to perform the following actions based on user authentication:

- Limit bandwidth on incoming or outgoing traffic for the port the user connects to.
- Assign account privilege levels (see the CLI Reference Guide for more information on account privilege levels) for the authenticated user.

The VSAs are composed of the following:

- **Vendor-ID:** An identification number assigned to the company by the IANA (Internet Assigned Numbers Authority). ZyXEL's vendor ID is 890.
- **Vendor-Type:** A vendor specified attribute, identifying the setting you want to modify.
- **Vendor-data:** A value you want to assign to the setting.

Note: Refer to the documentation that comes with your RADIUS server on how to configure VSAs for users authenticating via the RADIUS server.

The following table describes the VSAs supported on the Switch. Note that these attributes only work when you enable authorization (see [Section 25.2.3 on page 208](#)).

**Table 76** Supported VSAs

FUNCTION	ATTRIBUTE
Ingress Bandwidth Assignment	Vendor-Id = <b>890</b> Vendor-Type = <b>1</b> Vendor-data = ingress rate (Kbps in decimal format)
Egress Bandwidth Assignment	Vendor-Id = <b>890</b> Vendor-Type = <b>2</b> Vendor-data = egress rate (Kbps in decimal format)
Privilege Assignment	Vendor-ID = <b>890</b> Vendor-Type = <b>3</b> Vendor-Data = " <b>shell:priv-lvl=N</b> "  or  Vendor-ID = <b>9</b> (CISCO) Vendor-Type = <b>1</b> (CISCO-AVPAIR) Vendor-Data = " <b>shell:priv-lvl=N</b> "  where N is a privilege level (from 0 to 14).  Note: If you set the privilege level of a login account differently on the RADIUS server(s) and the Switch, the user is assigned a privilege level from the database (RADIUS or local) the Switch uses first for user authentication.

## 25.2.5 Tunnel Protocol Attribute

You can configure tunnel protocol attributes on the RADIUS server (refer to your RADIUS server documentation) to assign a port on the Switch to a VLAN based on IEEE 802.1x authentication. The port VLAN settings are fixed and untagged. This will also set the port's VID. The following table describes the values you need to configure. Note that these attributes only work when you enable authorization (see [Section 25.2.3 on page 208](#)).

**Table 77** Supported Tunnel Protocol Attribute

FUNCTION	ATTRIBUTE
VLAN Assignment	Tunnel-Type = <b>VLAN(13)</b> Tunnel-Medium-Type = <b>802(6)</b> Tunnel-Private-Group-ID = VLAN ID  Note: You must also create a VLAN with the specified VID on the Switch.  Note: The bolded values in this table are fixed values as defined in RFC 3580.

## 25.3 Supported RADIUS Attributes

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) attributes are data used to define specific authentication, and accounting elements in a user profile, which is stored on the RADIUS server. This section lists the RADIUS attributes supported by the Switch.

Refer to RFC 2865 for more information about RADIUS attributes used for authentication. Refer to RFC 2866 and RFC 2869 for RADIUS attributes used for accounting.

This section lists the attributes used by authentication and accounting functions on the Switch. In cases where the attribute has a specific format associated with it, the format is specified.

## 25.3.1 Attributes Used for Authentication

The following sections list the attributes sent from the Switch to the RADIUS server when performing authentication.

### 25.3.1.1 Attributes Used for Authenticating Privilege Access

User-Name

- the format of the User-Name attribute is **\$enab#\$**, where # is the privilege level (1-14)

User-Password

NAS-Identifier

NAS-IP-Address

### 25.3.1.2 Attributes Used to Login Users

User-Name

User-Password

NAS-Identifier

NAS-IP-Address

### 25.3.1.3 Attributes Used by the IEEE 802.1x Authentication

User-Name

NAS-Identifier

NAS-IP-Address

NAS-Port

NAS-Port-Type

- This value is set to **Ethernet(15)** on the Switch.

Calling-Station-Id

Frame-MTU

EAP-Message

State

Message-Authenticator

## 25.3.2 Attributes Used for Accounting

The following sections list the attributes sent from the Switch to the RADIUS server when performing authentication.



### 25.3.2.1 Attributes Used for Accounting System Events

NAS-IP-Address

NAS-Identifier

Acct-Status-Type

Acct-Session-ID

- The format of Acct-Session-Id is **date+time+8-digit sequential number**, for example, 2007041917210300000001. (date: 2007/04/19, time: 17:21:03, serial number: 00000001)

Acct-Delay-Time

### 25.3.2.2 Attributes Used for Accounting Exec Events

The attributes are listed in the following table along with the time that they are sent (the difference between Console and Telnet/SSH Exec events is that the Telnet/SSH events utilize the Calling-Station-Id attribute):

**Table 78** RADIUS Attributes - Exec Events via Console

ATTRIBUTE	START	INTERIM-UPDATE	STOP
User-Name	✓	✓	✓
NAS-Identifier	✓	✓	✓
NAS-IP-Address	✓	✓	✓
Service-Type	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Status-Type	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Delay-Time	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Session-Id	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Authentic	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Session-Time		✓	✓
Acct-Terminate-Cause			✓

**Table 79** RADIUS Attributes - Exec Events via Telnet/SSH

ATTRIBUTE	START	INTERIM-UPDATE	STOP
User-Name	✓	✓	✓
NAS-Identifier	✓	✓	✓
NAS-IP-Address	✓	✓	✓
Service-Type	✓	✓	✓
Calling-Station-Id	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Status-Type	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Delay-Time	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Session-Id	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Authentic	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Session-Time		✓	✓
Acct-Terminate-Cause			✓

### 25.3.2.3 Attributes Used for Accounting IEEE 802.1x Events

The attributes are listed in the following table along with the time of the session they are sent:

**Table 80** RADIUS Attributes - Exec Events via Console

ATTRIBUTE	START	INTERIM-UPDATE	STOP
User-Name	✓	✓	✓
NAS-IP-Address	✓	✓	✓
NAS-Port	✓	✓	✓
Class	✓	✓	✓
Called-Station-Id	✓	✓	✓
Calling-Station-Id	✓	✓	✓
NAS-Identifier	✓	✓	✓
NAS-Port-Type	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Status-Type	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Delay-Time	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Session-Id	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Authentic	✓	✓	✓
Acct-Input-Octets		✓	✓
Acct-Output-Octets		✓	✓
Acct-Session-Time		✓	✓
Acct-Input-Packets		✓	✓
Acct-Output-Packets		✓	✓
Acct-Terminate-Cause			✓
Acct-Input-Gigawords		✓	✓
Acct-Output-Gigawords		✓	✓

## IP Source Guard

Use IP source guard to filter unauthorized DHCP and ARP packets in your network.

### 26.1 IP Source Guard Overview

IP source guard uses a binding table to distinguish between authorized and unauthorized DHCP and ARP packets in your network. A binding contains these key attributes:

- MAC address
- VLAN ID
- IP address
- Port number

When the Switch receives a DHCP or ARP packet, it looks up the appropriate MAC address, VLAN ID, IP address, and port number in the binding table. If there is a binding, the Switch forwards the packet. If there is not a binding, the Switch discards the packet.

The Switch builds the binding table by snooping DHCP packets (dynamic bindings) and from information provided manually by administrators (static bindings).

IP source guard consists of the following features:

- Static bindings. Use this to create static bindings in the binding table.
- DHCP snooping. Use this to filter unauthorized DHCP packets on the network and to build the binding table dynamically.
- ARP inspection. Use this to filter unauthorized ARP packets on the network.

If you want to use dynamic bindings to filter unauthorized ARP packets (typical implementation), you have to enable DHCP snooping before you enable ARP inspection.

#### 26.1.1 DHCP Snooping Overview

Use DHCP snooping to filter unauthorized DHCP packets on the network and to build the binding table dynamically. This can prevent clients from getting IP addresses from unauthorized DHCP servers.

##### 26.1.1.1 Trusted vs. Untrusted Ports

Every port is either a trusted port or an untrusted port for DHCP snooping. This setting is independent of the trusted/untrusted setting for ARP inspection. You can also specify the maximum number for DHCP packets that each port (trusted or untrusted) can receive each second.

Trusted ports are connected to DHCP servers or other switches. The Switch discards DHCP packets from trusted ports only if the rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high. The Switch learns dynamic bindings from trusted ports.

Note: The Switch will drop all DHCP requests if you enable DHCP snooping and there are no trusted ports.

Untrusted ports are connected to subscribers. The Switch discards DHCP packets from untrusted ports in the following situations:

- The packet is a DHCP server packet (for example, OFFER, ACK, or NACK).
- The source MAC address and source IP address in the packet do not match any of the current bindings.
- The packet is a RELEASE or DECLINE packet, and the source MAC address and source port do not match any of the current bindings.
- The rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high.

### 26.1.1.2 DHCP Snooping Database

The Switch stores the binding table in volatile memory. If the Switch restarts, it loads static bindings from permanent memory but loses the dynamic bindings, in which case the devices in the network have to send DHCP requests again. As a result, it is recommended you configure the DHCP snooping database.

The DHCP snooping database maintains the dynamic bindings for DHCP snooping and ARP inspection in a file on an external TFTP server. If you set up the DHCP snooping database, the Switch can reload the dynamic bindings from the DHCP snooping database after the Switch restarts.

You can configure the name and location of the file on the external TFTP server. The file has the following format:

**Figure 115** DHCP Snooping Database File Format

```
<initial-checksum>
TYPE DHCP-SNOOPING
VERSION 1
BEGIN
<binding-1> <checksum-1>
<binding-2> <checksum-1-2>
...
...
<binding-n> <checksum-1-2-..-n>
END
```

The <initial-checksum> helps distinguish between the bindings in the latest update and the bindings from previous updates. Each binding consists of 72 bytes, a space, and another checksum that is used to validate the binding when it is read. If the calculated checksum is not equal to the checksum in the file, that binding and all others after it are ignored.

### 26.1.1.3 DHCP Relay Option 82 Information

The Switch can add information to DHCP requests that it does not discard. This provides the DHCP server more information about the source of the requests. The Switch can add the following information:

- Slot ID (1 byte), port ID (1 byte), and source VLAN ID (2 bytes)
- System name (up to 32 bytes)

This information is stored in an Agent Information field in the option 82 field of the DHCP headers of client DHCP request frames. See [Chapter 37 on page 278](#) for more information about DHCP relay option 82.

When the DHCP server responds, the Switch removes the information in the Agent Information field before forwarding the response to the original source.

You can configure this setting for each source VLAN. This setting is independent of the DHCP relay settings ([Chapter 37 on page 278](#)).

### 26.1.1.4 Configuring DHCP Snooping

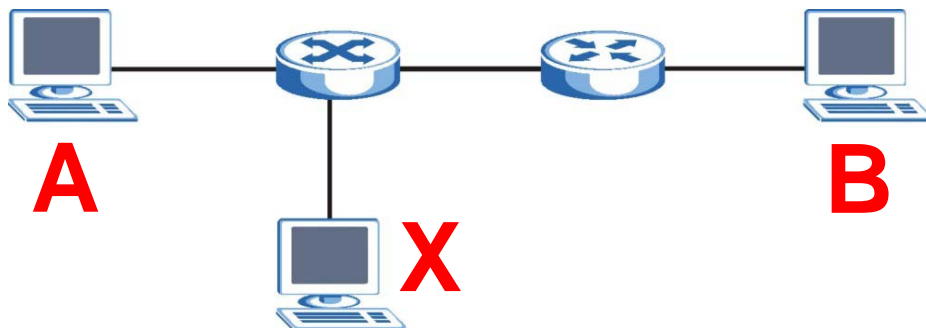
Follow these steps to configure DHCP snooping on the Switch.

- 1 Enable DHCP snooping on the Switch.
- 2 Enable DHCP snooping on each VLAN, and configure DHCP relay option 82.
- 3 Configure trusted and untrusted ports, and specify the maximum number of DHCP packets that each port can receive per second.
- 4 Configure static bindings.

## 26.1.2 ARP Inspection Overview

Use ARP inspection to filter unauthorized ARP packets on the network. This can prevent many kinds of man-in-the-middle attacks, such as the one in the following example.

**Figure 116** Example: Man-in-the-middle Attack



In this example, computer **B** tries to establish a connection with computer **A**. Computer **X** is in the same broadcast domain as computer **A** and intercepts the ARP request for computer **A**. Then, computer **X** does the following things:

- It pretends to be computer **A** and responds to computer **B**.
- It pretends to be computer **B** and sends a message to computer **A**.

As a result, all the communication between computer **A** and computer **B** passes through computer **X**. Computer **X** can read and alter the information passed between them.

### 26.1.2.1 ARP Inspection and MAC Address Filters

When the Switch identifies an unauthorized ARP packet, it automatically creates a MAC address filter to block traffic from the source MAC address and source VLAN ID of the unauthorized ARP packet. You can configure how long the MAC address filter remains in the Switch.

These MAC address filters are different than regular MAC address filters ([Chapter 12 on page 122](#)).

- They are stored only in volatile memory.
- They do not use the same space in memory that regular MAC address filters use.
- They appear only in the **ARP Inspection** screens and commands, not in the **MAC Address Filter** screens and commands.

### 26.1.2.2 Trusted vs. Untrusted Ports

Every port is either a trusted port or an untrusted port for ARP inspection. This setting is independent of the trusted/untrusted setting for DHCP snooping. You can also specify the maximum rate at which the Switch receives ARP packets on untrusted ports.

The Switch does not discard ARP packets on trusted ports for any reason.

The Switch discards ARP packets on untrusted ports in the following situations:

- The sender's information in the ARP packet does not match any of the current bindings.
- The rate at which ARP packets arrive is too high.

### 26.1.2.3 Syslog

The Switch can send syslog messages to the specified syslog server ([Chapter 41 on page 318](#)) when it forwards or discards ARP packets. The Switch can consolidate log messages and send log messages in batches to make this mechanism more efficient.

### 26.1.2.4 Configuring ARP Inspection

Follow these steps to configure ARP inspection on the Switch.

- 1 Configure DHCP snooping. See [Section 26.1.1.4 on page 217](#).

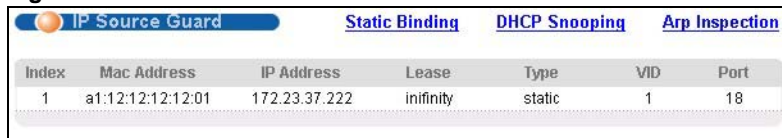
Note: It is recommended you enable DHCP snooping at least one day before you enable ARP inspection so that the Switch has enough time to build the binding table.

- 2 Enable ARP inspection on each VLAN.
- 3 Configure trusted and untrusted ports, and specify the maximum number of ARP packets that each port can receive per second.

## 26.2 IP Source Guard

Use this screen to look at the current bindings for DHCP snooping and ARP inspection. Bindings are used by DHCP snooping and ARP inspection to distinguish between authorized and unauthorized packets in the network. The Switch learns the bindings by snooping DHCP packets (dynamic bindings) and from information provided manually by administrators (static bindings). To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard**.

**Figure 117** IP Source Guard



Index	Mac Address	IP Address	Lease	Type	VID	Port
1	a1:12:12:12:12:01	172.23.37.222	infinity	static	1	18

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 81** IP Source Guard

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each binding.
MAC Address	This field displays the source MAC address in the binding.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address assigned to the MAC address in the binding.
Lease	This field displays how many days, hours, minutes, and seconds the binding is valid; for example, <b>2d3h4m5s</b> means the binding is still valid for 2 days, 3 hours, 4 minutes and 5 seconds. This field displays <b>infinity</b> if the binding is always valid (for example, a static binding).
Type	This field displays how the Switch learned the binding.  <b>static:</b> This binding was learned from information provided manually by an administrator. <b>dhcp-snooping:</b> This binding was learned by snooping DHCP packets.
VID	This field displays the source VLAN ID in the binding.
Port	This field displays the port number in the binding. If this field is blank, the binding applies to all ports.

## 26.3 IP Source Guard Static Binding

Use this screen to manage static bindings for DHCP snooping and ARP inspection. Static bindings are uniquely identified by the MAC address and VLAN ID. Each MAC address and VLAN ID can only be in one static binding. If you try to create a static binding with the same MAC address and VLAN

ID as an existing static binding, the new static binding replaces the original one. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > Static Binding**.

**Figure 118** IP Source Guard Static Binding

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 82** IP Source Guard Static Binding


LABEL	DESCRIPTION
MAC Address	Enter the source MAC address in the binding.
IP Address	Enter the IP address assigned to the MAC address in the binding.
VLAN	Enter the source VLAN ID in the binding.
Port	Specify the port(s) in the binding. If this binding has one port, select the first radio button and enter the port number in the field to the right. If this binding applies to all ports, select <b>Any</b> .
Add	Click this to create the specified static binding or to update an existing one.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values above based on the last selected static binding or, if not applicable, to clear the fields above.
Clear	Click this to clear the fields above.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each binding.
MAC Address	This field displays the source MAC address in the binding.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address assigned to the MAC address in the binding.
Lease	This field displays how long the binding is valid.
Type	This field displays how the Switch learned the binding. <b>static:</b> This binding was learned from information provided manually by an administrator.
VLAN	This field displays the source VLAN ID in the binding.
Port	This field displays the port number in the binding. If this field is blank, the binding applies to all ports.
Delete	Select this, and click <b>Delete</b> to remove the specified entry.
Cancel	Click this to clear the <b>Delete</b> check boxes above.



## 26.4 DHCP Snooping

Use this screen to look at various statistics about the DHCP snooping database. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping**.

**Figure 119** DHCP Snooping


DHCP Snooping

[Configure](#)

[IPSG](#)

### Database Status

Description	Status
Agent URL	
Write delay timer	300 seconds
Abort timer	300 seconds
Agent running	None
Delay timer expiry	Not Running
Abort timer expiry	Not Running
Last succeeded time	None
Last failed time	None
Last failed reason	No failure recorded
	Times
Total attempts	0
Startup failures	0
Successful transfers	0
Failed transfers	0
Successful reads	0
Failed reads	0
Successful writes	0
Failed writes	0

### Database detail

Description	Status
First successful access	None
Last ignored bindings counters	
Binding collisions	0
Invalid interfaces	0
Parse failures	0
Expired leases	0
Unsupported vlans	0
Last ignored time	None
Total ignored bindings counters	
Binding collisions	0
Invalid interfaces	0
Parse failures	0
Expired leases	0
Unsupported vlans	0

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 83** DHCP Snooping

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Database Status	
	This section displays the current settings for the DHCP snooping database. You can configure them in the <b>DHCP Snooping Configure</b> screen. See <a href="#">Section 26.5 on page 223</a> .
Agent URL	This field displays the location of the DHCP snooping database.

**Table 83** DHCP Snooping (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Write delay timer	This field displays how long (in seconds) the Switch tries to complete a specific update in the DHCP snooping database before it gives up.
Abort timer	This field displays how long (in seconds) the Switch waits to update the DHCP snooping database after the current bindings change.
	This section displays information about the current update and the next update of the DHCP snooping database.
Agent running	<p>This field displays the status of the current update or access of the DHCP snooping database.</p> <p><b>none:</b> The Switch is not accessing the DHCP snooping database.</p> <p><b>read:</b> The Switch is loading dynamic bindings from the DHCP snooping database.</p> <p><b>write:</b> The Switch is updating the DHCP snooping database.</p>
Delay timer expiry	This field displays how much longer (in seconds) the Switch tries to complete the current update before it gives up. It displays <b>Not Running</b> if the Switch is not updating the DHCP snooping database right now.
Abort timer expiry	This field displays when (in seconds) the Switch is going to update the DHCP snooping database again. It displays <b>Not Running</b> if the current bindings have not changed since the last update.
	This section displays information about the last time the Switch updated the DHCP snooping database.
Last succeeded time	This field displays the last time the Switch updated the DHCP snooping database successfully.
Last failed time	This field displays the last time the Switch updated the DHCP snooping database unsuccessfully.
Last failed reason	This field displays the reason the Switch updated the DHCP snooping database unsuccessfully.
	This section displays historical information about the number of times the Switch successfully or unsuccessfully read or updated the DHCP snooping database.
Total attempts	This field displays the number of times the Switch has tried to access the DHCP snooping database for any reason.
Startup failures	This field displays the number of times the Switch could not create or read the DHCP snooping database when the Switch started up or a new URL is configured for the DHCP snooping database.
Successful transfers	This field displays the number of times the Switch read bindings from or updated the bindings in the DHCP snooping database successfully.
Failed transfers	This field displays the number of times the Switch was unable to read bindings from or update the bindings in the DHCP snooping database.
Successful reads	This field displays the number of times the Switch read bindings from the DHCP snooping database successfully.
Failed reads	This field displays the number of times the Switch was unable to read bindings from the DHCP snooping database.
Successful writes	This field displays the number of times the Switch updated the bindings in the DHCP snooping database successfully.
Failed writes	This field displays the number of times the Switch was unable to update the bindings in the DHCP snooping database.
Database detail	
First successful access	This field displays the first time the Switch accessed the DHCP snooping database for any reason.

**Table 83** DHCP Snooping (continued)

<b>LABEL</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>
Last ignored bindings counters	This section displays the number of times and the reasons the Switch ignored bindings the last time it read bindings from the DHCP binding database. You can clear these counters by restarting the Switch or using CLI commands. See the Ethernet Switch CLI Reference Guide.
Binding collisions	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the Switch already had a binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID.
Invalid interfaces	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the port number was a trusted interface or does not exist anymore.
Parse failures	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the Switch was unable to understand the binding in the DHCP binding database.
Expired leases	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the lease time had already expired.
Unsupported vlans	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch ignored because the VLAN ID does not exist anymore.
Last ignored time	This field displays the last time the Switch ignored any bindings for any reason from the DHCP binding database.
Total ignored bindings counters	This section displays the reasons the Switch has ignored bindings any time it read bindings from the DHCP binding database. You can clear these counters by restarting the Switch or using CLI commands. See the Ethernet Switch CLI Reference Guide.
Binding collisions	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the Switch already had a binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID.
Invalid interfaces	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the port number was a trusted interface or does not exist anymore.
Parse failures	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the Switch was unable to understand the binding in the DHCP binding database.
Expired leases	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the lease time had already expired.
Unsupported vlans	This field displays the number of bindings the Switch has ignored because the VLAN ID does not exist anymore.

## 26.5 DHCP Snooping Configure

Use this screen to enable DHCP snooping on the Switch (not on specific VLAN), specify the VLAN where the default DHCP server is located, and configure the DHCP snooping database. The DHCP snooping database stores the current bindings on a secure, external TFTP server so that they are

still available after a restart. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure**.

**Figure 120** DHCP Snooping Configure

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 84** DHCP Snooping Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to enable DHCP snooping on the Switch. You still have to enable DHCP snooping on specific VLAN and specify trusted ports.  Note: The Switch will drop all DHCP requests if you enable DHCP snooping and there are no trusted ports.
DHCP Vlan	Select a VLAN ID if you want the Switch to forward DHCP packets to DHCP servers on a specific VLAN.  Note: You have to enable DHCP snooping on the DHCP VLAN too.  You can enable <b>Option82</b> in the <b>DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure</b> screen ( <a href="#">Section 26.5.2 on page 226</a> ) to help the DHCP servers distinguish between DHCP requests from different VLAN.  Select <b>Disable</b> if you do not want the Switch to forward DHCP packets to a specific VLAN.
Database	If <b>Timeout interval</b> is greater than <b>Write delay interval</b> , it is possible that the next update is scheduled to occur before the current update has finished successfully or timed out. In this case, the Switch waits to start the next update until it completes the current one.
Agent URL	Enter the location of the DHCP snooping database. The location should be expressed like this: <b>tftp://{domain name or IP address}/directory, if applicable/file name</b> ; for example, <b>tftp://192.168.10.1/database.txt</b> .
Timeout interval	Enter how long (10-65535 seconds) the Switch tries to complete a specific update in the DHCP snooping database before it gives up.
Write delay interval	Enter how long (10-65535 seconds) the Switch waits to update the DHCP snooping database the first time the current bindings change after an update. Once the next update is scheduled, additional changes in current bindings are automatically included in the next update.

**Table 84** DHCP Snooping Configure (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Renew DHCP Snooping URL	Enter the location of a DHCP snooping database, and click <b>Renew</b> if you want the Switch to load it. You can use this to load dynamic bindings from a different DHCP snooping database than the one specified in <b>Agent URL</b> .  When the Switch loads dynamic bindings from a DHCP snooping database, it does not discard the current dynamic bindings first. If there is a conflict, the Switch keeps the dynamic binding in volatile memory and updates the <b>Binding collisions</b> counter in the <b>DHCP Snooping</b> screen ( <a href="#">Section 26.4 on page 221</a> ).
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

## 26.5.1 DHCP Snooping Port Configure

Use this screen to specify whether ports are trusted or untrusted ports for DHCP snooping.

Note: The Switch will drop all DHCP requests if you enable DHCP snooping and there are no trusted ports.

You can also specify the maximum number for DHCP packets that each port (trusted or untrusted) can receive each second. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > Port**.

**Figure 121** DHCP Snooping Port Configure

Port	Server Trusted state	Rate (pps)
*	Untrusted ▼	
1	Untrusted ▼	0
2	Untrusted ▼	0
3	Untrusted ▼	0
4	Untrusted ▼	0
5	Untrusted ▼	0
6	Untrusted ▼	0
7	Untrusted ▼	0
8	Untrusted ▼	0

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 85** DHCP Snooping Port Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number. If you configure the * port, the settings are applied to all of the ports.
Server Trusted state	<p>Select whether this port is a trusted port (<b>Trusted</b>) or an untrusted port (<b>Untrusted</b>).</p> <p>Trusted ports are connected to DHCP servers or other switches, and the Switch discards DHCP packets from trusted ports only if the rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high.</p> <p>Untrusted ports are connected to subscribers, and the Switch discards DHCP packets from untrusted ports in the following situations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The packet is a DHCP server packet (for example, OFFER, ACK, or NACK).</li> <li>The source MAC address and source IP address in the packet do not match any of the current bindings.</li> <li>The packet is a RELEASE or DECLINE packet, and the source MAC address and source port do not match any of the current bindings.</li> <li>The rate at which DHCP packets arrive is too high.</li> </ul>
Rate (pps)	Specify the maximum number for DHCP packets (1-2048) that the Switch receives from each port each second. The Switch discards any additional DHCP packets. Enter 0 to disable this limit, which is recommended for trusted ports.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

## 26.5.2 DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure

Use this screen to enable DHCP snooping on each VLAN and to specify whether or not the Switch adds DHCP relay agent option 82 information ([Chapter 37 on page 278](#)) to DHCP requests that the Switch relays to a DHCP server for each VLAN. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > DHCP Snooping > Configure > VLAN**.

**Figure 122** DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 86** DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Show VLAN	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to manage in the section below.
Start VID	Enter the lowest VLAN ID you want to manage in the section below.

**Table 86** DHCP Snooping VLAN Configure (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
End VID	Enter the highest VLAN ID you want to manage in the section below.
Apply	Click this to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above. If you configure the * VLAN, the settings are applied to all VLANs.
Enabled	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable DHCP snooping on the VLAN. You still have to enable DHCP snooping on the Switch and specify trusted ports.  Note: The Switch will drop all DHCP requests if you enable DHCP snooping and there are no trusted ports.
Option82	Select this to have the Switch add the slot number, port number and VLAN ID to DHCP requests that it broadcasts to the DHCP VLAN, if specified, or VLAN. You can specify the DHCP VLAN in the <b>DHCP Snooping Configure</b> screen. See <a href="#">Section 26.5 on page 223</a> .
Information	Select this to have the Switch add the system name to DHCP requests that it broadcasts to the DHCP VLAN, if specified, or VLAN. You can configure the system name in the <b>General Setup Configure</b> screen. See <a href="#">Chapter 8 on page 84</a> . You can specify the DHCP VLAN in the <b>DHCP Snooping Configure</b> screen. See <a href="#">Section 26.5 on page 223</a> .
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

## 26.6 ARP Inspection Status

Use this screen to look at the current list of MAC address filters that were created because the Switch identified an unauthorized ARP packet. When the Switch identifies an unauthorized ARP packet, it automatically creates a MAC address filter to block traffic from the source MAC address and source VLAN ID of the unauthorized ARP packet. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection**.

**Figure 123** ARP Inspection Status

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 87** ARP Inspection Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Total number of filters	This field displays the current number of MAC address filters that were created because the Switch identified unauthorized ARP packets.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each MAC address filter.
MAC Address	This field displays the source MAC address in the MAC address filter.
VID	This field displays the source VLAN ID in the MAC address filter.
Port	This field displays the source port of the discarded ARP packet.

**Table 87** ARP Inspection Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Expiry (sec)	This field displays how long (in seconds) the MAC address filter remains in the Switch. You can also delete the record manually ( <b>Delete</b> ).
Reason	This field displays the reason the ARP packet was discarded.  <b>MAC + VLAN:</b> The MAC address and VLAN ID were not in the binding table.  <b>IP:</b> The MAC address and VLAN ID were in the binding table, but the IP address was not valid.  <b>Port:</b> The MAC address, VLAN ID, and IP address were in the binding table, but the port number was not valid.
Delete	Select this and click <b>Delete</b> to remove the specified entry.
Delete	Click this to remove the selected entries.
Cancel	Click this to clear the <b>Delete</b> check boxes above.

## 26.6.1 ARP Inspection VLAN Status

Use this screen to look at various statistics about ARP packets in each VLAN. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > VLAN Status**.

**Figure 124** ARP Inspection VLAN Status

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 88** ARP Inspection VLAN Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Show VLAN range	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to look at in the section below.
Enabled VLAN	Select this to look at all the VLANs on which ARP inspection is enabled in the section below.
Selected VLAN	Select this to look at all the VLANs in a specific range in the section below. Then, enter the lowest VLAN ID ( <b>Start VID</b> ) and the highest VLAN ID ( <b>End VID</b> ) you want to look at.
Apply	Click this to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above.
Received	This field displays the total number of ARP packets received from the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.
Request	This field displays the total number of ARP Request packets received from the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.



**Table 88** ARP Inspection VLAN Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Reply	This field displays the total number of ARP Reply packets received from the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.
Forwarded	This field displays the total number of ARP packets the Switch forwarded for the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.
Dropped	This field displays the total number of ARP packets the Switch discarded for the VLAN since the Switch last restarted.

## 26.6.2 ARP Inspection Log Status

Use this screen to look at log messages that were generated by ARP packets and that have not been sent to the syslog server yet. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Log Status**.

**Figure 125** ARP Inspection Log Status

ARP Inspection Log Status [Status](#)

Clearing log status table

Total number of logs = 0

Index	Port	VID	Sender Mac	Sender IP	Num Pkts	Reason	Time
-------	------	-----	------------	-----------	----------	--------	------

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 89** ARP Inspection Log Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clearing log status table	Click <b>Apply</b> to remove all the log messages that were generated by ARP packets and that have not been sent to the syslog server yet.
Total number of logs	This field displays the number of log messages that were generated by ARP packets and that have not been sent to the syslog server yet. If one or more log messages are dropped due to unavailable buffer, there is an entry called <b>overflow</b> with the current number of dropped log messages.
Index	This field displays a sequential number for each log message.
Port	This field displays the source port of the ARP packet.
VID	This field displays the source VLAN ID of the ARP packet.
Sender Mac	This field displays the source MAC address of the ARP packet.
Sender IP	This field displays the source IP address of the ARP packet.
Num Pkts	This field displays the number of ARP packets that were consolidated into this log message. The Switch consolidates identical log messages generated by ARP packets in the log consolidation interval into one log message. You can configure this interval in the <b>ARP Inspection Configure</b> screen. See <a href="#">Section 26.7 on page 230</a> .

**Table 89** ARP Inspection Log Status (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Reason	<p>This field displays the reason the log message was generated.</p> <p><b>dhcp deny:</b> An ARP packet was discarded because it violated a dynamic binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID.</p> <p><b>static deny:</b> An ARP packet was discarded because it violated a static binding with the same MAC address and VLAN ID.</p> <p><b>deny:</b> An ARP packet was discarded because there were no bindings with the same MAC address and VLAN ID.</p> <p><b>dhcp permit:</b> An ARP packet was forwarded because it matched a dynamic binding.</p> <p><b>static permit:</b> An ARP packet was forwarded because it matched a static binding.</p> <p>In the <b>ARP Inspection VLAN Configure</b> screen, you can configure the Switch to generate log messages when ARP packets are discarded or forwarded based on the VLAN ID of the ARP packet. See <a href="#">Section 26.7.2 on page 233</a>.</p>
Time	This field displays when the log message was generated.

## 26.7 ARP Inspection Configure

Use this screen to enable ARP inspection on the Switch. You can also configure the length of time the Switch stores records of discarded ARP packets and global settings for the ARP inspection log. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure**.

**Figure 126** ARP Inspection Configure

**ARP Inspection Configure**    [Port](#)    [VLAN](#)    [ARP Inspection](#)

Active ☐

**Filter Aging Time**

Filter aging time  seconds

**Log Profile**

Log buffer size  entries

Syslog rate  entries

Log interval  seconds

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 90** ARP Inspection Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to enable ARP inspection on the Switch. You still have to enable ARP inspection on specific VLAN and specify trusted ports.
Filter Aging Time	
Filter aging time	This setting has no effect on existing MAC address filters.  Enter how long (1-2147483647 seconds) the MAC address filter remains in the Switch after the Switch identifies an unauthorized ARP packet. The Switch automatically deletes the MAC address filter afterwards. Type 0 if you want the MAC address filter to be permanent.
Log Profile	
Log buffer size	Enter the maximum number (1-1024) of log messages that were generated by ARP packets and have not been sent to the syslog server yet. Make sure this number is appropriate for the specified <b>Syslog rate</b> and <b>Log interval</b> .  If the number of log messages in the Switch exceeds this number, the Switch stops recording log messages and simply starts counting the number of entries that were dropped due to unavailable buffer. Click <b>Clearing log status table</b> in the <b>ARP Inspection Log Status</b> screen to clear the log and reset this counter. See <a href="#">Section 26.6.2 on page 229</a> .
Syslog rate	Type the maximum number of syslog messages the Switch can send to the syslog server in one batch. This number is expressed as a rate because the batch frequency is determined by the <b>Log Interval</b> . You must configure the syslog server ( <a href="#">Chapter 41 on page 318</a> ) to use this. Enter 0 if you do not want the Switch to send log messages generated by ARP packets to the syslog server.  The relationship between <b>Syslog rate</b> and <b>Log interval</b> is illustrated in the following examples: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4 invalid ARP packets per second, <b>Syslog rate</b> is 5, <b>Log interval</b> is 1: the Switch sends 4 syslog messages every second.</li> <li>6 invalid ARP packets per second, <b>Syslog rate</b> is 5, <b>Log interval</b> is 2: the Switch sends 5 syslog messages every 2 seconds.</li> </ul>
Log interval	Type how often (1-86400 seconds) the Switch sends a batch of syslog messages to the syslog server. Enter 0 if you want the Switch to send syslog messages immediately. See <b>Syslog rate</b> for an example of the relationship between <b>Syslog rate</b> and <b>Log interval</b> .
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

## 26.7.1 ARP Inspection Port Configure

Use this screen to specify whether ports are trusted or untrusted ports for ARP inspection. You can also specify the maximum rate at which the Switch receives ARP packets on each untrusted port. To

open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure > Port**.

**Figure 127** ARP Inspection Port Configure

Port	Trusted State	Limit	
		Rate (pps)	Burst interval (seconds)
*	Untrusted		
1	Untrusted	15	1
2	Untrusted	15	1
3	Untrusted	15	1
4	Untrusted	15	1
5	Untrusted	15	1
6	Untrusted	15	1
7	Untrusted	15	1
8	Untrusted	15	1

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 91** ARP Inspection Port Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number. If you configure the * port, the settings are applied to all of the ports.
Trusted State	<p>Select whether this port is a trusted port (<b>Trusted</b>) or an untrusted port (<b>Untrusted</b>).</p> <p>The Switch does not discard ARP packets on trusted ports for any reason.</p> <p>The Switch discards ARP packets on untrusted ports in the following situations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The sender's information in the ARP packet does not match any of the current bindings.</li> <li>The rate at which ARP packets arrive is too high. You can specify the maximum rate at which ARP packets can arrive on untrusted ports.</li> </ul>
Limit	Rate and Burst Interval settings have no effect on trusted ports.
Rate (pps)	Specify the maximum rate (1-2048 packets per second) at which the Switch receives ARP packets from each port. The Switch discards any additional ARP packets. Enter 0 to disable this limit.
Burst interval (seconds)	<p>The burst interval is the length of time over which the rate of ARP packets is monitored for each port. For example, if the Rate is 15 pps and the burst interval is 1 second, then the Switch accepts a maximum of 15 ARP packets in every one-second interval. If the burst interval is 5 seconds, then the Switch accepts a maximum of 75 ARP packets in every five-second interval.</p> <p>Enter the length (1-15 seconds) of the burst interval.</p>
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

## 26.7.2 ARP Inspection VLAN Configure

Use this screen to enable ARP inspection on each VLAN and to specify when the Switch generates log messages for receiving ARP packets from each VLAN. To open this screen, click **Advanced Application > IP Source Guard > ARP Inspection > Configure > VLAN**.

**Figure 128** ARP Inspection VLAN Configure

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 92** ARP Inspection VLAN Configure

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VLAN	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to manage in the section below.
Start VID	Enter the lowest VLAN ID you want to manage in the section below.
End VID	Enter the highest VLAN ID you want to manage in the section below.
Apply	Click this to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above. If you configure the * VLAN, the settings are applied to all VLANs.
Enabled	Select <b>Yes</b> to enable ARP inspection on the VLAN. Select <b>No</b> to disable ARP inspection on the VLAN.
Log	Specify when the Switch generates log messages for receiving ARP packets from the VLAN. <b>None:</b> The Switch does not generate any log messages when it receives an ARP packet from the VLAN. <b>Deny:</b> The Switch generates log messages when it discards an ARP packet from the VLAN. <b>Permit:</b> The Switch generates log messages when it forwards an ARP packet from the VLAN. <b>All:</b> The Switch generates log messages every time it receives an ARP packet from the VLAN.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click this to reset the values in this screen to their last-saved values.

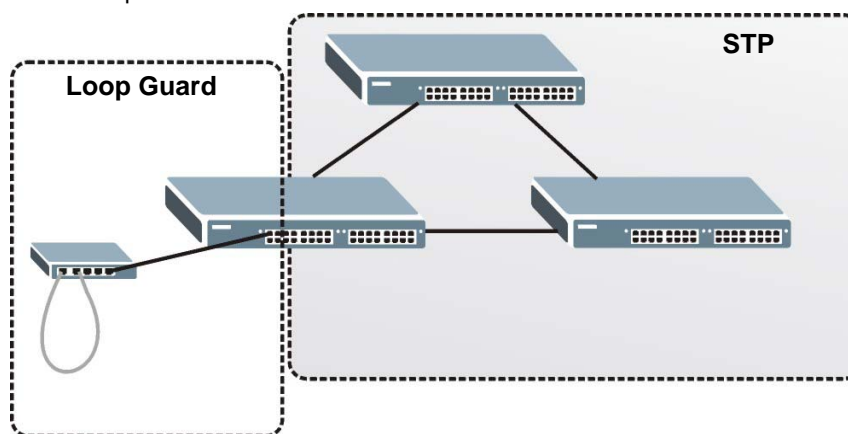
## Loop Guard

This chapter shows you how to configure the Switch to guard against loops on the edge of your network.

### 27.1 Loop Guard Overview

Loop guard allows you to configure the Switch to shut down a port if it detects that packets sent out on that port loop back to the Switch. While you can use Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) to prevent loops in the core of your network. STP cannot prevent loops that occur on the edge of your network.

**Figure 129** Loop Guard vs STP



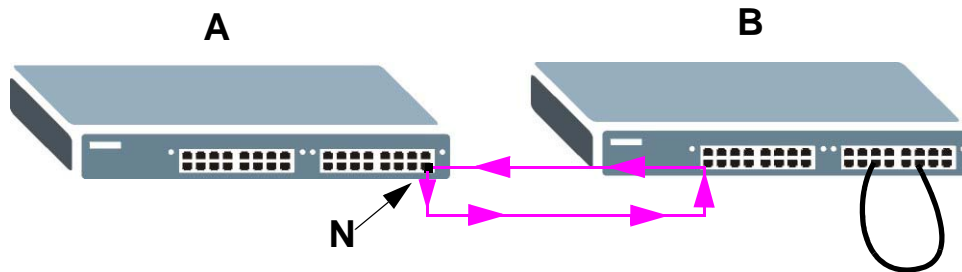
Loop guard is designed to handle loop problems on the edge of your network. This can occur when a port is connected to a Switch that is in a loop state. Loop state occurs as a result of human error. It happens when two ports on a switch are connected with the same cable. When a switch in loop state sends out broadcast messages the messages loop back to the switch and are re-broadcast again and again causing a broadcast storm.

If a switch (not in loop state) connects to a switch in loop state, then it will be affected by the switch in loop state in the following way:

- It will receive broadcast messages sent out from the switch in loop state.
- It will receive its own broadcast messages that it sends out as they loop back. It will then re-broadcast those messages again.

The following figure shows port **N** on switch **A** connected to switch **B**. Switch **B** is in loop state. When broadcast or multicast packets leave port **N** and reach switch **B**, they are sent back to port **N** on **A** as they are rebroadcast from **B**.

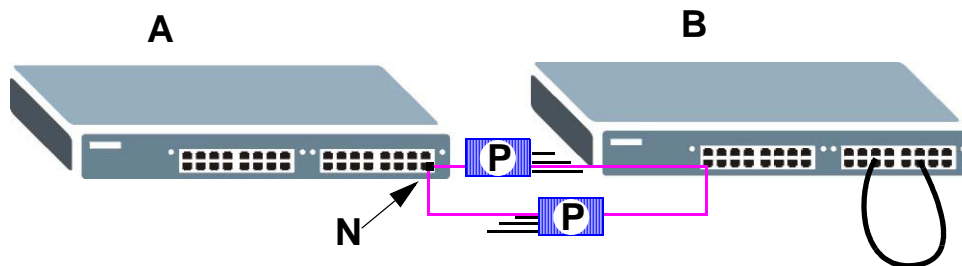
**Figure 130** Switch in Loop State



The loop guard feature checks to see if a loop guard enabled port is connected to a switch in loop state. This is accomplished by periodically sending a probe packet and seeing if the packet returns on the same port. If this is the case, the Switch will shut down the port connected to the switch in loop state.

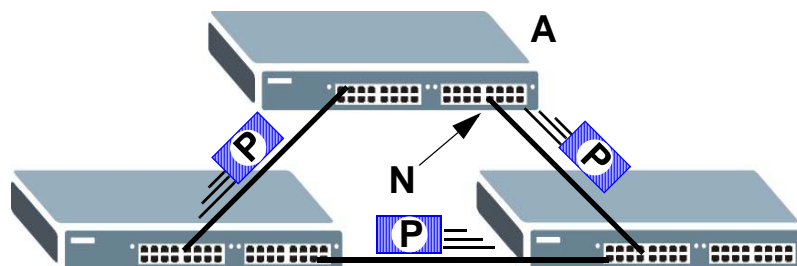
The following figure shows a loop guard enabled port **N** on switch **A** sending a probe packet **P** to switch **B**. Since switch **B** is in loop state, the probe packet **P** returns to port **N** on **A**. The Switch then shuts down port **N** to ensure that the rest of the network is not affected by the switch in loop state.

**Figure 131** Loop Guard - Probe Packet



The Switch also shuts down port **N** if the probe packet returns to switch **A** on any other port. In other words loop guard also protects against standard network loops. The following figure illustrates three switches forming a loop. A sample path of the loop guard probe packet is also shown. In this example, the probe packet is sent from port **N** and returns on another port. As long as loop guard is enabled on port **N**. The Switch will shut down port **N** if it detects that the probe packet has returned to the Switch.

**Figure 132** Loop Guard - Network Loop



Note: After resolving the loop problem on your network you can re-activate the disabled port via the web configurator (see [Section 8.7 on page 93](#)) or via commands (see the Ethernet Switch CLI Reference Guide).

## 27.2 Loop Guard Setup

Click **Advanced Application > Loop Guard** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

Note: The loop guard feature can not be enabled on the ports that have Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP, MRSTP or MSTP) enabled.

**Figure 133** Advanced Application > Loop Guard

Port	Active
*	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 93** Advanced Application > Loop Guard

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable loop guard on the Switch.  The Switch generates syslog, internal log messages as well as SNMP traps when it shuts down a port via the loop guard feature.
Port	This field displays a port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.  Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to enable the loop guard feature on this port. The Switch sends probe packets from this port to check if the Switch it is connected to is in loop state. If the Switch that this port is connected is in loop state the Switch will shut down this port.  Clear this check box to disable the loop guard feature.



**Table 93** Advanced Application > Loop Guard (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## VLAN Mapping

This chapter shows you how to configure VLAN mapping on the Switch.

### 28.1 VLAN Mapping Overview

With VLAN mapping enabled, the Switch can map the VLAN ID and priority level of packets received from a private network to those used in the service provider's network.

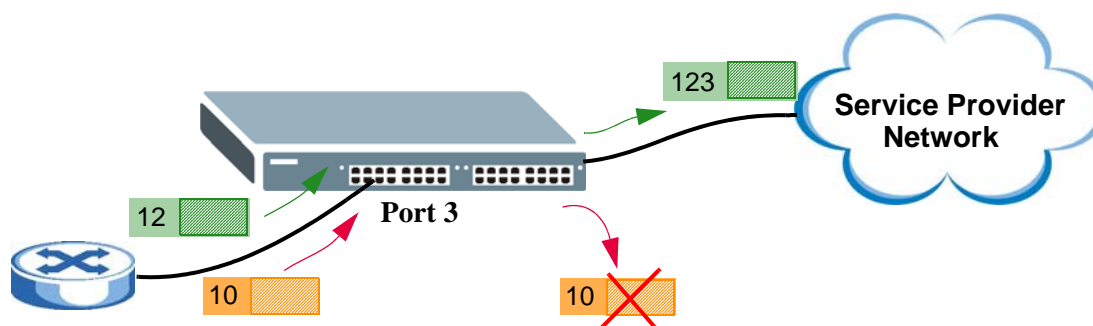
The Switch checks incoming traffic from the switch ports (non-management ports) against the VLAN mapping table first, the MAC learning table and then the VLAN table before forwarding them through the Gigabit uplink port. When VLAN mapping is enabled, the Switch discards the tagged packets that do not match an entry in the VLAN mapping table. If the incoming packets are untagged, the Switch adds a PVID based on the VLAN setting.

Note: You can not enable VLAN mapping and VLAN stacking at the same time.

#### 28.1.1 VLAN Mapping Example

In the following example figure, packets that carry VLAN ID 12 and are received on port 3 match a pre-configured VLAN mapping rule. The Switch translates the VLAN ID from 12 into 123 before forwarding the packets. Any packets carrying a VLAN tag other than 12 (such as 10) and received on port 3 will be dropped.

**Figure 134** VLAN mapping example



## 28.2 Enabling VLAN Mapping

Click **Advanced Application** and then **VLAN Mapping** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 135** VLAN Mapping

Port	Active
*	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 94** VLAN Mapping

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable VLAN mapping on the Switch.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.  Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this check box to enable the VLAN mapping feature on this port. Clear this check box to disable the VLAN mapping feature.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 28.3 Configuring VLAN Mapping

Click the **VLAN Mapping Configure** link in the **VLAN Mapping** screen to display the screen as shown. Use this screen to enable and edit the VLAN mapping rule(s).

**Figure 136** VLAN Mapping Configuration

The screenshot shows the 'VLAN Mapping Configure' interface. It includes a header with a logo and the title 'VLAN Mapping Configure'. On the right, there is a link labeled 'VLAN Mapping'. The main area contains a configuration form with the following fields: 'Active' (a checkbox), 'Name' (a text input field), 'Port' (a text input field), 'VID' (a text input field), 'Translated VID' (a text input field), and 'Priority' (a dropdown menu). Below the form are two buttons: 'Add' and 'Cancel'. At the bottom of the screen, there is a table with the following columns: 'Index', 'Active', 'Name', 'Port', 'VID', 'Translated VID', 'Priority', and 'Delete'. Below the table are two buttons: 'Delete' and 'Cancel'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 95** VLAN Mapping Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Check this box to activate this rule.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Port	Type a port to be included in this rule.
VID	Enter a VLAN ID from 1 to 4094. This is the VLAN tag carried in the packets and will be translated into the VID you specified in the <b>Translated VID</b> field.
Translated VID	Enter a VLAN ID (from 1 to 4094) into which the customer VID carried in the packets will be translated.
Priority	Select a priority level (from 0 to 7). This is the priority level that replaces the customer priority level in the tagged packets or adds to the untagged packets.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to insert the entry in the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Index	This is the number of the VLAN mapping entry in the table.
Active	This shows whether this entry is activated or not.
Name	This is the descriptive name for this rule.
Port	This is the port number to which this rule is applied.
VID	This is the customer VLAN ID in the incoming packets.
Translated VID	This is the VLAN ID that replaces the customer VLAN ID in the tagged packets.
Priority	This is the priority level that replaces the customer priority level in the tagged packets.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the <b>Delete</b> column and then click the <b>Delete</b> button.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the <b>Delete</b> check boxes.



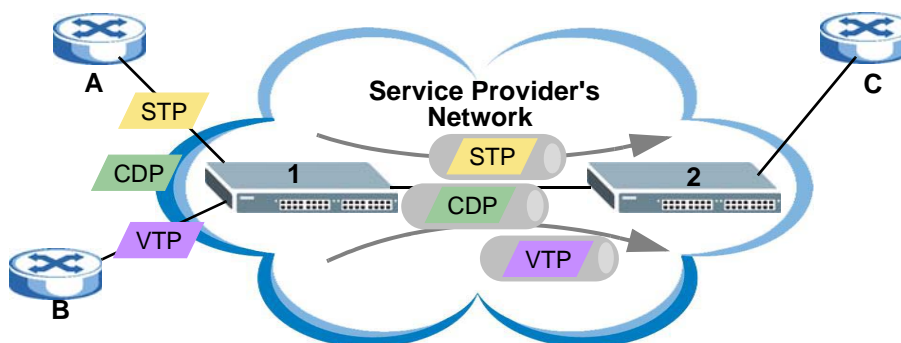
## Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling

This chapter shows you how to configure layer-2 protocol tunneling on the Switch.

### 29.1 Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling Overview

Layer-2 protocol tunneling (L2PT) is used on the service provider's edge devices. L2PT allows edge switches (**1** and **2** in the following figure) to tunnel layer-2 STP (Spanning Tree Protocol), CDP (Cisco Discovery Protocol) and VTP (VLAN Trunking Protocol) packets between customer switches (**A**, **B** and **C** in the following figure) connected through the service provider's network. The edge switch encapsulates layer-2 protocol packets with a specific MAC address before sending them across the service provider's network to other edge switches.

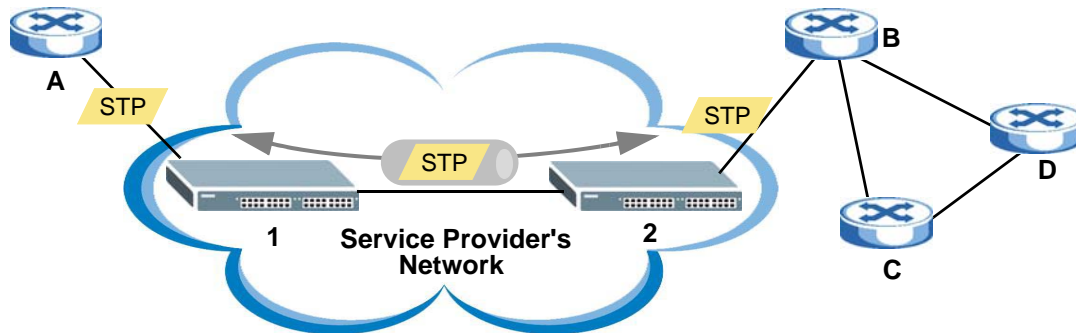
**Figure 137** Layer-2 Protocol Tunneling Network Scenario



In the following example, if you enable L2PT for STP, you can have switches **A**, **B**, **C** and **D** in the same spanning tree, even though switch **A** is not directly connected to switches **B**, **C** and **D**. Topology change information can be propagated throughout the service provider's network.

To emulate a point-to-point topology between two customer switches at different sites, such as **A** and **B**, you can enable protocol tunneling on edge switches **1** and **2** for PAgP (Port Aggregation Protocol), LACP or UDLD (UniDirectional Link Detection).

**Figure 138** L2PT Network Example



### 29.1.1 Layer-2 Protocol Tunneling Mode

Each port can have two layer-2 protocol tunneling modes, **Access** and **Tunnel**.

- The **Access** port is an ingress port on the service provider's edge device (**1** or **2** in [Figure 138 on page 243](#)) and connected to a customer switch (**A** or **B**). Incoming layer-2 protocol packets received on an access port are encapsulated and forwarded to the tunnel ports.
- The **Tunnel** port is an egress port at the edge of the service provider's network and connected to another service provider's switch. Incoming encapsulated layer-2 protocol packets received on a tunnel port are decapsulated and sent to an access port.

## 29.2 Configuring Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling

Click **Advanced Application > Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 139** Advanced Application > Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling

Port	CDP	STP	VTP	Point to Point			Mode
				PAGP	LACP	UDLD	
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access
13	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Access

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 96** Advanced Application > Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to enable layer-2 protocol tunneling on the Switch.
Destination MAC Address	Specify an MAC address with which the Switch uses to encapsulate the layer-2 protocol packets by replacing the destination MAC address in the packets.  Note: The MAC address can be either a unicast MAC address or multicast MAC address. If you use a unicast MAC address, make sure the MAC address does not exist in the address table of a switch on the service provider's network.  Note: All the edge switches in the service provider's network should be set to use the same MAC address for encapsulation.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.  Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
CDP	Select this option to have the Switch tunnel CDP (Cisco Discovery Protocol) packets so that other Cisco devices can be discovered through the service provider's network.



**Table 96** Advanced Application > Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
STP	Select this option to have the Switch tunnel STP (Spanning Tree Protocol) packets so that STP can run properly across the service provider's network and spanning trees can be set up based on bridge information from all (local and remote) networks.
VTP	Select this option to have the Switch tunnel VTP (VLAN Trunking Protocol) packets so that all customer switches can use consistent VLAN configuration through the service provider's network.
Point to Point	<p>The Switch supports PAgP (Port Aggregation Protocol), LACP (Link Aggregation Control Protocol) and UDLD (UniDirectional Link Detection) tunneling for a point-to-point topology.</p> <p>Both PAgP and UDLD are Cisco's proprietary data link layer protocols. PAgP is similar to LACP and used to set up a logical aggregation of Ethernet ports automatically. UDLD is to determine the link's physical status and detect a unidirectional link.</p>
PAGP	Select this option to have the Switch send PAgP packets to a peer to automatically negotiate and build a logical port aggregation.
LACP	Select this option to have the Switch send LACP packets to a peer to dynamically creates and manages trunk groups.
UDLD	Select this option to have the Switch send UDLD packets to a peer's port it connected to monitor the physical status of a link.
Mode	<p>Select <b>Access</b> to have the Switch encapsulate the incoming layer-2 protocol packets and forward them to the tunnel port(s). Select <b>Access</b> for ingress ports at the edge of the service provider's network.</p> <p><b>Note:</b> You can enable L2PT services for STP, LACP, VTP, CDP, UDLD, and PAGP on the access port(s) only.</p> <p>Select <b>Tunnel</b> for egress ports at the edge of the service provider's network. The Switch decapsulates the encapsulated layer-2 protocol packets received on a tunnel port by changing the destination MAC address to the original one, and then forward them to an access port. If the service(s) is not enabled on an access port, the protocol packets are dropped.</p>
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

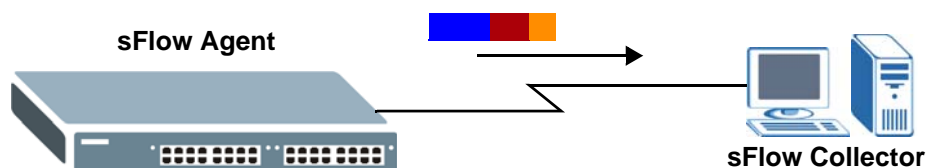
This chapter shows you how to configure sFlow to have the Switch monitor traffic in a network and send information to an sFlow collector for analysis.

## 30.1 sFlow Overview

sFlow (RFC 3176) is a standard technology for monitoring switched networks. An sFlow agent embedded on a switch or router gets sample data and packet statistics from traffic forwarded through its ports. The sFlow agent then creates sFlow data and sends it to an sFlow collector. The sFlow collector is a server that collects and analyzes sFlow datagram. An sFlow datagram includes packet header, input and output interface, sampling process parameters and forwarding information.

sFlow minimizes impact on CPU load of the Switch as it analyzes sample data only. sFlow can continuously monitor network traffic and create reports for network performance analysis and troubleshooting. For example, you can use it to know which IP address or which type of traffic caused network congestion.

**Figure 140** sFlow Application



## 30.2 sFlow Port Configuration

Click **Advanced Application** > **sFlow** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 141** Advanced Application > sFlow

Port	Active	Sample-rate	poll-interval	Collector Address
*	<input type="checkbox"/>			
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	120	
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	120	
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	120	
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	120	
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	120	
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	120	
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	120	
27	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	120	
28	<input type="checkbox"/>	32768	120	

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 97** Advanced Application > sFlow

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to enable the sFlow agent on the Switch.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.  <b>Note:</b> Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this to allow the Switch to monitor traffic on this port and generate and send sFlow datagram to the specified collector.
Sample-rate	Enter a number (N) from 256 to 65535. The Switch captures every one out of N packets for this port and creates sFlow datagram.
poll-interval	Specify a time interval (from 20 to 120 in seconds) the Switch waits before sending the sFlow datagram and packet counters for this port to the collector.

**Table 97** Advanced Application > sFlow (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Collector Address	Enter the IP address of the sFlow collector.  Note: You must have the sFlow collector already configured in the <b>sFlow &gt; Collector</b> screen. The sFlow collector does not need to be in the same subnet as the Switch, but it must be accessible from the Switch.  Note: Configure UDP port 6343 (the default) on a NAT router to allow port forwarding if the collector is behind a NAT router. Configure a firewall rule for UDP port 6343 (the default) to allow incoming traffic if the collector is behind a firewall.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

### 30.2.1 sFlow Collector Configuration

Click the **Collector** link in the **sFlow** screen to display the screen as shown. You can configure up to four sFlow collectors in this screen. You may want to configure more than one collector if the traffic load to be monitored is more than one collector can manage.

**Figure 142** Advanced Application > sFlow > Collector

The screenshot shows the 'sflow Collector' configuration interface. It includes input fields for 'Collector Address' (0.0.0.0) and 'UDP Port' (6343). Below these are 'Add', 'Cancel', and 'Clear' buttons. A table at the bottom lists configured collectors with columns for Index, Collector Address, UDP Port, and a Delete checkbox. The table currently has one entry with Index 1, Address 1.2.3.4, and Port 6343. 'Delete' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom of the table.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 98** Advanced Application > sFlow > Collector

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Collector Address	Enter the IP address of the sFlow collector.
UDP Port	Enter a UDP port number the Switch uses to send sFlow datagram to the collector. If you change the port here, make sure you change it on the collector, too. The default port is 6343.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to reset the fields to your previous configuration.

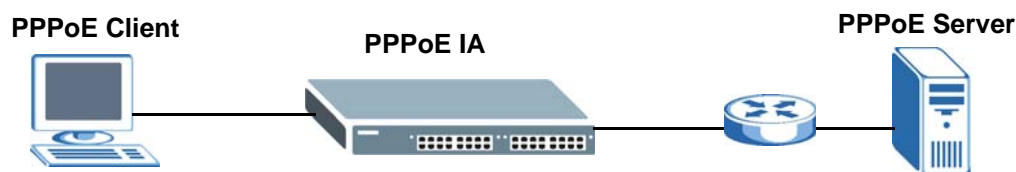
**Table 98** Advanced Application > sFlow > Collector (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to clear the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays the index number of this entry.
Collector Address	This field displays IP address of the sFlow collector.
UDP Port	This field displays port number the Switch uses to send sFlow datagram to the collector.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the <b>Delete</b> column and then click the <b>Delete</b> button.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

This chapter describes how the Switch gives a PPPoE termination server additional information that the server can use to identify and authenticate a PPPoE client.

### 31.1 PPPoE Intermediate Agent Overview

A PPPoE Intermediate Agent (PPPoE IA) is deployed between a PPPoE server and PPPoE clients. It helps the PPPoE server identify and authenticate clients by adding subscriber line specific information to PPPoE discovery packets from clients on a per-port or per-port-per-VLAN basis before forwarding them to the PPPoE server.



#### 31.1.1 PPPoE Intermediate Agent Tag Format

If the PPPoE Intermediate Agent is enabled, the Switch adds a vendor-specific tag to PADI (PPPoE Active Discovery Initialization) and PADR (PPPoE Active Discovery Request) packets from PPPoE clients. This tag is defined in RFC 2516 and has the following format for this feature.

**Table 99** PPPoE Intermediate Agent Vendor-specific Tag Format

Tag_Type	Tag_Len	Value	i1	i2
(0x0105)				

The Tag\_Type is 0x0105 for vendor-specific tags, as defined in RFC 2516. The Tag\_Len indicates the length of Value, i1 and i2. The Value is the 32-bit number 0x00000DE9, which stands for the “ADSL Forum” IANA entry. i1 and i2 are PPPoE intermediate agent sub-options, which contain additional information about the PPPoE client.

#### 31.1.2 Sub-Option Format

There are two types of sub-option: “Agent Circuit ID Sub-option” and “Agent Remote ID Sub-option”. They have the following formats.

**Table 100** PPPoE IA Circuit ID Sub-option Format: User-defined String

SubOpt	Length	Value
0x01 (1 byte)	N (1 byte)	String (63 bytes)

**Table 101** PPPoE IA Remote ID Sub-option Format

SubOpt	Length	Value
0x02 (1 byte)	N (1 byte)	MAC Address or String (63 bytes)

The 1 in the first field identifies this as an Agent Circuit ID sub-option and 2 identifies this as an Agent Remote ID sub-option. The next field specifies the length of the field. The Switch takes the Circuit ID string you manually configure for a VLAN on a port as the highest priority and the Circuit ID string for a port as the second priority. In addition, the Switch puts the PPPoE client's MAC address into the Agent Remote ID Sub-option if you do not specify any user-defined string.

### 31.1.2.1 Flexible Circuit ID Syntax with Identifier String and Variables

If you do not configure a Circuit ID string for a VLAN on a specific port or for a specific port, the Switch adds the user-defined identifier string and variables into the Agent Circuit ID Sub-option. The variables can be the slot ID of the PPPoE client, the port number of the PPPoE client and/or the VLAN ID on the PPPoE packet.

The identifier-string, slot ID, port number and VLAN ID are separated from each other by a pound key (#), semi-colon (;), period (.), comma (,), forward slash (/) or space. An Agent Circuit ID Sub-option example is "Switch/07/0123" and indicates the PPPoE packets come from a PPPoE client which is connected to the Switch's port 7 and belong to VLAN 123.

**Table 102** PPPoE IA Circuit ID Sub-option Format: Using Identifier String and Variables

SubOpt	Length	Value						
0x01 (1 byte)	N (1 byte)	Identifier String (53 byte)	delimiter (1 byte)	Slot ID (1 byte)	delimiter (1 byte)	Port No (2 byte)	delimiter (1 byte)	VLAN ID (4 bytes)

### 31.1.2.2 WT-101 Default Circuit ID Syntax

If you do not configure a Circuit ID string for a specific VLAN on a port or for a specific port, and disable the flexible Circuit ID syntax in the **PPPoE > Intermediate Agent** screen, the Switch automatically generates a Circuit ID string according to the default Circuit ID syntax which is defined in the DSL Forum Working Text (WT)-101. The default access node identifier is the host name of the PPPoE intermediate agent and the eth indicates "Ethernet".

**Table 103** PPPoE IA Circuit ID Sub-option Format: Defined in WT-101

SubOpt	Length	Value								
0x01 (1 byte)	N (1 byte)	Access Node Identifier (20 byte)	Space (1 byte)	eth (3 byte)	Space (1 byte)	Slot ID (1 byte)	/ (1 byte)	Port No (2 byte)	: (1 byte)	VLAN ID (4 bytes)

## 31.1.3 Port State

Every port is either a trusted port or an untrusted port for the PPPoE intermediate agent. This setting is independent of the trusted/untrusted setting for DHCP snooping or ARP inspection. You can also specify the agent sub-options (circuit ID and remote ID) that the Switch adds to PADI and PADR packets from PPPoE clients.

Trusted ports are connected to PPPoE servers.

- If a PADO (PPPoE Active Discovery Offer), PADS (PPPoE Active Discovery Session-confirmation), or PADT (PPPoE Active Discovery Terminate) packet is sent from a PPPoE server and received on a trusted port, the Switch forwards it to all other ports.
- If a PADI or PADR packet is sent from a PPPoE client but received on a trusted port, the Switch forwards it to other trusted port(s).

Note: The Switch will drop all PPPoE discovery packets if you enable the PPPoE intermediate agent and there are no trusted ports.

Untrusted ports are connected to subscribers.

- If a PADI, PADR, or PADT packet is sent from a PPPoE client and received on an untrusted port, the Switch adds a vendor-specific tag to the packet and then forwards it to the trusted port(s).
- The Switch discards PADO and PADS packets which are sent from a PPPoE server but received on an untrusted port.

## 31.2 The PPPoE Screen

Use this screen to configure the PPPoE Intermediate Agent on the Switch.

Click **Advanced Application** > **PPPoE** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown. Click **Click Here** to go to the **Intermediate Agent** screen.

**Figure 143** Advanced Application > PPPoE Intermediate Agent



## 31.3 PPPoE Intermediate Agent

Use this screen to configure the Switch to give a PPPoE termination server additional subscriber information that the server can use to identify and authenticate a PPPoE client.



Click **Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 144** Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 104** Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable the PPPoE intermediate agent globally on the Switch.
access-node-identifier	Enter up to 20 ASCII characters to identify the PPPoE intermediate agent. Hyphens (-) and spaces are also allowed. The default is the Switch's host name.
circuit-id	Use this section to configure the Circuit ID field in the PADI and PADR packets.  The Circuit ID you configure for a specific port or for a specific VLAN on a port has priority over this.  The Circuit ID you configure for a specific port (in the <b>Advanced Application &gt; PPPoE &gt; Intermediate Agent &gt; Port</b> screen) or for a specific VLAN on a port (in the <b>Advanced Application &gt; PPPoE &gt; Intermediate Agent &gt; Port &gt; VLAN</b> screen) has priority over this. That means, if you also want to configure PPPoE IA Per-Port or Per-Port Per-VLAN setting, leave the fields here empty and configure circuit-id and remote-id in the Per-Port or Per-Port Per-VLAN screen.
Active	Select this option to have the Switch add the user-defined identifier string and variables (specified in the <b>option</b> field) to PADI or PADR packets from PPPoE clients.  If you leave this option unselected and do not configure any Circuit ID string (using CLI commands) on the Switch, the Switch will use the string specified in the <b>access-node-identifier</b> field.
identifier-string	Specify a string that the Switch adds in the Agent Circuit ID sub-option. You can enter up to 53 ASCII characters. Spaces are allowed.
option	Select the variables that you want the Switch to generate and add in the Agent Circuit ID sub-option. The variable options include <b>sp</b> , <b>sv</b> , <b>pv</b> and <b>spv</b> which indicate combinations of slot-port, slot-VLAN, port-VLAN and slot-port-VLAN respectively. The Switch enters a zero into the PADI and PADR packets for the slot value.
delimiter	Select a delimiter to separate the identifier-string, slot ID, port number and/or VLAN ID from each other. You can use a pound key (#), semi-colon (;), period (.), comma (,), forward slash (/) or space.

**Table 104** Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

### 31.3.1 PPPoE IA Per-Port

Use this screen to specify whether individual ports are trusted or untrusted ports and have the Switch add extra information to PPPoE discovery packets from PPPoE clients on a per-port basis.

Note: The Switch will drop all PPPoE packets if you enable the PPPoE Intermediate Agent on the Switch and there are no trusted ports.

Click the **Port** link in the **Intermediate Agent** screen to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 145** Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port

Port	Server Trusted State	Circuit-id	Remote-id
*	Untrusted		
1	Untrusted		
2	Untrusted		
3	Untrusted		
4	Untrusted		
5	Untrusted		
6	Untrusted		
7	Untrusted		
8	Untrusted		
9	Untrusted		
10	Untrusted		
11	Untrusted		

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 105** Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.  Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.

**Table 105** Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Server Trusted State	<p>Select whether this port is a trusted port (<b>Trusted</b>) or an untrusted port (<b>Untrusted</b>).</p> <p>Trusted ports are uplink ports connected to PPPoE servers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If a PADO (PPPoE Active Discovery Offer), PADS (PPPoE Active Discovery Session-confirmation), or PADT (PPPoE Active Discovery Terminate) packet is sent from a PPPoE server and received on a trusted port, the Switch forwards it to all other ports.</li> <li>• If a PADI or PADR packet is sent from a PPPoE client but received on a trusted port, the Switch forwards it to other trusted port(s).</li> </ul> <p>Untrusted ports are downlink ports connected to subscribers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If a PADI, PADR, or PADT packet is sent from a PPPoE client and received on an untrusted port, the Switch adds a vendor-specific tag to the packet and then forwards it to the trusted port(s).</li> <li>• The Switch discards PADO and PADS packets which are sent from a PPPoE server but received on an untrusted port.</li> </ul>
Circuit-id	<p>Enter a string of up to 63 ASCII characters that the Switch adds into the Agent Circuit ID sub-option for PPPoE discovery packets received on this port. Spaces are allowed.</p> <p>The Circuit ID you configure for a specific VLAN on a port (in the <b>Advanced Application &gt; PPPoE &gt; Intermediate Agent &gt; Port &gt; VLAN</b> screen) has the highest priority.</p>
Remote-id	<p>Enter a string of up to 63 ASCII characters that the Switch adds into the Agent Remote ID sub-option for PPPoE discovery packets received on this port. Spaces are allowed.</p> <p>If you do not specify a string here or in the <b>Remote-id</b> field for a VLAN on a port, the Switch automatically uses the PPPoE client's MAC address.</p> <p>The Remote ID you configure for a specific VLAN on a port (in the <b>Advanced Application &gt; PPPoE &gt; Intermediate Agent &gt; Port &gt; VLAN</b> screen) has the highest priority.</p>
Apply	<p>Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.</p>
Cancel	<p>Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.</p>

### 31.3.2 PPPoE IA Per-Port Per-VLAN

Use this screen to configure PPPoE IA settings that apply to a specific VLAN on a port.

Click the **VLAN** link in the **Intermediate Agent > Port** screen to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 146** Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port > VLAN

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 106** Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > Port > VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Show Port	Enter a port number to show the PPPoE Intermediate Agent settings for the specified VLAN(s) on the port.
Show VLAN	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to configure in the section below.
Start VID	Enter the lowest VLAN ID you want to configure in the section below.
End VID	Enter the highest VLAN ID you want to configure in the section below.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.
Port	This field displays the port number specified above.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above. If you configure the * VLAN, the settings are applied to all VLANs.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all VLANs. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a VLAN-by-VLAN basis.  Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the VLANs as soon as you make them.
Circuit-id	Enter a string of up to 63 ASCII characters that the Switch adds into the Agent Circuit ID sub-option for this VLAN on the specified port. Spaces are allowed.  The Circuit ID you configure here has the highest priority.
Remote-id	Enter a string of up to 63 ASCII characters that the Switch adds into the Agent Remote ID sub-option for this VLAN on the specified port. Spaces are allowed.  If you do not specify a string here or in the <b>Remote-id</b> field for a specific port, the Switch automatically uses the PPPoE client's MAC address.  The Remote ID you configure here has the highest priority.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

### 31.3.3 PPPoE IA for VLAN

Use this screen to set whether the PPPoE Intermediate Agent is enabled on a VLAN and whether the Switch appends the Circuit ID and/or Remote ID to PPPoE discovery packets from a specific VLAN.

Click the **VLAN** link in the **Intermediate Agent** screen to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 147** Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > VLAN

VID	Enabled	Circuit-id	Remote-id
*	No	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
123	No	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
124	Yes	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
125	No	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
126	No	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
127	No	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
128	No	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 107** Advanced Application > PPPoE > Intermediate Agent > VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Show VLAN	Use this section to specify the VLANs you want to configure in the section below.
Start VID	Enter the lowest VLAN ID you want to configure in the section below.
End VID	Enter the highest VLAN ID you want to configure in the section below.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to display the specified range of VLANs in the section below.
VID	This field displays the VLAN ID of each VLAN in the range specified above. If you configure the * VLAN, the settings are applied to all VLANs.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all VLANs. Use this row first and then make adjustments on a VLAN-by-VLAN basis.  Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the VLANs as soon as you make them.
Enabled	Select this option to turn on the PPPoE Intermediate Agent on a VLAN.
Circuit-id	Select this option to make the Circuit ID settings for a specific VLAN take effect.
Remote-id	Select this option to make the Remote ID settings for a specific VLAN take effect.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## Error Disable

This chapter shows you how to configure the rate limit for control packets on a port, and set the Switch to take an action (such as to shut down a port or stop sending packets) on a port when the Switch detects a pre-configured error. It also shows you how to configure the Switch to automatically undo the action after the error is gone.

### 32.1 CPU Protection Overview

Switches exchange protocol control packets in a network to get the latest networking information. If a switch receives large numbers of control packets, such as ARP, BPDU or IGMP packets, which are to be processed by the CPU, the CPU may become overloaded and be unable to handle regular tasks properly.

The CPU protection feature allows you to limit the rate of ARP, BPDU and IGMP packets to be delivered to the CPU on a port. This enhances the CPU efficiency and protects against potential DoS attacks or errors from other network(s). You then can choose to drop control packets that exceed the specified rate limit or disable a port on which the packets are received.

### 32.2 Error-Disable Recovery Overview

Some features, such as loop guard or CPU protection, allow the Switch to shut down a port or discard specific packets on a port when an error is detected on the port. For example, if the Switch detects that packets sent out the port(s) loop back to the Switch, the Switch can shut down the port(s) automatically. After that, you need to enable the port(s) or allow the packets on a port manually via the web configurator or the commands. With error-disable recovery, you can set the disabled port(s) to become active or start receiving the packets again after the time interval you specify.

## 32.3 The Error Disable Screen

Use this screen to configure error disable related settings. Click **Advanced Application > Errdisable** in the navigation panel to open the following screen.

**Figure 148** Advanced Application > Errdisable

Errdisable	
CPU protection	<a href="#">Click here</a>
Errdisable Detect	<a href="#">Click here</a>
Errdisable Recovery	<a href="#">Click here</a>

## 32.4 CPU Protection Configuration

Use this screen to limit the maximum number of control packets (ARP, BPDUs and/or IGMP) that the Switch can receive or transmit on a port. Click the **Click Here** link next to **CPU protection** in the **Advanced Application > Errdisable** screen to display the screen as shown.

Note: After you configure this screen, make sure you also enable error detection for the specific control packets in the **Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Detect** screen.

**Figure 149** Advanced Application > Errdisable > CPU protection

**CPU protection** [Errdisable](#)

Reason: ARP

Port	Rate Limit (pkt/s)
*	<input type="text"/>
1	<input type="text" value="0"/>
2	<input type="text" value="0"/>
3	<input type="text" value="0"/>
4	<input type="text" value="0"/>
5	<input type="text" value="0"/>
6	<input type="text" value="0"/>
7	<input type="text" value="0"/>
8	<input type="text" value="0"/>
9	<input type="text" value="0"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 108** Advanced Application > Errdisable > CPU protection

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Reason	Select the type of control packet you want to configure here.
Port	This field displays the port number.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all ports. Use this row first and then make adjustments to each port if necessary.  Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Rate Limit (pkt/s)	Enter a number from 0 to 256 to specify how many control packets this port can receive or transmit per second.  0 means no rate limit.  You can configure the action that the Switch takes when the limit is exceeded. See <a href="#">Section 32.5 on page 260</a> for detailed information.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 32.5 Error-Disable Detect Configuration

Use screen to have the Switch detect whether the control packets exceed the rate limit configured for a port and configure the action to take once the limit is exceeded. Click the **Click Here** link next to **Errdisable Detect** link in the **Advanced Application > Errdisable** screen to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 150** Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Detect

Cause	Active	Mode
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	inactive-port
ARP	<input type="checkbox"/>	inactive-port
BPDU	<input type="checkbox"/>	inactive-port
IGMP	<input type="checkbox"/>	inactive-port

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 109** Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Detect

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Cause	This field displays the types of control packet that may cause CPU overload.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all entries. Use this row first and then make adjustments to each entry if necessary.  Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the entries as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this option to have the Switch detect if the configured rate limit for a specific control packet is exceeded and take the action selected below.



**Table 109** Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Detect (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Mode	Select the action that the Switch takes when the number of control packets exceed the rate limit on a port, set in the <b>Advanced Application &gt; Errdisable &gt; CPU protection</b> screen. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>inactive-port</b> - The Switch disables the port on which the control packets are received.</li> <li><b>inactive-reason</b> - The Switch drops all the specified control packets on the port.</li> <li><b>rate-limitation</b> - The Switch drops the additional control packets the port has to handle in every one second.</li> </ul>
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 32.6 Error-Disable Recovery Configuration

Use this screen to configure the Switch to automatically undo an action after the error is gone. Click the **Click Here** link next to **Errdisable Recovery** in the **Advanced Application > Errdisable** screen to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 151** Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Recovery

Reason	Timer Status	Interval
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	
loopguard	<input type="checkbox"/>	300
ARP	<input type="checkbox"/>	300
BPDU	<input type="checkbox"/>	300
IGMP	<input type="checkbox"/>	300

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 110** Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Recovery

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to turn on the error-disable recovery function on the Switch.
Reason	This field displays the supported features that allow the Switch to shut down a port or discard packets on a port according to the feature requirements and what action you configure.
*	Use this row to make the setting the same for all entries. Use this row first and then make adjustments to each entry if necessary.  Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the entries as soon as you make them.
Timer Status	Select this option to allow the Switch to wait for the specified time interval to activate a port or allow specific packets on a port, after the error was gone. Deselect this option to turn off this rule.

**Table 110** Advanced Application > Errdisable > Errdisable Recovery (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Interval	Enter the number of seconds (from 30 to 2592000) for the time interval.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## Private VLAN

This chapter shows you how to configure the Switch to prevent communications between ports in a VLAN.

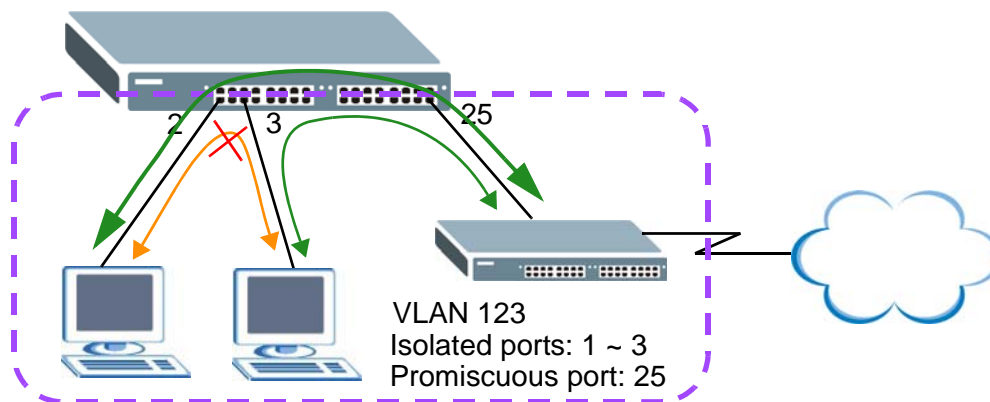
### 33.1 Private VLAN Overview

Private VLAN allows you to do port isolation within a VLAN in a simple way. If you enable a private VLAN rule for a VLAN on the Switch, the Switch automatically adds all ports (except the uplink port(s)) in this VLAN to the isolated port list and blocks traffic between the isolated ports. The uplink ports (25 to 28) are always in the promiscuous port list. A promiscuous port can communicate with any port in the same VLAN. An isolated port can communicate with the promiscuous port(s) only.

Note: You can have up to one private VLAN rule for each VLAN.

In the following example, ports 1, 2, 3 and 25 belong to VLAN 123. You configure and enable private VLAN for VLAN 123 on the Switch. Then ports 1, 2 and/or 3 cannot send traffic to each other, but they all can talk to the uplink port 25.

**Figure 152** Private VLAN Example



Note: Make sure you keep at least one port in the promiscuous port list for a VLAN with private VLAN enabled. Otherwise, this VLAN is blocked from the whole network.

## 33.2 Configuring Private VLAN

Click **Advanced Application > Private VLAN** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 153** Advanced Application > Private VLAN

Private VLAN

Active ☐

Name

VLAN ID

Add Cancel Clear

Index	Active	Name	VLAN	Delete
1	Yes	test	123	<input type="checkbox"/>

Delete Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 111** Advanced Application > Private VLAN

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Check this box to enable private VLAN in a VLAN.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
VLAN ID	Enter a VLAN ID from 1 to 4094. This is the VLAN to which this rule applies.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to insert the entry in the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to clear the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the index number of the rule.
Active	This shows whether this rule is activated or not.
Name	This is the descriptive name for this rule.
VLAN	This is the VLAN to which this rule is applied.
Delete	Check the rule(s) that you want to remove in the <b>Delete</b> column and then click the <b>Delete</b> button.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the <b>Delete</b> check boxes.

## Green Ethernet

This chapter shows you how to configure the Switch to reduce the power consumed by switch ports.

### 34.1 Green Ethernet Overview

Green Ethernet reduces switch port power consumption in the following ways.

- IEEE 802.3az Energy Efficient Ethernet (EEE)

If EEE is enabled, both sides of a link support EEE and there is no traffic, the port enters Low Power Idle (LPI) mode. LPI mode turns off some functions of the physical layer (becomes quiet) to save power. Periodically the port transmits a REFRESH signal to allow the link partner keep the link alive. When there is traffic to be sent, a WAKE signal is sent to the link partner to return the link to active mode.

- Auto Power Down

**Auto Power Down** turns off almost all functions of the port's physical layer functions when the link is down, so the port only uses power to check for a link up pulse from the link partner. After the link up pulse is detected, the port wakes up from **Auto Power Down** and operates normally.

- Short Reach

Traditional Ethernet transmits all data with enough power to reach the maximum cable length. Shorter cables lose less power, so **Short Reach** saves power by adjusting the transmit power of each port according to the length of cable attached to that port.

Note: The ES3500-8PD supports Green Ethernet completely.

Note: The ES3500-24 only supports EEE.

# 34.2 Configuring Green Ethernet

Click **Advanced Application** > **Green Ethernet** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 154** Advanced Application > Green Ethernet

Port	EEE	Auto Power Down
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 112** Advanced Application > Green Ethernet

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
EEE	Select this to activate Energy Efficient Ethernet globally.
Auto Power Down	Select this to activate Auto Power Down globally.
Short Reach	Select this to activate Short Reach globally.
Port	This shows the port on the device.
EEE	Select this to activate Energy Efficient Ethernet on this port.
Auto Power Down	Select this to activate Auto Power Down on this port.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## Static Route

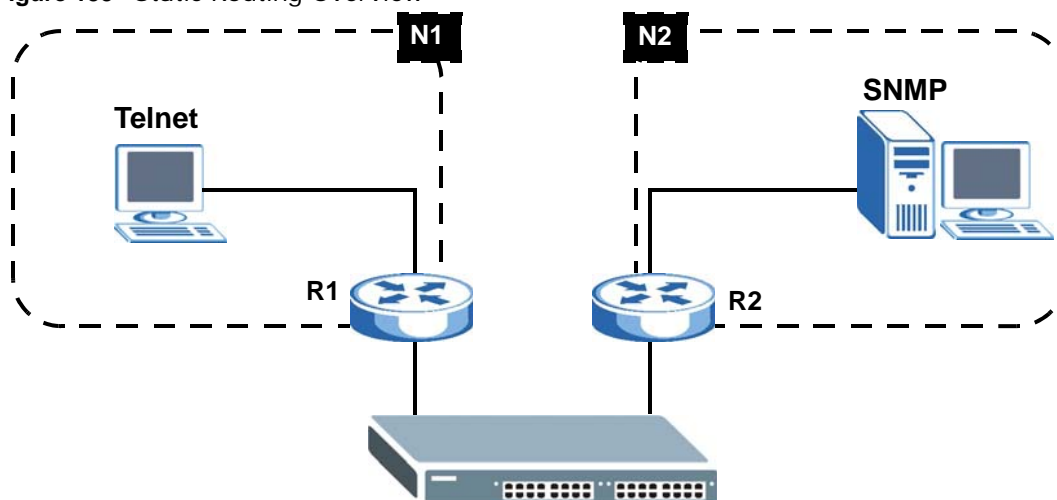
This chapter shows you how to configure static routes.

### 35.1 Static Routing Overview

The Switch uses IP for communication with management computers, for example using HTTP, Telnet, SSH, or SNMP. Use IP static routes to have the Switch respond to remote management stations that are not reachable through the default gateway. The Switch can also use static routes to send data to a server or device that is not reachable through the default gateway, for example when sending SNMP traps or using ping to test IP connectivity.

This figure shows a **Telnet** session coming in from network **N1**. The Switch sends reply traffic to default gateway **R1** which routes it back to the manager's computer. The Switch needs a static route to tell it to use router **R2** to send traffic to an SNMP trap server on network **N2**.

**Figure 155** Static Routing Overview



# 35.2 Configuring Static Routing

Click **IP Application > Static Routing** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 156** IP Application > Static Routing

Static Routing

Active ☐

Name

Destination IP Address

IP Subnet Mask

Gateway IP Address

Metric

Add Cancel Clear

Index	Active	Name	Destination Address	Subnet Mask	Gateway Address	Metric	Delete
1	Yes	Example	172.21.1.1	255.255.0.0	192.168.1.2	2	<input type="checkbox"/>

Delete Cancel

The following table describes the related labels you use to create a static route.

**Table 113** IP Application > Static Routing

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	This field allows you to activate/deactivate this static route.
Name	Enter a descriptive name (up to 10 printable ASCII characters) for identification purposes.
Destination IP Address	This parameter specifies the IP network address of the final destination.
IP Subnet Mask	Enter the subnet mask for this destination. Routing is always based on network number. If you need to specify a route to a single host, use a subnet mask of 255.255.255.255 in the subnet mask field to force the network number to be identical to the host ID.
Gateway IP Address	Enter the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is an immediate neighbor of your Switch that will forward the packet to the destination. The gateway must be a router on the same segment as your Switch.
Metric	The metric represents the “cost” of transmission for routing purposes. IP routing uses hop count as the measurement of cost, with a minimum of 1 for directly connected networks. Enter a number that approximates the cost for this link. The number need not be precise, but it must be between 1 and 15. In practice, 2 or 3 is usually a good number.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to insert a new static route to the Switch’s run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to reset the above fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to set the above fields back to the factory defaults.
Index	This field displays the index number of the route. Click a number to edit the static route entry.
Active	This field displays <b>Yes</b> when the static route is activated and <b>No</b> when it is deactivated.
Name	This field displays the descriptive name for this route. This is for identification purposes only.
Destination Address	This field displays the IP network address of the final destination.



**Table 113** IP Application > Static Routing (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Subnet Mask	This field displays the subnet mask for this destination.
Gateway Address	This field displays the IP address of the gateway. The gateway is an immediate neighbor of your Switch that will forward the packet to the destination.
Metric	This field displays the cost of transmission for routing purposes.
Delete	Click <b>Delete</b> to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the <b>Delete</b> check boxes.

## Differentiated Services

This chapter shows you how to configure Differentiated Services (DiffServ) on the Switch.

### 36.1 DiffServ Overview

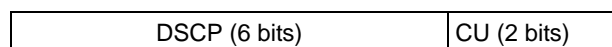
Quality of Service (QoS) is used to prioritize source-to-destination traffic flows. All packets in the flow are given the same priority. You can use CoS (class of service) to give different priorities to different packet types.

DiffServ is a class of service (CoS) model that marks packets so that they receive specific per-hop treatment at DiffServ-compliant network devices along the route based on the application types and traffic flow. Packets are marked with DiffServ Code Points (DSCPs) indicating the level of service desired. This allows the intermediary DiffServ-compliant network devices to handle the packets differently depending on the code points without the need to negotiate paths or remember state information for every flow. In addition, applications do not have to request a particular service or give advanced notice of where the traffic is going.

#### 36.1.1 DSCP and Per-Hop Behavior

DiffServ defines a new DS (Differentiated Services) field to replace the Type of Service (ToS) field in the IP header. The DS field contains a 6-bit DSCP field which can define up to 64 service levels and the remaining 2 bits are defined as currently unused (CU). The following figure illustrates the DS field.

**Figure 157** DiffServ: Differentiated Service Field



DSCP is backward compatible with the three precedence bits in the ToS octet so that non-DiffServ compliant, ToS-enabled network device will not conflict with the DSCP mapping.

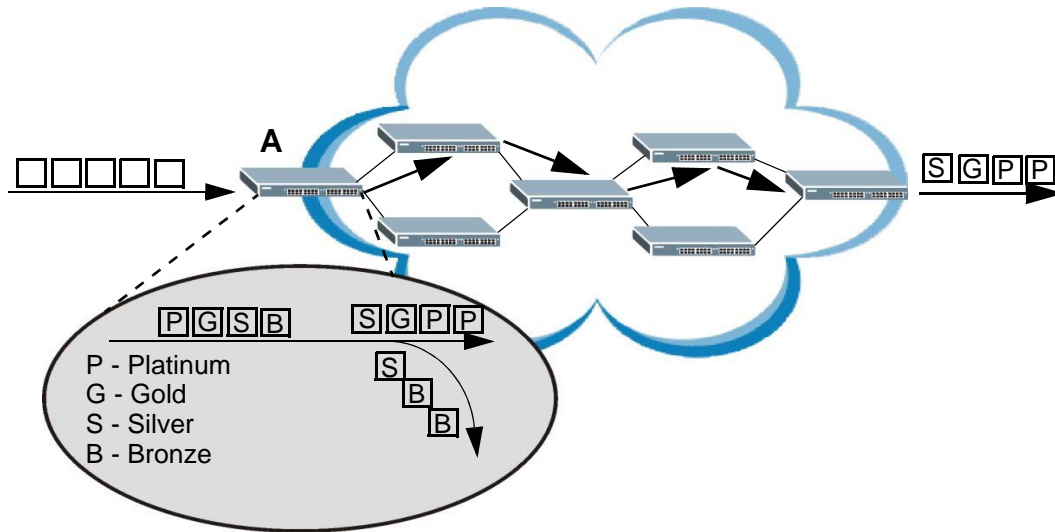
The DSCP value determines the PHB (Per-Hop Behavior), that each packet gets as it is forwarded across the DiffServ network. Based on the marking rule different kinds of traffic can be marked for different priorities of forwarding. Resources can then be allocated according to the DSCP values and the configured policies.

#### 36.1.2 DiffServ Network Example

The following figure depicts a DiffServ network consisting of a group of directly connected DiffServ-compliant network devices. The boundary node (**A** in [Figure 158](#)) in a DiffServ network classifies (marks with a DSCP value) the incoming packets into different traffic flows (**Platinum, Gold, Silver, Bronze**) based on the configured marking rules. A network administrator can then apply

various traffic policies to the traffic flows. An example traffic policy, is to give higher drop precedence to one traffic flow over others. In our example, packets in the **Bronze** traffic flow are more likely to be dropped when congestion occurs than the packets in the **Platinum** traffic flow as they move across the DiffServ network.

**Figure 158** DiffServ Network



## 36.2 Two Rate Three Color Marker Traffic Policing

Traffic policing is the limiting of the input or output transmission rate of a class of traffic on the basis of user-defined criteria. Traffic policing methods measure traffic flows against user-defined criteria and identify it as either conforming, exceeding or violating the criteria.

Two Rate Three Color Marker (TRTCM, defined in RFC 2698) is a type of traffic policing that identifies packets by comparing them to two user-defined rates: the Committed Information Rate (CIR) and the Peak Information Rate (PIR). The CIR specifies the average rate at which packets are admitted to the network. The PIR is greater than or equal to the CIR. CIR and PIR values are based on the guaranteed and maximum bandwidth respectively as negotiated between a service provider and client.

Two Rate Three Color Marker evaluates incoming packets and marks them with one of three colors which refer to packet loss priority levels. High packet loss priority level is referred to as red, medium is referred to as yellow and low is referred to as green. After TRTCM is configured and DiffServ is enabled the following actions are performed on the colored packets:

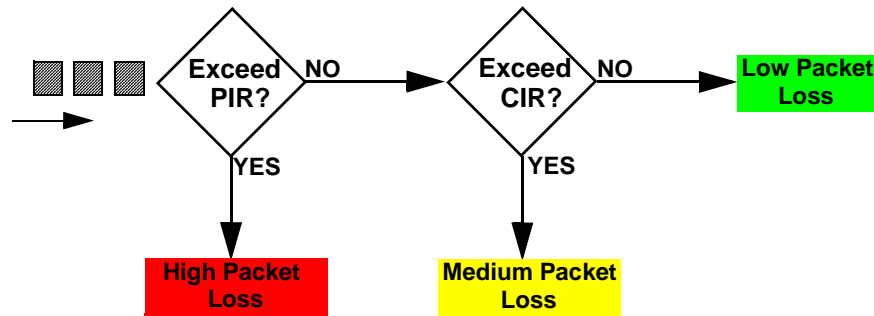
- Red (high loss priority level) packets are dropped.
- Yellow (medium loss priority level) packets are dropped if there is congestion on the network.
- Green (low loss priority level) packets are forwarded.

TRTCM operates in one of two modes: color-blind or color-aware. In color-blind mode, packets are marked based on evaluating against the PIR and CIR regardless of if they have previously been marked or not. In the color-aware mode, packets are marked based on both existing color and evaluation against the PIR and CIR. If the packets do not match any of colors, then the packets proceed unchanged.

### 36.2.1 TRTCM-Color-blind Mode

All packets are evaluated against the PIR. If a packet exceeds the PIR it is marked red. Otherwise it is evaluated against the CIR. If it exceeds the CIR then it is marked yellow. Finally, if it is below the CIR then it is marked green.

**Figure 159** TRTCM-Color-blind Mode

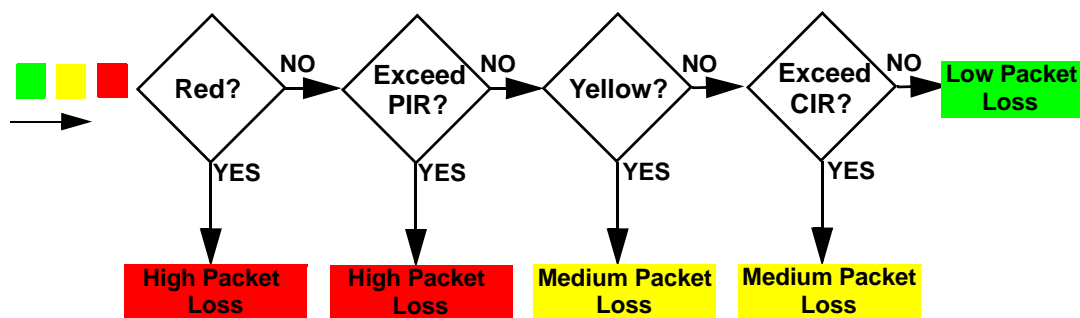


### 36.2.2 TRTCM-Color-aware Mode

In color-aware mode the evaluation of the packets uses the existing packet loss priority. TRTCM can increase a packet loss priority of a packet but it cannot decrease it. Packets that have been previously marked red or yellow can only be marked with an equal or higher packet loss priority.

Packets marked red (high packet loss priority) continue to be red without evaluation against the PIR or CIR. Packets marked yellow can only be marked red or remain yellow so they are only evaluated against the PIR. Only the packets marked green are first evaluated against the PIR and then if they don't exceed the PIR level are they evaluated against the CIR.

**Figure 160** TRTCM-Color-aware Mode



## 36.3 Activating DiffServ

Activate DiffServ to apply marking rules or IEEE 802.1p priority mapping on the selected port(s).

Click **IP Application** > **DiffServ** in the navigation panel to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 161** IP Application > DiffServ

Port	Active
*	<input type="checkbox"/>
1	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>
28	<input type="checkbox"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 114** IP Application > DiffServ

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this option to enable DiffServ on the Switch.
Port	This field displays the index number of a port on the Switch.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports.  Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.  Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select <b>Active</b> to enable DiffServ on the port.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

### 36.3.1 Configuring 2-Rate 3 Color Marker Settings

Use this screen to configure TRTCM settings. Click the **2-rate 3 Color Marker** link in the **DiffServ** screen to display the screen as shown next.

Note: You cannot enable both TRTCM and Bandwidth Control at the same time.

**Figure 162** IP Application > DiffServ > 2-rate 3 Color Marker

Port	Active	Commit Rate	Peak Rate	DSCP
*	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> Kbps	<input type="text"/> Kbps	Default ▼
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	Default ▼
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	Default ▼
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	Default ▼
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	Default ▼
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	Default ▼
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	Default ▼
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	Default ▼
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	Default ▼
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	Default ▼
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	Default ▼
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	Default ▼
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	Default ▼
13	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	<input type="text"/> 1 Kbps	Default ▼

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 115** IP Application > DiffServ > 2-rate 3 Color Marker

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this to activate TRTCM (Two Rate Three Color Marker) on the Switch. The Switch evaluates and marks the packets based on the TRTCM settings.  Note: You must also activate <b>DiffServ</b> on the Switch and the individual ports for the Switch to drop red (high loss priority) colored packets.
Mode	Select <b>color-blind</b> to have the Switch treat all incoming packets as uncolored. All incoming packets are evaluated against the CIR and PIR.  Select <b>color-aware</b> to treat the packets as marked by some preceding entity. Incoming packets are evaluated based on their existing color. Incoming packets that are not marked proceed through the Switch.
Port	This field displays the index number of a port on the Switch.
*	Settings in this row apply to all ports.  Use this row only if you want to make some settings the same for all ports. Use this row first to set the common settings and then make adjustments on a port-by-port basis.  Note: Changes in this row are copied to all the ports as soon as you make them.
Active	Select this to activate TRTCM on the port.

**Table 115** IP Application > DiffServ > 2-rate 3 Color Marker (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Commit Rate	Specify the Commit Information Rate (CIR) for this port.
Peak Rate	Specify the Peak Information Rate (PIR) for this port.
DSCP	Select the DSCP profile that you want to apply to packets on this port. In a DSCP profile you can specify the DSCP values to assign to packets based on the color they are marked via TRTCM.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

### 36.3.2 Configuring DSCP Profiles

Use this screen to configure DSCP profiles. Click the **DSCP Profile** link in the **2-Rate 3 Color Marker** screen to display the screen as shown next.

**Figure 163** IP Application > DiffServ > 2-rate 3 Color Marker > DSCP Profile

The screenshot shows the 'DSCP Profile' configuration interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'DSCP Profile' and 'Two-Rate Three Color Marker'. Below this is a 'DSCP Setup' section. It contains a table with columns: Profile Name, Green, Yellow, and Red. The 'Default' profile is listed with values 0 for Green, 0 for Yellow, and 0 for Red. Below this table are 'Add' and 'Cancel' buttons. Underneath is another table with columns: Profile Name, Green, Yellow, Red, and Delete Profile. The 'Default' profile is listed with values 0, 0, 0 and a checkbox for 'Delete Profile'. At the bottom of the screen are 'Delete' and 'Cancel' buttons.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 116** IP Application > DiffServ > 2-rate 3 Color Marker > DSCP Profile

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Profile Name	Type a descriptive name (up to 32 printable ASCII characters) for this profile. This is for identification only.
Green	Specify the DSCP value to use for packets with low packet loss priority.
Yellow	Specify the DSCP value to use for packets with medium packet loss priority.
Red	Specify the DSCP value to use for packets with high packet loss priority.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to insert a new DSCP profile to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to reset the above fields to your previous configuration.
Profile Name	This field displays the name of the DSCP profile. Click the name to edit the profile settings.

**Table 116** IP Application > DiffServ > 2-rate 3 Color Marker > DSCP Profile (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Green	This field displays the DSCP value to use for packets with low packet loss priority in this profile.
Yellow	This field displays the DSCP value to use for packets with medium packet loss priority in this profile.
Red	This field displays the DSCP value to use for packets with high packet loss priority in this profile.
Delete Profile	Select the profile(s) that you want to remove.
Delete	Click <b>Delete</b> to remove the selected profile(s) from the summary table.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the <b>Delete</b> check boxes.

## 36.4 DSCP-to-IEEE 802.1p Priority Settings

You can configure the DSCP to IEEE 802.1p mapping to allow the Switch to prioritize all traffic based on the incoming DSCP value according to the DiffServ to IEEE 802.1p mapping table.

The following table shows the default DSCP-to-IEEE802.1p mapping.

**Table 117** Default DSCP-IEEE 802.1p Mapping

DSCP VALUE	0 – 7	8 – 15	16 – 23	24 – 31	32 – 39	40 – 47	48 – 55	56 – 63
IEEE 802.1p	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7

### 36.4.1 Configuring DSCP Settings

To change the DSCP-IEEE 802.1p mapping click the **DSCP Setting** link in the **DiffServ** screen to display the screen as shown next.

**Figure 164** IP Application > DiffServ > DSCP Setting

The screenshot shows the 'DSCP Setting' configuration page under the 'DiffServ' tab. The page title is 'DSCP to 802.1p Mapping'. It features a table with 64 entries, each consisting of a DSCP value (0-63) and a corresponding IEEE 802.1p priority value (0-7). The values are currently set to 0 for DSCP 0-7, 1 for DSCP 8-15, 2 for DSCP 16-23, 3 for DSCP 24-31, 4 for DSCP 32-39, 5 for DSCP 40-47, 6 for DSCP 48-55, and 7 for DSCP 56-63. Each entry has a dropdown arrow next to the IEEE 802.1p value. At the bottom of the table are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

DSCP	IEEE 802.1p	DSCP	IEEE 802.1p	DSCP	IEEE 802.1p	DSCP	IEEE 802.1p
0	0	8	1	16	2	24	3
1	0	9	1	17	2	25	3
2	0	10	1	18	2	26	3
3	0	11	1	19	2	27	3
4	0	12	1	20	2	28	3
5	0	13	1	21	2	29	3
6	0	14	1	22	2	30	3
7	0	15	1	23	2	31	3
8	1	16	2	24	3	32	4
9	1	17	2	25	3	33	4
10	1	18	2	26	3	34	4
11	1	19	2	27	3	35	4
12	1	20	2	28	3	36	4
13	1	21	2	29	3	37	4
14	1	22	2	30	3	38	4
15	1	23	2	31	3	39	4
16	2	32	4	40	5	48	6
17	2	33	4	41	5	49	6
18	2	34	4	42	5	50	6
19	2	35	4	43	5	51	6
20	2	36	4	44	5	52	6
21	2	37	4	45	5	53	6
22	2	38	4	46	5	54	6
23	2	39	4	47	5	55	6
24	3	40	5	48	6	56	7
25	3	41	5	49	6	57	7
26	3	42	5	50	6	58	7
27	3	43	5	51	6	59	7
28	3	44	5	52	6	60	7
29	3	45	5	53	6	61	7
30	3	46	5	54	6	62	7
31	3	47	5	55	6	63	7



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 118** IP Application > DiffServ > DSCP Setting

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
0 ... 63	This is the DSCP classification identification number.  To set the IEEE 802.1p priority mapping, select the priority level from the drop-down list box.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

This chapter shows you how to configure the DHCP feature.

## 37.1 DHCP Overview

DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol RFC 2131 and RFC 2132) allows individual computers to obtain TCP/IP configuration at start-up from a server. You can configure the Switch as a DHCP server or a DHCP relay agent. When configured as a server, the Switch provides the TCP/IP configuration for the clients. If you configure the Switch as a relay agent, then the Switch forwards DHCP requests to DHCP server on your network. If you don't configure the Switch as a DHCP server or relay agent then you must have a DHCP server in the broadcast domain of the client computers or else the client computers must be configured manually.

### 37.1.1 DHCP Modes

If there is already a DHCP server on your network, then you can configure the Switch as a DHCP relay agent. When the Switch receives a request from a computer on your network, it contacts the DHCP server for the necessary IP information, and then relays the assigned information back to the computer.

### 37.1.2 DHCP Configuration Options

The DHCP configuration on the Switch is divided into **Global** and **VLAN** screens. The screen you should use for configuration depends on the DHCP services you want to offer the DHCP clients on your network. Choose the configuration screen based on the following criteria:

- **Global:** The Switch forwards all DHCP requests to the same DHCP server.
- **VLAN:** The Switch is configured on a VLAN by VLAN basis. The Switch can be configured to relay DHCP requests to different DHCP servers for clients in different VLAN.

## 37.2 DHCP Status

Click **IP Application** > **DHCP** in the navigation panel. The **DHCP Status** screen displays.

**Figure 165** IP Application > DHCP Status



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 119** IP Application > DHCP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Relay Mode	<p>This field displays:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>None:</b> if the Switch is not configured as a DHCP relay agent.</li> <li>• <b>Global:</b> if the Switch is configured as a DHCP relay agent only.</li> <li>• <b>VLAN:</b> followed by a VLAN ID or multiple VLAN IDs if it is configured as a relay agent for specific VLAN(s).</li> </ul>

## 37.3 DHCP Relay

Configure DHCP relay on the Switch if the DHCP clients and the DHCP server are not in the same broadcast domain. During the initial IP address leasing, the Switch helps to relay network information (such as the IP address and subnet mask) between a DHCP client and a DHCP server. Once the DHCP client obtains an IP address and can connect to the network, network information renewal is done between the DHCP client and the DHCP server without the help of the Switch.

The Switch can be configured as a global DHCP relay. This means that the Switch forwards all DHCP requests from all domains to the same DHCP server. You can also configure the Switch to relay DHCP information based on the VLAN membership of the DHCP clients.

### 37.3.1 DHCP Relay Agent Information

The Switch can add information about the source of client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server by adding **Relay Agent Information**. This helps provide authentication about the source of the requests. The DHCP server can then provide an IP address based on this information. Please refer to RFC 3046 for more details.

The DHCP **Relay Agent Information** feature adds an Agent Information field to the **Option 82** field. The **Option 82** field is in the DHCP headers of client DHCP request frames that the Switch relays to a DHCP server.

**Relay Agent Information** can include the **System Name** of the Switch if you select this option. You can change the **System Name** in **Basic Settings > General Setup**.

The following describes the DHCP relay information that the Switch sends to the DHCP server:

**Table 120** Relay Agent Information

FIELD LABELS	DESCRIPTION
Slot ID	(1 byte) This value is always 0 for stand-alone switches.
Port ID	(1 byte) This is the port that the DHCP client is connected to.
VLAN ID	(2 bytes) This is the VLAN that the port belongs to.
Information	(up to 64 bytes) This optional, read-only field is set according to system name set in <b>Basic Settings &gt; General Setup</b> .

### 37.3.2 Configuring DHCP Global Relay

Configure global DHCP relay in the **DHCP Relay** screen. Click **IP Application > DHCP** in the navigation panel and click the **Global** link to display the screen as shown.

**Figure 166** IP Application > DHCP > Global

The screenshot shows the 'DHCP Relay' configuration window. At the top left is a blue header with an orange circle icon and the text 'DHCP Relay'. At the top right is a purple link labeled 'Status'. The main area is divided into sections by horizontal lines. The first section is 'Active' with a checkbox. The next three sections are 'Remote DHCP Server 1', 'Remote DHCP Server 2', and 'Remote DHCP Server 3', each followed by a text input field containing '0.0.0.0'. The next section is 'Relay Agent Information' with a checkbox and the text 'Option 82'. The final section is 'Information' with a checkbox and a text input field containing 'ES3500'. At the bottom of the window are two buttons: 'Apply' and 'Cancel'.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

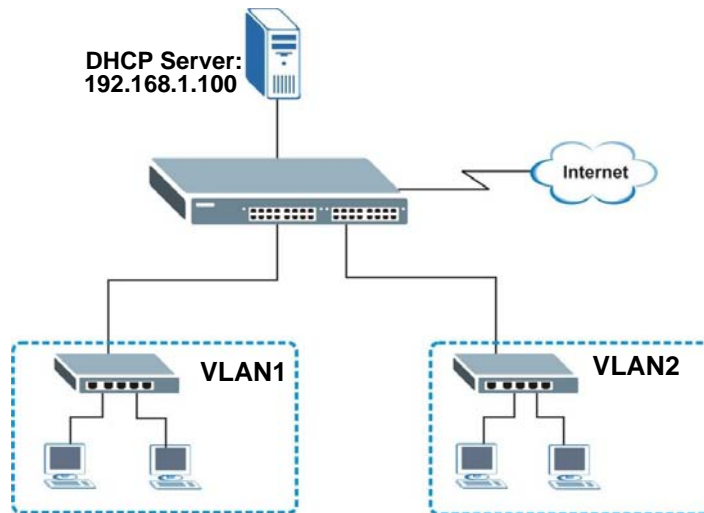
**Table 121** IP Application > DHCP > Global

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to enable DHCP relay.
Remote DHCP Server 1 .. 3	Enter the IP address of a DHCP server in dotted decimal notation.
Relay Agent Information	Select the <b>Option 82</b> check box to have the Switch add information (slot number, port number and VLAN ID) to client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
Information	This read-only field displays the system name you configure in the <b>General Setup</b> screen. Select the check box for the Switch to add the system name to the client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

### 37.3.3 Global DHCP Relay Configuration Example

The follow figure shows a network example where the Switch is used to relay DHCP requests for the **VLAN1** and **VLAN2** domains. There is only one DHCP server that services the DHCP clients in both domains.

**Figure 167** Global DHCP Relay Network Example



Configure the **DHCP Relay** screen as shown. Make sure you select the **Option 82** check box to set the Switch to send additional information (such as the VLAN ID) together with the DHCP requests to the DHCP server. This allows the DHCP server to assign the appropriate IP address according to the VLAN ID.

**Figure 168** DHCP Relay Configuration Example

DHCP Relay		Status
Active	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Remote DHCP Server 1	192.168.1.100	
Remote DHCP Server 2	0.0.0.0	
Remote DHCP Server 3	0.0.0.0	
Relay Agent Information	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Option 82	
Information	<input type="checkbox"/> ES3500	

# 37.4 Configuring DHCP VLAN Settings

Use this screen to configure your DHCP settings based on the VLAN domain of the DHCP clients. Click **IP Application** > **DHCP** in the navigation panel, then click the **VLAN** link In the **DHCP Status** screen that displays.

Note: You must set up a management IP address for each VLAN that you want to configure DHCP settings for on the Switch.

See [Section 8.6 on page 91](#) for information on how to set up management IP addresses for VLANs.

**Figure 169** IP Application > DHCP > VLAN

The screenshot shows the 'VLAN Setting' configuration interface. At the top, there's a title bar with 'VLAN Setting' and a 'Status' link. Below this is a form with several input fields: 'VID', 'Remote DHCP Server 1', 'Remote DHCP Server 2', 'Remote DHCP Server 3', 'Relay Agent Information' (which includes a checkbox for 'Option 82'), and 'Information' (which includes a checkbox for 'ES3500'). Below the form are three buttons: 'Add', 'Cancel', and 'Clear'. At the bottom of the screen, there is a table header with columns 'VID', 'Type', 'DHCP Status', and 'Delete', and a 'Delete' button below it.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 122** IP Application > DHCP > VLAN

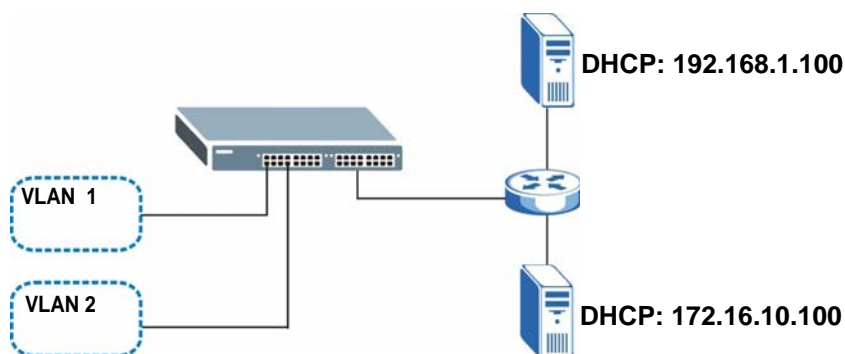
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	Enter the ID number of the VLAN to which these DHCP settings apply.
Remote DHCP Server 1 .. 3	Enter the IP address of a DHCP server in dotted decimal notation.
Relay Agent Information	Select the <b>Option 82</b> check box to have the Switch add information (slot number, port number and VLAN ID) to client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
Information	This read-only field displays the system name you configure in the <b>General Setup</b> screen. Select the check box for the Switch to add the system name to the client DHCP requests that it relays to a DHCP server.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click this to clear the fields above.
VID	This field displays the ID number of the VLAN group to which this DHCP settings apply.
Type	This field displays the DHCP mode ( <b>Relay</b> ).
DHCP Status	For DHCP relay configuration, this field displays the first remote DHCP server IP address.

**Table 122** IP Application > DHCP > VLAN (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Delete	Select the configuration entries you want to remove and click <b>Delete</b> to remove them.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to clear the <b>Delete</b> check boxes.

### 37.4.1 Example: DHCP Relay for Two VLANs

The following example displays two VLANs (VIDs 1 and 2) for a campus network. Two DHCP servers are installed to serve each VLAN. The system is set up to forward DHCP requests from the dormitory rooms (VLAN 1) to the DHCP server with an IP address of 192.168.1.100. Requests from the academic buildings (VLAN 2) are sent to the other DHCP server with an IP address of 172.16.10.100.

**Figure 170** DHCP Relay for Two VLANs

For the example network, configure the **VLAN Setting** screen as shown.

**Figure 171** DHCP Relay for Two VLANs Configuration Example

The screenshot shows the 'VLAN Setting' configuration screen. The 'VID' field is set to 2. The 'Remote DHCP Server 1' field is set to 172.16.10.100. The 'Remote DHCP Server 2' and 'Remote DHCP Server 3' fields are set to 0.0.0.0. The 'Relay Agent Information' field has a checkbox for 'Option 82'. The 'Information' field has a checkbox for 'ES3500'. Below these fields are buttons for 'Add', 'Cancel', and 'Clear'. At the bottom, there is a table with columns for 'VID', 'Type', 'DHCP Status', and 'Delete'. The table contains one entry for VID 1, Type Relay, and DHCP Status 192.168.1.100. Below the table are buttons for 'Delete' and 'Cancel'.

VID	Type	DHCP Status	Delete
1	Relay	192.168.1.100	<input type="checkbox"/>





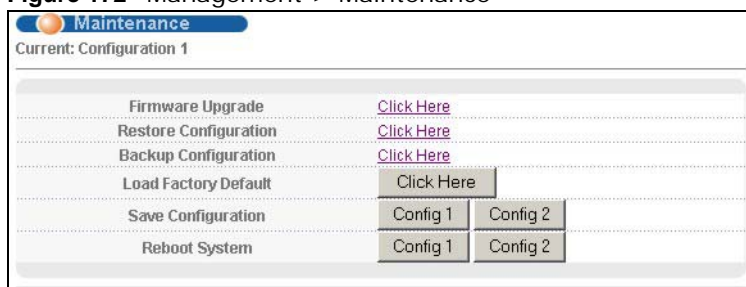
## Maintenance

This chapter explains how to configure the screens that let you maintain the firmware and configuration files.

### 38.1 The Maintenance Screen

Use this screen to manage firmware and your configuration files. Click **Management** > **Maintenance** in the navigation panel to open the following screen.

**Figure 172** Management > Maintenance



The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 123** Management > Maintenance

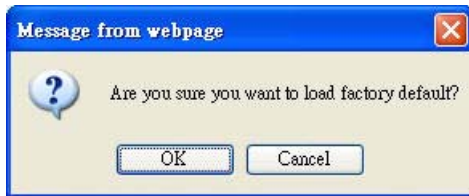
LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Current	This field displays which configuration ( <b>Configuration 1</b> or <b>Configuration 2</b> ) is currently operating on the Switch.
Firmware Upgrade	Click <b>Click Here</b> to go to the <b>Firmware Upgrade</b> screen.
Restore Configuration	Click <b>Click Here</b> to go to the <b>Restore Configuration</b> screen.
Backup Configuration	Click <b>Click Here</b> to go to the <b>Backup Configuration</b> screen.
Load Factory Default	Click <b>Click Here</b> to reset the configuration to the factory default settings.
Save Configuration	Click <b>Config 1</b> to save the current configuration settings to <b>Configuration 1</b> on the Switch. Click <b>Config 2</b> to save the current configuration settings to <b>Configuration 2</b> on the Switch.
Reboot System	Click <b>Config 1</b> to reboot the system and load <b>Configuration 1</b> on the Switch. Click <b>Config 2</b> to reboot the system and load <b>Configuration 2</b> on the Switch.  Note: Make sure to click the <b>Save</b> button in any screen to save your settings to the current configuration on the Switch.

## 38.2 Load Factory Default

Follow the steps below to reset the Switch back to the factory defaults.

- 1 In the **Maintenance** screen, click the **Click Here** button next to **Load Factory Default** to clear all Switch configuration information you configured and return to the factory defaults.
- 2 Click **OK** to reset all Switch configurations to the factory defaults.

**Figure 173** Load Factory Default: Start



- 3 In the web configurator, click the **Save** button in the top of the screen to make the changes take effect. If you want to access the Switch web configurator again, you may need to change the IP address of your computer to be in the same subnet as that of the default Switch IP address (192.168.1.1).

## 38.3 Save Configuration

Click **Config 1** to save the current configuration settings permanently to **Configuration 1** on the Switch.

Click **Config 2** to save the current configuration settings to **Configuration 2** on the Switch.

Alternatively, click **Save** on the top right-hand corner in any screen to save the configuration changes to the current configuration.

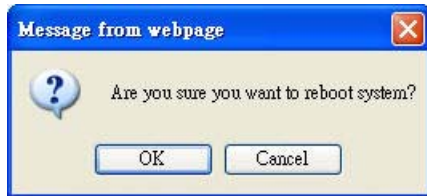
**Note:** Clicking the **Apply** or **Add** button does NOT save the changes permanently. All unsaved changes are erased after you reboot the Switch.

## 38.4 Reboot System

**Reboot System** allows you to restart the Switch without physically turning the power off. It also allows you to load configuration one (**Config 1**) or configuration two (**Config 2**) when you reboot. Follow the steps below to reboot the Switch.

- 1 In the **Maintenance** screen, click the **Config 1** button next to **Reboot System** to reboot and load configuration one. The following screen displays.

**Figure 174** Reboot System: Confirmation



- 2 Click **OK** again and then wait for the Switch to restart. This takes up to two minutes. This does not affect the Switch's configuration.

Click **Config 2** and follow steps 1 to 2 to reboot and load configuration two on the Switch.

## 38.5 Firmware Upgrade

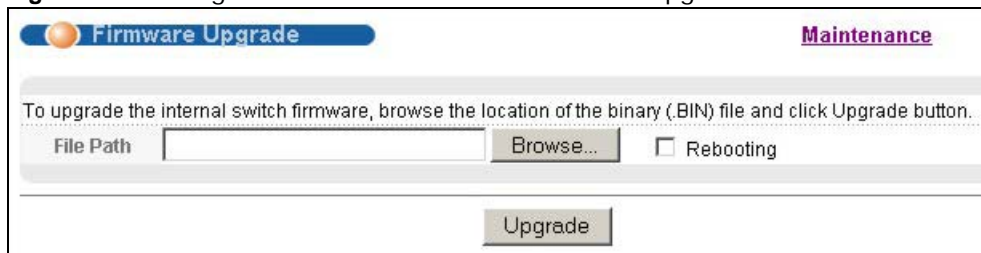
Make sure you have downloaded (and unzipped) the correct model firmware and version to your computer before uploading to the device.

Firmware is uploaded to the current image. See [Section 38.8 on page 289](#) for more information about images and uploading firmware to a different image.

**Be sure to upload the correct model firmware as uploading the wrong model firmware may damage your device.**

Click **Management > Maintenance > Firmware Upgrade** to view the screen as shown next.

**Figure 175** Management > Maintenance > Firmware Upgrade



Type the path and file name of the firmware file you wish to upload to the Switch in the **File Path** text box or click **Browse** to locate it. Select the **Rebooting** check box if you want to reboot the Switch and apply the new firmware immediately. (Firmware upgrades are only applied after a reboot). Click **Upgrade** to load the new firmware.

After the firmware upgrade process is complete, see the **System Info** screen to verify your current firmware version number.

## 38.6 Restore a Configuration File

Restore a previously saved configuration from your computer to the Switch using the **Restore Configuration** screen.

**Figure 176** Management > Maintenance > Restore Configuration

Type the path and file name of the configuration file you wish to restore in the **File Path** text box or click **Browse** to locate it. After you have specified the file, click **Restore**. "config" is the name of the configuration file on the Switch, so your backup configuration file is automatically renamed when you restore using this screen.

## 38.7 Backup a Configuration File

Backing up your Switch configurations allows you to create various "snap shots" of your device from which you may restore at a later date.

Back up your current Switch configuration to a computer using the **Backup Configuration** screen.

**Figure 177** Management > Maintenance > Backup Configuration

Follow the steps below to back up the current Switch configuration to your computer in this screen.

- 1 Click **Backup**.
- 2 Click **Save** to display the **Save As** screen.
- 3 Choose a location to save the file on your computer from the **Save in** drop-down list box and type a descriptive name for it in the **File name** list box. Click **Save** to save the configuration file to your computer.

## 38.8 FTP Command Line

This section shows some examples of uploading to or downloading files from the Switch using FTP commands. First, understand the filename conventions.

### 38.8.1 Filename Conventions

The configuration file (also known as the romfile or ROM) contains the factory default settings in the screens such as password, Switch setup, IP Setup, and so on. Once you have customized the Switch's settings, they can be saved back to your computer under a filename of your choosing.

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System sometimes referred to as the "ras" file) is the system firmware and has a "bin" filename extension.

**Table 124** Filename Conventions

FILE TYPE	INTERNAL NAME	EXTERNAL NAME	DESCRIPTION
Configuration File	config	*.cfg	This is the configuration filename on the Switch. Uploading the config file replaces the specified configuration file system, including your Switch configurations, system-related data (including the default password), the error log and the trace log.
Firmware	ras-0 ras-1	*.bin	This is the generic name for the ZyNOS firmware on the Switch. <i>ras-0</i> is image 1; <i>ras-1</i> is image 2.

You can store up to two images, or firmware files of the same device model, on the Switch. Only one image is used at a time.

- Run the `boot image <1|2>` command to specify which image is updated when firmware is loaded using the web configurator and to specify which image is loaded when the Switch starts up.
- You can also use FTP commands to upload firmware to any image.

The Switch supports dual firmware images, *ras-0* and *ras-1*. You can switch from one to the other by using the `boot image <index>` command, where *<index>* is 1 (*ras-0*) or 2 (*ras-1*). See the CLI Reference Guide for more information about using commands. The system does not reboot after it switches from one image to the other.

#### 38.8.1.1 Example FTP Commands

```
ftp> put firmware.bin ras-0
```

This is a sample FTP session showing the transfer of the computer file "firmware.bin" to the Switch.

```
ftp> get config config.cfg
```

This is a sample FTP session saving the current configuration to a file called "config.cfg" on your computer.

If your (T)FTP client does not allow you to have a destination filename different than the source, you will need to rename them as the Switch only recognizes "config", "ras-0", and "ras-1". Be sure you keep unaltered copies of all files for later use.

**Be sure to upload the correct model firmware as uploading the wrong model firmware may damage your device.**

## 38.8.2 FTP Command Line Procedure

- 1 Launch the FTP client on your computer.
- 2 Enter `open`, followed by a space and the IP address of your Switch.
- 3 Press [ENTER] when prompted for a username.
- 4 Enter your password as requested (the default is "1234").
- 5 Enter `bin` to set transfer mode to binary.
- 6 Use `put` to transfer files from the computer to the Switch, for example, `put firmware.bin ras-0` transfers the firmware on your computer (firmware.bin) to the Switch and renames it to "ras-0". Similarly, `put config.cfg config` transfers the configuration file on your computer (config.cfg) to the Switch and renames it to "config". Likewise `get config config.cfg` transfers the configuration file on the Switch to your computer and renames it to "config.cfg". See [Table 124 on page 289](#) for more information on filename conventions.
- 7 Enter `quit` to exit the ftp prompt.

## 38.8.3 GUI-based FTP Clients

The following table describes some of the commands that you may see in GUI-based FTP clients.

General Commands for GUI-based FTP Clients

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Host Address	Enter the address of the host server.
Login Type	Anonymous.  This is when a user I.D. and password is automatically supplied to the server for anonymous access. Anonymous logins will work only if your ISP or service administrator has enabled this option.  Normal.  The server requires a unique User ID and Password to login.
Transfer Type	Transfer files in either ASCII (plain text format) or in binary mode. Configuration and firmware files should be transferred in binary mode.
Initial Remote Directory	Specify the default remote directory (path).
Initial Local Directory	Specify the default local directory (path).

## 38.8.4 FTP Restrictions

FTP will not work when:

- FTP service is disabled in the **Service Access Control** screen.

- The IP address(es) in the **Remote Management** screen does not match the client IP address. If it does not match, the Switch will disconnect the FTP session immediately.

## Access Control

This chapter describes how to control access to the Switch.

### 39.1 Access Control Overview

A console port and FTP are allowed one session each, Telnet and SSH share nine sessions, up to five Web sessions (five different user names and passwords) and/or limitless SNMP access control sessions are allowed.

**Table 125** Access Control Overview

Console Port	SSH	Telnet	FTP	Web	SNMP
One session	Share up to nine sessions		One session	Up to five accounts	No limit

A console port access control session and Telnet access control session cannot coexist when multi-login is disabled. See the CLI Reference Guide for more information on disabling multi-login.

### 39.2 The Access Control Main Screen

Click **Management** > **Access Control** in the navigation panel to display the main screen as shown.

**Figure 178** Management > Access Control



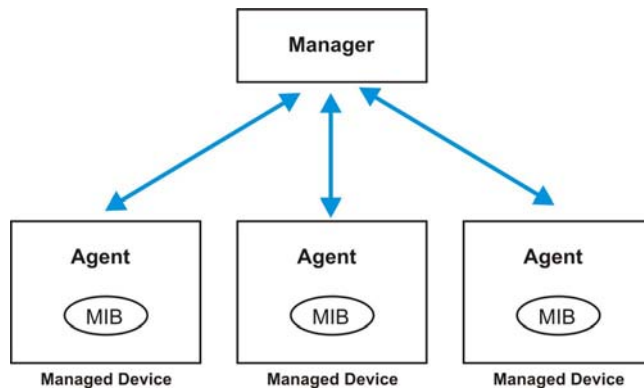
### 39.3 About SNMP

Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is an application layer protocol used to manage and monitor TCP/IP-based devices. SNMP is used to exchange management information between the network management system (NMS) and a network element (NE). A manager station can manage and monitor the Switch through the network via SNMP version one (SNMPv1), SNMP version 2c or



SNMP version 3. The next figure illustrates an SNMP management operation. SNMP is only available if TCP/IP is configured.

**Figure 179** SNMP Management Model



An SNMP managed network consists of two main components: agents and a manager.

An agent is a management software module that resides in a managed switch (the Switch). An agent translates the local management information from the managed switch into a form compatible with SNMP. The manager is the console through which network administrators perform network management functions. It executes applications that control and monitor managed devices.

The managed devices contain object variables/managed objects that define each piece of information to be collected about a switch. Examples of variables include number of packets received, node port status and so on. A Management Information Base (MIB) is a collection of managed objects. SNMP allows a manager and agents to communicate for the purpose of accessing these objects.

SNMP itself is a simple request/response protocol based on the manager/agent model. The manager issues a request and the agent returns responses using the following protocol operations:

**Table 126** SNMP Commands

COMMAND	DESCRIPTION
Get	Allows the manager to retrieve an object variable from the agent.
GetNext	Allows the manager to retrieve the next object variable from a table or list within an agent. In SNMPv1, when a manager wants to retrieve all elements of a table from an agent, it initiates a Get operation, followed by a series of GetNext operations.
Set	Allows the manager to set values for object variables within an agent.
Trap	Used by the agent to inform the manager of some events.

### 39.3.1 SNMP v3 and Security

SNMP v3 enhances security for SNMP management. SNMP managers can be required to authenticate with agents before conducting SNMP management sessions.

Security can be further enhanced by encrypting the SNMP messages sent from the managers. Encryption protects the contents of the SNMP messages. When the contents of the SNMP messages are encrypted, only the intended recipients can read them.

### 39.3.2 Supported MIBs

MIBs let administrators collect statistics and monitor status and performance.

The Switch supports the following MIBs:

- SNMP MIB II (RFC 1213)
- RFC 1157 SNMP v1
- RFC 1493 Bridge MIBs
- RFC 1643 Ethernet MIBs
- RFC 1155 SMI
- RFC 2674 SNMPv2, SNMPv2c
- RFC 1757 RMON
- SNMPv2, SNMPv2c or later version, compliant with RFC 2011 SNMPv2 MIB for IP, RFC 2012 SNMPv2 MIB for TCP, RFC 2013 SNMPv2 MIB for UDP

### 39.3.3 SNMP Traps

The Switch sends traps to an SNMP manager when an event occurs. The following tables outline the SNMP traps by category.

An OID (Object ID) that begins with “**1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8**” is defined in private MIBs. Otherwise, it is a standard MIB OID.

The OIDs beginning with “**1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61**” are specific to the ES3500-24 switch.

The OIDs beginning with “**1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72**” are specific to the ES3500-8PD switch.

The OIDs beginning with “**1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73**” are specific to the ES3500-24HP switch.

Note: OIDs are common across all models unless otherwise indicated by the model number.

**Table 127** SNMP System Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
coldstart	coldStart	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.1	This trap is sent when the Switch is turned on.
warmstart	warmStart	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.2	This trap is sent when the Switch restarts.
fanspeed	FanSpeedEventOn	ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.1	This trap is sent when the fan speed goes above or below the normal operating range.
	FanSpeedEventClear	ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.2	This trap is sent when the fan speed return to the normal operating range.

**Table 127** SNMP System Traps (continued)

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
poe	PwrPortFailedEventOn	ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.1	This trap is sent when the port is turned off to supply power due to overloading over system budget, or short circuit.
	PwrPortFailedEventClear	ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.2	This trap is sent when the port returns to the normal state and has the ability to supply power
	PsePwrFailedEventOn	ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.1	This trap is sent when the power supply of PoE failed. The trigger situation includes internal/external power supply failure, external fan speed failure and external power has exceed normal temperature.
	PsePwrFailedEventClear	ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.2	This trap is sent when the power supply of PoE returns to the normal state.
temperature	TemperatureEventOn	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.1 ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.1 ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.1	This trap is sent when the temperature goes above or below the normal operating range.
	TemperatureEventClear	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.2 ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.2 ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.2	This trap is sent when the temperature returns to the normal operating range.
voltage	VoltageEventOn	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.1 ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.1 ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.1	This trap is sent when the voltage goes above or below the normal operating range.
	VoltageEventClear	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.2 ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.2 ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.2	This trap is sent when the voltage returns to the normal operating range.

**Table 127** SNMP System Traps (continued)

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
reset	UncontrolledResetEventOn	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.1  ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.1  ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.1	This trap is sent when the Switch automatically resets.
	ControlledResetEventOn	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.1  ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.1  ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.1	This trap is sent when the Switch resets by an administrator through a management interface.
	RebootEvent	1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.0.1	This trap is sent when the Switch reboots by an administrator through a management interface.
timesync	RTCNotUpdatedEventOn	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.1  ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.1  ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.1	This trap is sent when the Switch fails to get the time and date from a time server.
	RTCNotUpdatedEventClear	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.2  ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.2  ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.2	This trap is sent when the Switch gets the time and date from a time server.
intrusionlock	IntrusionLockEventOn	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.1  ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.1  ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.1	This trap is sent when intrusion lock occurs on a port.
loopguard	LoopguardEventOn	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.2  ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.2  ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.2	This trap is sent when loopguard shuts down a port.

**Table 127** SNMP System Traps (continued)

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
errdisable	errdisableDetectTrap	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.130.4.1  ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.130.4.1  ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.130.4.1	This trap is sent when an error is detected on a port, such as a loop occurs or the rate limit for specific control packets is exceeded.
	errdisableRecoveryTrap	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.130.4.2  ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.130.4.2  ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.130.4.2	This trap is sent when the Switch ceases the action taken on a port, such as shutting down the port or discarding packets on the port, after the specified recovery interval.

**Table 128** SNMP Interface Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
linkup	linkUp	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.4	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is up.
	LinkDownEventClear	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.2  ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.2  ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.2	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is up.
linkdown	linkDown	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.3	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is down.
	LinkDownEventOn	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.1  ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.1  ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.1	This trap is sent when the Ethernet link is down.
lldp	LLDPRemoteTopologyChange	1.0.8802.1.1.2.0.0.1	This trap is sent when the LLDP (Link Layer Discovery Protocol) remote topology changes.

**Table 128** SNMP Interface Traps (continued)

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
transceiver-ddmi	transceiverddmiEventOn	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.1  ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.1  ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.1	This trap is sent when one of the device operating parameters (such as transceiver temperature, laser bias current, transmitted optical power, received optical power and transceiver supply voltage) is above or below a factory set normal range.
	transceiverddmiEventClear	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.2  ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.2  ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.2	This trap is sent when all device operating parameters return to the normal operating range.

**Table 129** AAA Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
authentication	authenticationFailure	1.3.6.1.6.3.1.1.5.5	This trap is sent when authentication fails due to incorrect user name and/or password.
	AuthenticationFailureEventOn	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.1  ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.1  ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.1	This trap is sent when authentication fails due to incorrect user name and/or password.
	RADIUSNotReachableEventOn	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.1  ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.1  ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.1	This trap is sent when there is no response message from the RADIUS server.
	RADIUSNotReachableEventClear	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.2  ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.2  ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.2	This trap is sent when the RADIUS server can be reached.

**Table 129** AAA Traps (continued)

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
accounting	RADIUSNotReachableEventOn	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.1  ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.1  ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.1	This trap is sent when there is no response message from the RADIUS accounting server.
	RADIUSNotReachableEventClear	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.2  ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.2  ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.2	This trap is sent when the RADIUS accounting server can be reached.

**Table 130** SNMP IP Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
ping	pingProbeFailed	1.3.6.1.2.1.80.0.1	This trap is sent when a single ping probe fails.
	pingTestFailed	1.3.6.1.2.1.80.0.2	This trap is sent when a ping test (consisting of a series of ping probes) fails.
	pingTestCompleted	1.3.6.1.2.1.80.0.3	This trap is sent when a ping test is completed.
traceroute	traceRoutePathChange	1.3.6.1.2.1.81.0.1	This trap is sent when a path to a target changes.
	traceRouteTestFailed	1.3.6.1.2.1.81.0.2	This trap is sent when a traceroute test fails.
	traceRouteTestCompleted	1.3.6.1.2.1.81.0.3	This trap is sent when a traceroute test is completed.

**Table 131** SNMP Switch Traps

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
stp	STPNewRoot	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.0.1	This trap is sent when the STP root switch changes.
	MRSTPNewRoot	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.36.2.1 ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.36.2.1 ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.36.2.1	This trap is sent when the MRSTP root switch changes.
	MSTPNewRoot	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.107.70.1 ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.107.70.1 ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.107.70.1	This trap is sent when the MSTP root switch changes.
	STPTopologyChange	1.3.6.1.2.1.17.0.2	This trap is sent when the STP topology changes.
	MRSTPTopologyChange	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.36.2.2 ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.36.2.2 ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.36.2.2	This trap is sent when the MRSTP topology changes.
	MSTPTopologyChange	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.107.70.2 ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.107.70.2 ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.107.70.2	This trap is sent when the MSTP root switch changes.
mactable	MacTableFullEventOn	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.1 ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.1 ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.1	This trap is sent when more than 99% of the MAC table is used.
	MacTableFullEventClear	ES3500-24: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.61.27.2.2 ES3500-8PD: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.72.27.2.2 ES3500-24HP: 1.3.6.1.4.1.890.1.5.8.73.27.2.2	This trap is sent when less than 95% of the MAC table is used.



**Table 131** SNMP Switch Traps (continued)

OPTION	OBJECT LABEL	OBJECT ID	DESCRIPTION
rmon	RmonRisingAlarm	1.3.6.1.2.1.16.0.1	This trap is sent when a variable goes over the RMON "rising" threshold.
	RmonFallingAlarm	1.3.6.1.2.1.16.0.2	This trap is sent when the variable falls below the RMON "falling" threshold.
cfm	dot1agCfmFaultAlarm	1.3.111.2.802.1.1.8.0.1	The trap is sent when the Switch detects a connectivity fault.

### 39.3.4 Configuring SNMP

Click **Management > Access Control > SNMP** to view the screen as shown. Use this screen to configure your SNMP settings.

**Figure 180** Management > Access Control > SNMP

The screenshot shows the SNMP configuration page with the following sections:

- General Setting:**
  - Version: v2c (dropdown)
  - Get Community: public
  - Set Community: public
  - Trap Community: public
- Trap Destination:**

Version	IP	Port	Username
v2c	0.0.0.0	162	
v2c	0.0.0.0	162	
v2c	0.0.0.0	162	
v2c	0.0.0.0	162	

Buttons: Apply, Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 132** Management > Access Control > SNMP

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
General Setting	Use this section to specify the SNMP version and community (password) values.
Version	<p>Select the SNMP version for the Switch. The SNMP version on the Switch must match the version on the SNMP manager. Choose SNMP version 2c (<b>v2c</b>), SNMP version 3 (<b>v3</b>) or both (<b>v3v2c</b>).</p> <p><b>Note:</b> SNMP version 2c is backwards compatible with SNMP version 1.</p>
Get Community	<p>Enter the <b>Get Community</b> string, which is the password for the incoming Get- and GetNext- requests from the management station.</p> <p>The <b>Get Community</b> string is only used by SNMP managers using SNMP version 2c or lower.</p>

**Table 132** Management > Access Control > SNMP (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Set Community	Enter the <b>Set Community</b> , which is the password for incoming Set- requests from the management station.  The <b>Set Community</b> string is only used by SNMP managers using SNMP version 2c or lower.
Trap Community	Enter the <b>Trap Community</b> string, which is the password sent with each trap to the SNMP manager.  The <b>Trap Community</b> string is only used by SNMP managers using SNMP version 2c or lower.
Trap Destination	Use this section to configure where to send SNMP traps from the Switch.
Version	Specify the version of the SNMP trap messages.
IP	Enter the IP addresses of up to four managers to send your SNMP traps to.
Port	Enter the port number upon which the manager listens for SNMP traps.
Username	Enter the username to be sent to the SNMP manager along with the SNMP v3 trap.  <b>Note:</b> This username must match an existing account on the Switch (configured in the <b>Management &gt; Access Control &gt; SNMP &gt; User</b> screen).
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

### 39.3.5 Configuring SNMP Trap Group

Click **Management > Access Control > SNMP > Trap Group** to view the screen as shown. Use the **Trap Group** screen to specify the types of SNMP traps that should be sent to each SNMP manager.

**Note:** Only the ES3500-24HP supports **fanspeed** and **poe** system traps.

**Figure 181** Management > Access Control > SNMP > Trap Group

**Trap Group** SNMP Setting

Trap Destination IP

Type	Options
System <input type="checkbox"/> *	<input type="checkbox"/> coldstart <input type="checkbox"/> warmstart <input type="checkbox"/> fanspeed <input type="checkbox"/> temperature <input type="checkbox"/> voltage <input type="checkbox"/> reset <input type="checkbox"/> timesync <input type="checkbox"/> intrusionlock <input type="checkbox"/> loopguard <input type="checkbox"/> errdisable <input type="checkbox"/> poe 
Interface <input type="checkbox"/> *	<input type="checkbox"/> linkup <input type="checkbox"/> linkdown <input type="checkbox"/> lldp <input type="checkbox"/> transceiver-ddm 
AAA <input type="checkbox"/> *	<input type="checkbox"/> authentication <input type="checkbox"/> accounting 
IP <input type="checkbox"/> *	<input type="checkbox"/> ping <input type="checkbox"/> traceroute 
Switch <input type="checkbox"/> *	<input type="checkbox"/> stp <input type="checkbox"/> mactable <input type="checkbox"/> rmon <input type="checkbox"/> cfm

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 133** Management > Access Control > SNMP > Trap Group

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Trap Destination IP	Select one of your configured trap destination IP addresses. These are the IP addresses of the SNMP managers. You must first configure a trap destination IP address in the <b>SNMP Setting</b> screen.  Use the rest of the screen to select which traps the Switch sends to that SNMP manager.
Type	Select the categories of SNMP traps that the Switch is to send to the SNMP manager.
Options	Select the individual SNMP traps that the Switch is to send to the SNMP station. See <a href="#">Section 39.3.3 on page 294</a> for individual trap descriptions.  The traps are grouped by category. Selecting a category automatically selects all of the category's traps. Clear the check boxes for individual traps that you do not want the Switch to send to the SNMP station. Clearing a category's check box automatically clears all of the category's trap check boxes (the Switch only sends traps from selected categories).
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

### 39.3.6 Configuring SNMP User

From the **SNMP** screen, click **User** to view the screen as shown. Use the **User** screen to create SNMP users for authentication with managers using SNMP v3 and associate them to SNMP groups. An SNMP user is an SNMP manager.

**Figure 182** Management > Access Control > SNMP > User

**User Information** **SNMP Setting**

Username:

Security Level:

Authentication:  Password:

Privacy:  Password:

Group:

Add Cancel Clear

Index	Username	SecurityLevel	Authentication	Privacy	Group	Delete
1	admin	noauth	MD5	DES	admin	<input type="checkbox"/>

Delete Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 134** Management > Access Control > SNMP > User

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
User Information	Note: Use the username and password of the login accounts you specify in this screen to create accounts on the SNMP v3 manager.
Username	Specify the username of a login account on the Switch.
Security Level	<p>Select whether you want to implement authentication and/or encryption for SNMP communication from this user. Choose:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>noauth</b> -to use the username as the password string to send to the SNMP manager. This is equivalent to the Get, Set and Trap Community in SNMP v2c. This is the lowest security level.</li> <li>• <b>auth</b> - to implement an authentication algorithm for SNMP messages sent by this user.</li> <li>• <b>priv</b> - to implement authentication and encryption for SNMP messages sent by this user. This is the highest security level.</li> </ul> <p>Note: The settings on the SNMP manager must be set at the same security level or higher than the security level settings on the Switch.</p>
Authentication	Select an authentication algorithm. <b>MD5</b> (Message Digest 5) and <b>SHA</b> (Secure Hash Algorithm) are hash algorithms used to authenticate SNMP data. SHA authentication is generally considered stronger than MD5, but is slower.
Password	Enter the password of up to 32 ASCII characters for SNMP user authentication.
Privacy	<p>Specify the encryption method for SNMP communication from this user. You can choose one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>DES</b> - Data Encryption Standard is a widely used (but breakable) method of data encryption. It applies a 56-bit key to each 64-bit block of data.</li> <li>• <b>AES</b> - Advanced Encryption Standard is another method for data encryption that also uses a secret key. AES applies a 128-bit key to 128-bit blocks of data.</li> </ul>
Password	Enter the password of up to 32 ASCII characters for encrypting SNMP packets.
Group	<p>SNMP v3 adopts the concept of View-based Access Control Model (VACM) group. SNMP managers in one group are assigned common access rights to MIBs. Specify in which SNMP group this user is.</p> <p><b>admin</b> - Members of this group can perform all types of system configuration, including the management of administrator accounts.</p> <p><b>readwrite</b> - Members of this group have read and write rights, meaning that the user can create and edit the MIBs on the Switch, except the user account and AAA configuration.</p> <p><b>readonly</b> - Members of this group have read rights only, meaning the user can collect information from the Switch.</p>
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to insert the entry in the summary table below and save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to reset the fields to your previous configuration.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to reset the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is a read-only number identifying a login account on the Switch. Click on an index number to view more details and edit an existing account.
Username	This field displays the username of a login account on the Switch.
Security Level	This field displays whether you want to implement authentication and/or encryption for SNMP communication with this user.
Authentication	This field displays the authentication algorithm used for SNMP communication with this user.
Privacy	This field displays the encryption method used for SNMP communication with this user.

**Table 134** Management > Access Control > SNMP > User (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Group	This field displays the SNMP group to which this user belongs.
Delete	Click <b>Delete</b> to remove the selected entry from the summary table.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 39.4 Setting Up Login Accounts

Up to five people (one administrator and four non-administrators) may access the Switch via web configurator at any one time.

- An administrator is someone who can both view and configure Switch changes. The username for the Administrator is always **admin**. The default administrator password is **1234**.

Note: It is highly recommended that you change the default administrator password (**1234**).

- A non-administrator (username is something other than **admin**) is someone who can view but not configure Switch settings.

Click **Management > Access Control > Logins** to view the screen as shown next.

**Figure 183** Management > Access Control > Logins

**Logins** [Access Control](#)

Administrator

Old Password

New Password

Retype to confirm

Please record your new password whenever you change it. The system will lock you out if you have forgotten your password.

**Edit Logins**

Login	User Name	Password	Retype to confirm
1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
4	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 135** Management > Access Control > Logins

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Administrator	This is the default administrator account with the “admin” user name. You cannot change the default administrator user name. Only the administrator has read/write access.
Old Password	Type the existing system password ( <b>1234</b> is the default password when shipped).
New Password	Enter your new system password.
Retype to confirm	Retype your new system password for confirmation
Edit Logins	You may configure passwords for up to four users. These users have read-only access. You can give users higher privileges via the CLI. For more information on assigning privileges see the Ethernet Switch CLI Reference Guide.
User Name	Set a user name (up to 32 ASCII characters long).
Password	Enter your new system password.
Retype to confirm	Retype your new system password for confirmation
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 39.5 SSH Overview

Unlike Telnet or FTP, which transmit data in clear text, SSH (Secure Shell) is a secure communication protocol that combines authentication and data encryption to provide secure encrypted communication between two hosts over an unsecured network.

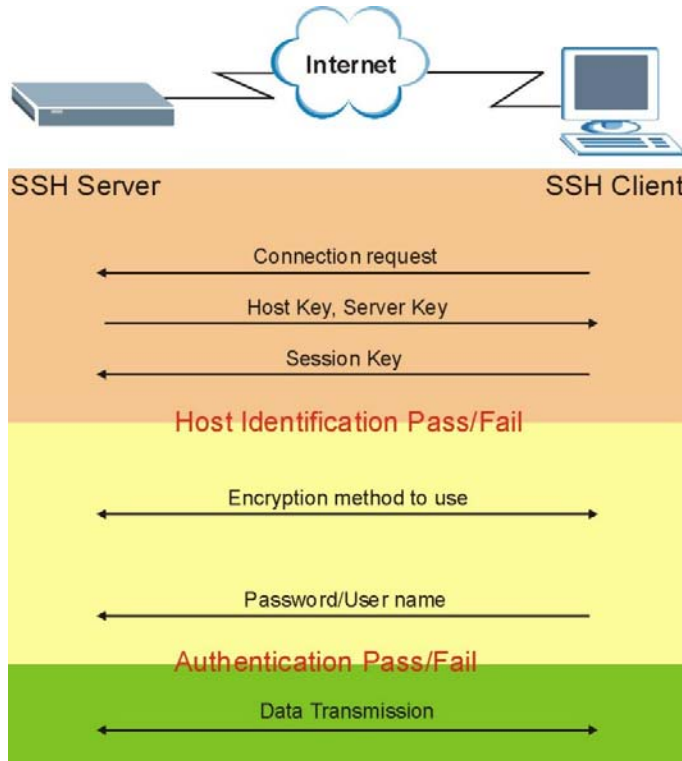
**Figure 184** SSH Communication Example



## 39.6 How SSH works

The following table summarizes how a secure connection is established between two remote hosts.

**Figure 185** How SSH Works



### 1 Host Identification

The SSH client sends a connection request to the SSH server. The server identifies itself with a host key. The client encrypts a randomly generated session key with the host key and server key and sends the result back to the server.

The client automatically saves any new server public keys. In subsequent connections, the server public key is checked against the saved version on the client computer.

### 2 Encryption Method

Once the identification is verified, both the client and server must agree on the type of encryption method to use.

### 3 Authentication and Data Transmission

After the identification is verified and data encryption activated, a secure tunnel is established between the client and the server. The client then sends its authentication information (user name and password) to the server to log in to the server.

## 39.7 SSH Implementation on the Switch

Your Switch supports SSH version 2 using RSA authentication and three encryption methods (DES, 3DES and Blowfish). The SSH server is implemented on the Switch for remote management and file transfer on port 22. Only one SSH connection is allowed at a time.

### 39.7.1 Requirements for Using SSH

You must install an SSH client program on a client computer (Windows or Linux operating system) that is used to connect to the Switch over SSH.

## 39.8 Introduction to HTTPS

HTTPS (HyperText Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer, or HTTP over SSL) is a web protocol that encrypts and decrypts web pages. Secure Socket Layer (SSL) is an application-level protocol that enables secure transactions of data by ensuring confidentiality (an unauthorized party cannot read the transferred data), authentication (one party can identify the other party) and data integrity (you know if data has been changed).

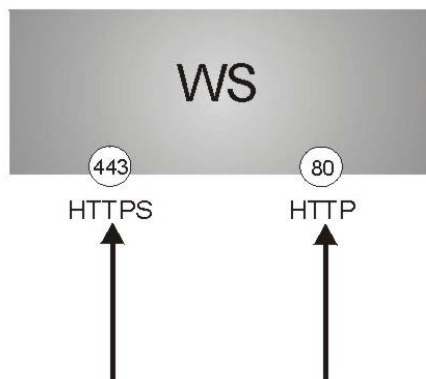
It relies upon certificates, public keys, and private keys.

HTTPS on the Switch is used so that you may securely access the Switch using the web configurator. The SSL protocol specifies that the SSL server (the Switch) must always authenticate itself to the SSL client (the computer which requests the HTTPS connection with the Switch), whereas the SSL client only should authenticate itself when the SSL server requires it to do so. Authenticating client certificates is optional and if selected means the SSL-client must send the Switch a certificate. You must apply for a certificate for the browser from a CA that is a trusted CA on the Switch.

Please refer to the following figure.

- 1 HTTPS connection requests from an SSL-aware web browser go to port 443 (by default) on the Switch's WS (web server).
- 2 HTTP connection requests from a web browser go to port 80 (by default) on the Switch's WS (web server).

**Figure 186** HTTPS Implementation





Note: If you disable **HTTP** in the **Service Access Control** screen, then the Switch blocks all HTTP connection attempts.

## 39.9 HTTPS Example

If you haven't changed the default HTTPS port on the Switch, then in your browser enter "https:// Switch IP Address/" as the web site address where "Switch IP Address" is the IP address or domain name of the Switch you wish to access.

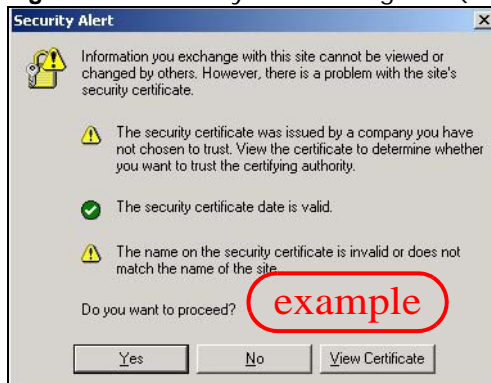
### 39.9.1 Internet Explorer Warning Messages

#### 39.9.1.1 Internet Explorer 6

When you attempt to access the Switch HTTPS server, a Windows dialog box pops up asking if you trust the server certificate.

You see the following **Security Alert** screen in Internet Explorer. Select **Yes** to proceed to the web configurator login screen; if you select **No**, then web configurator access is blocked.

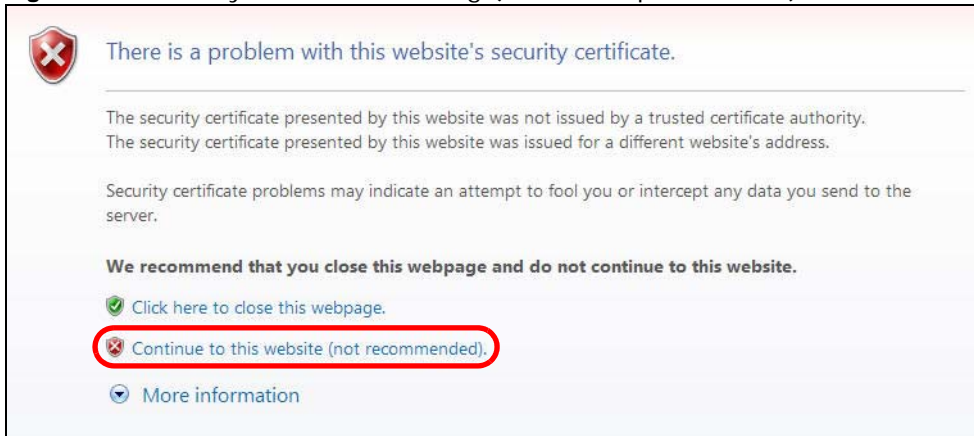
**Figure 187** Security Alert Dialog Box (Internet Explorer 6)



### 39.9.1.2 Internet Explorer 7 or 8

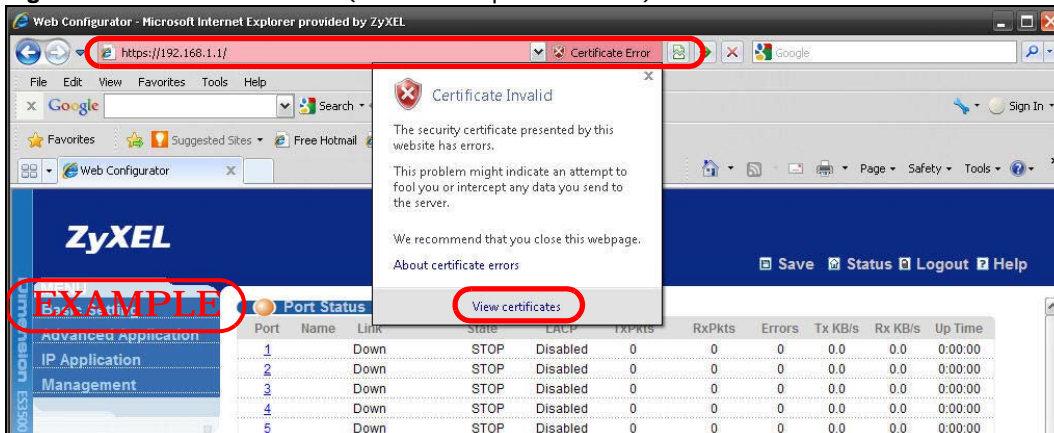
When you attempt to access the Switch HTTPS server, a screen with the message "There is a problem with this website's security certificate." may display. If that is the case, click **Continue to this website (not recommended)** to proceed to the web configurator login screen.

**Figure 188** Security Certificate Warning (Internet Explorer 7 or 8)



After you log in, you will see the red address bar with the message **Certificate Error**. Click on **Certificate Error** next to the address bar and click **View certificates**.

**Figure 189** Certificate Error (Internet Explorer 7 or 8)



Click **Install Certificate...** and follow the on-screen instructions to install the certificate in your browser.

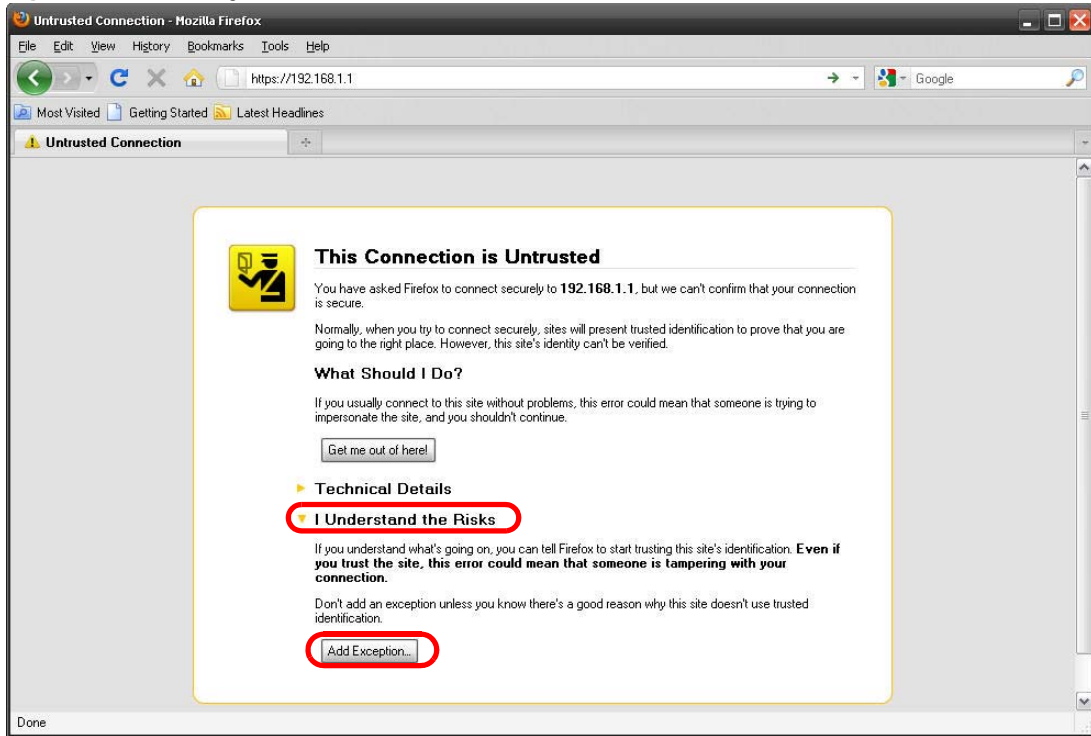
**Figure 190** Certificate (Internet Explorer 7 or 8)



## 39.9.2 Mozilla Firefox Warning Messages

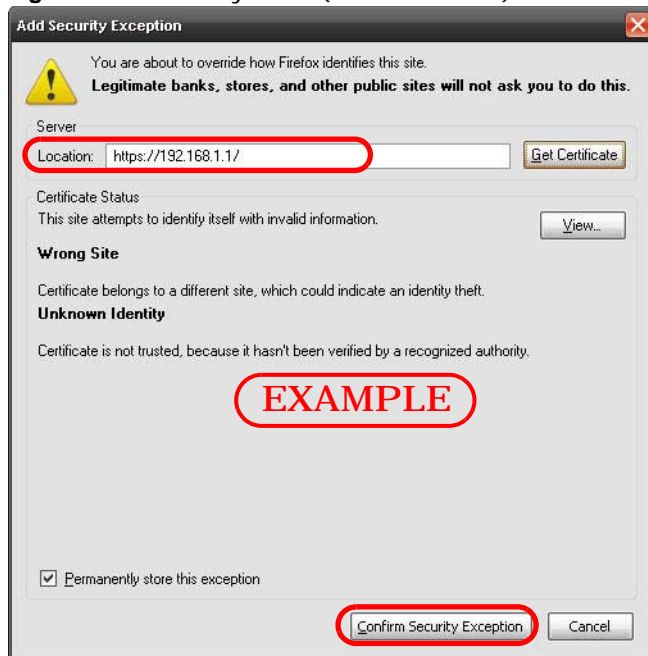
When you attempt to access the Switch HTTPS server, a **This Connection is Untrusted** screen may display. If that is the case, click **I Understand the Risks** and then the **Add Exception...** button.

**Figure 191** Security Alert (Mozilla Firefox)



Confirm the HTTPS server URL matches. Click **Confirm Security Exception** to proceed to the web configurator login screen.

**Figure 192** Security Alert (Mozilla Firefox)

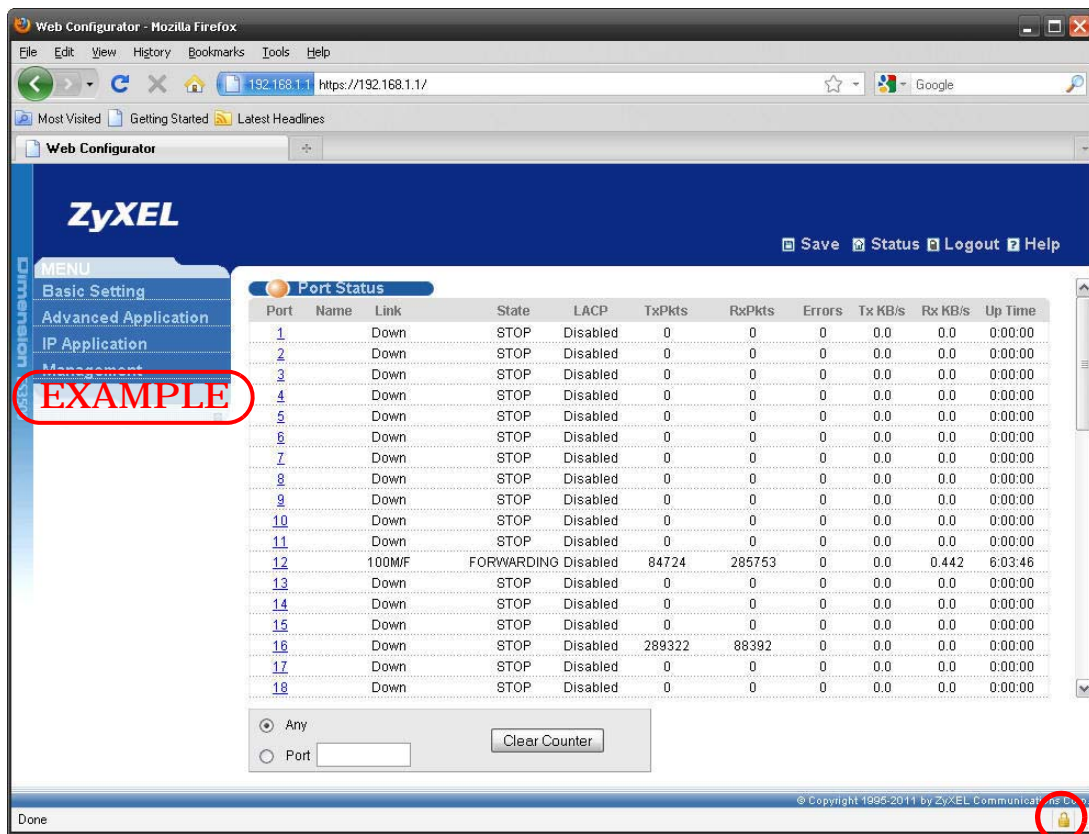


### 39.9.3 The Main Screen

After you accept the certificate and enter the login username and password, the Switch main screen appears. The lock displayed in the bottom right of the browser status bar (in Internet Explorer 6 or

Mozilla Firefox) or next to the address bar (in Internet Explorer 7 or 8) denotes a secure connection.

**Figure 193** Example: Lock Denoting a Secure Connection



## 39.10 Service Port Access Control

Service Access Control allows you to decide what services you may use to access the Switch. You may also change the default service port and configure "trusted computer(s)" for each service in

the **Remote Management** screen (discussed later). Click **Management > Access Control > Service Access Control** to view the screen as shown.

**Figure 194** Management > Access Control > Service Access Control

Services	Active	Service Port	Timeout
Telnet	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	23	
SSH	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	22	
FTP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	21	
HTTP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	80	3 Minutes
HTTPS	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	443	
ICMP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		
SNMP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the fields in this screen.

**Table 136** Management > Access Control > Service Access Control

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Services	Services you may use to access the Switch are listed here.
Active	Select this option for the corresponding services that you want to allow to access the Switch.
Service Port	For Telnet, SSH, FTP, HTTP or HTTPS services, you may change the default service port by typing the new port number in the <b>Server Port</b> field. If you change the default port number then you will have to let people (who wish to use the service) know the new port number for that service.
Timeout	Type how many minutes a management session (via the web configurator) can be left idle before the session times out. After it times out you have to log in with your password again. Very long idle timeouts may have security risks.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 39.11 Remote Management

Click **Management > Access Control > Remote Management** to view the screen as shown next.

You can specify a group of one or more “trusted computers” from which an administrator may use a service to manage the Switch. Click **Access Control** to return to the **Access Control** screen.

**Figure 195** Management > Access Control > Remote Management

Entry	Active	Start Address	End Address	Telnet	FTP	HTTP	ICMP	SNMP	SSH	HTTPS
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
13	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
14	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
15	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
16	<input type="checkbox"/>	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Apply Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 137** Management > Access Control > Remote Management

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Entry	This is the client set index number. A “client set” is a group of one or more “trusted computers” from which an administrator may use a service to manage the Switch.
Active	Select this check box to activate this secured client set. Clear the check box if you wish to temporarily disable the set without deleting it.
Start Address End Address	Configure the IP address range of trusted computers from which you can manage this Switch.  The Switch checks if the client IP address of a computer requesting a service or protocol matches the range set here. The Switch immediately disconnects the session if it does not match.
Telnet/FTP/HTTP/ICMP/ SNMP/SSH/HTTPS	Select services that may be used for managing the Switch from the specified trusted computers.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.



## Diagnostic

This chapter explains the **Diagnostic** screen.

### 40.1 Diagnostic

Click **Management** > **Diagnostic** in the navigation panel to open this screen. Use this screen to check system logs, ping IP addresses or perform port tests.

**Figure 196** Management > Diagnostic

The screenshot shows the 'Diagnostic' screen with a title bar. Below the title bar is a multi-line text box containing the following text:

```
Resolving 192.168.1.23 ... 192.168.1.23
Reply from 192.168.1.23
Reply from 192.168.1.23
Reply from 192.168.1.23
Ping Host Successful
```

Below the text box are three sections:

- System Log:** Includes 'Display' and 'Clear' buttons.
- IP Ping:** Includes an 'IP Address' input field and a 'Ping' button.
- Ethernet Port Test:** Includes a 'Port' input field with the value '1' and a 'Port Test' button.

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 138** Management > Diagnostic

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
System Log	Click <b>Display</b> to display a log of events in the multi-line text box. Click <b>Clear</b> to empty the text box and reset the syslog entry.
IP Ping	Type the IP address of a device that you want to ping in order to test a connection. Click <b>Ping</b> to have the Switch ping the IP address (in the field to the left).
Ethernet Port Test	Enter a port number and click <b>Port Test</b> to perform an internal loopback test.

This chapter explains the syslog screens.

## 41.1 Syslog Overview

The syslog protocol allows devices to send event notification messages across an IP network to syslog servers that collect the event messages. A syslog-enabled device can generate a syslog message and send it to a syslog server.

Syslog is defined in RFC 3164. The RFC defines the packet format, content and system log related information of syslog messages. Each syslog message has a facility and severity level. The syslog facility identifies a file in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for details. The following table describes the syslog severity levels.

**Table 139** Syslog Severity Levels

CODE	SEVERITY
0	Emergency: The system is unusable.
1	Alert: Action must be taken immediately.
2	Critical: The system condition is critical.
3	Error: There is an error condition on the system.
4	Warning: There is a warning condition on the system.
5	Notice: There is a normal but significant condition on the system.
6	Informational: The syslog contains an informational message.
7	Debug: The message is intended for debug-level purposes.

## 41.2 Syslog Setup

Click **Management** > **Syslog** in the navigation panel to display this screen. The syslog feature sends logs to an external syslog server. Use this screen to configure the device's system logging settings.

**Figure 197** Management > Syslog

Logging type	Active	Facility
System	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	local use 0
Interface	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	local use 0
Switch	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	local use 0
AAA	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	local use 0
IP	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	local use 0

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 140** Management > Syslog

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Syslog	Select <b>Active</b> to turn on syslog (system logging) and then configure the syslog setting
Logging Type	This column displays the names of the categories of logs that the device can generate.
Active	Select this option to set the device to generate logs for the corresponding category.
Facility	The log facility allows you to send logs to different files in the syslog server. Refer to the documentation of your syslog program for more details.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## 41.3 Syslog Server Setup

Click **Management > Syslog > Syslog Server Setup** to view the screen as shown next. Use this screen to configure a list of external syslog servers.

**Figure 198** Management > Syslog > Syslog Server Setup

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 141** Management > Syslog > Syslog Server Setup

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Active	Select this check box to have the device send logs to this syslog server. Clear the check box if you want to create a syslog server entry but not have the device send logs to it (you can edit the entry later).
Server Address	Enter the IP address of the syslog server.
Log Level	Select the severity level(s) of the logs that you want the device to send to this syslog server. The lower the number, the more critical the logs are.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clear	Click <b>Clear</b> to return the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the index number of a syslog server entry. Click this number to edit the entry.
Active	This field displays <b>Yes</b> if the device is to send logs to the syslog server. <b>No</b> displays if the device is not to send logs to the syslog server.
IP Address	This field displays the IP address of the syslog server.
Log Level	This field displays the severity level of the logs that the device is to send to this syslog server.
Delete	Select an entry's <b>Delete</b> check box and click <b>Delete</b> to remove the entry.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

# Cluster Management

This chapter introduces cluster management.

## 42.1 Cluster Management Status Overview

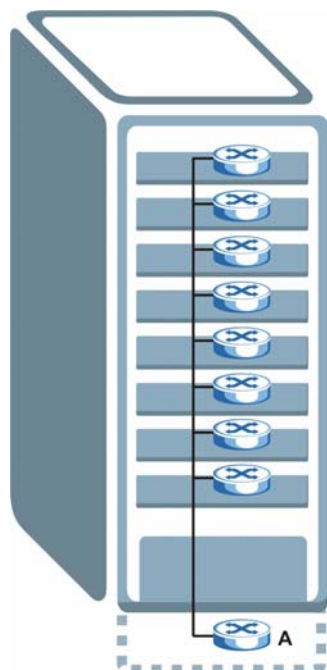
Cluster Management allows you to manage switches through one Switch, called the cluster manager. The switches must be directly connected and be in the same VLAN group so as to be able to communicate with one another.

**Table 142** ZyXEL Clustering Management Specifications

Maximum number of cluster members	24
Cluster Member Models	Must be compatible with ZyXEL cluster management implementation.
Cluster Manager	The switch through which you manage the cluster member switches.
Cluster Members	The switches being managed by the cluster manager switch.

In the following example, switch **A** in the basement is the cluster manager and the other switches on the upper floors of the building are cluster members.

**Figure 199** Clustering Application Example



## 42.2 Cluster Management Status

Click **Management** > **Cluster Management** in the navigation panel to display the following screen.

Note: A cluster can only have one manager.

**Figure 200** Management > Cluster Management: Status

Clustering Management Status

Configuration

Status

Manager

Manager

00:13:49:00:00:02

The Number Of Member = 1

Index

MacAddr

Name

Model

Status

1

00:a0:c5:01:23:46

GS-2024

Online

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 143** Management > Cluster Management: Status

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Status	<p>This field displays the role of this Switch within the cluster.</p> <p><b>Manager</b></p> <p><b>Member</b> (you see this if you access this screen in the cluster member switch directly and not via the cluster manager)</p> <p><b>None</b> (neither a manager nor a member of a cluster)</p>
Manager	This field displays the cluster manager switch's hardware MAC address.
The Number of Member	This field displays the number of switches that make up this cluster. The following fields describe the cluster member switches.
Index	You can manage cluster member switches via the cluster manager switch. Each number in the <b>Index</b> column is a hyperlink leading to the cluster member switch's web configurator (see <a href="#">Figure 201 on page 323</a> ).
MacAddr	This is the cluster member switch's hardware MAC address.
Name	This is the cluster member switch's <b>System Name</b> .
Model	This field displays the model name.
Status	<p>This field displays:</p> <p><b>Online</b> (the cluster member switch is accessible)</p> <p><b>Error</b> (for example the cluster member switch password was changed or the switch was set as the manager and so left the member list, etc.)</p> <p><b>Offline</b> (the switch is disconnected - <b>Offline</b> shows approximately 1.5 minutes after the link between cluster member and manager goes down)</p>

## 42.2.1 Cluster Member Switch Management

Go to the **Clustering Management Status** screen of the cluster manager switch and then select an **Index** hyperlink from the list of members to go to that cluster member switch's web configurator home page. This cluster member web configurator home page and the home page that you'd see if you accessed it directly are different.

**Figure 201** Cluster Management: Cluster Member Web Configurator Screen



### 42.2.1.1 Uploading Firmware to a Cluster Member Switch

You can use FTP to upload firmware to a cluster member switch through the cluster manager switch as shown in the following example.

**Figure 202** Example: Uploading Firmware to a Cluster Member Switch

```
C:\>ftp 192.168.1.1
Connected to 192.168.1.1.
220 Switch FTP version 1.0 ready at Thu Jan  1 00:58:46 1970
User (192.168.0.1:(none)): admin
331 Enter PASS command
Password:
230 Logged in
ftp> ls
200 Port command okay
150 Opening data connection for LIST
--w--w--w-  1 owner   group      3042210 Jul  01 12:00 ras
-rw-rw-rw-  1 owner   group      393216 Jul  01 12:00 config
--w--w--w-  1 owner   group          0 Jul  01 12:00 fw-00-a0-c5-01-23-46
-rw-rw-rw-  1 owner   group          0 Jul  01 12:00 config-00-a0-c5-01-23-46
226 File sent OK
ftp: 297 bytes received in 0.00Seconds 297000.00Kbytes/sec.
ftp> bin
200 Type I OK
ftp> put 400AABR0B2.bin fw-00-a0-c5-01-23-46
200 Port command okay
150 Opening data connection for STOR fw-00-a0-c5-01-23-46
226 File received OK
ftp: 262144 bytes sent in 0.63Seconds 415.44Kbytes/sec.
ftp>
```

The following table explains some of the FTP parameters.

**Table 144** FTP Upload to Cluster Member Example

FTP PARAMETER	DESCRIPTION
User	Enter "admin".
Password	The web configurator password default is 1234.
ls	Enter this command to list the name of cluster member switch's firmware and configuration file.
400AABR0B2.bin	This is the name of the firmware file you want to upload to the cluster member switch.
fw-00-a0-c5-01-23-46	This is the cluster member switch's firmware name as seen in the cluster manager switch.
config-00-a0-c5-01-23-46	This is the cluster member switch's configuration file name as seen in the cluster manager switch.



## 42.3 Clustering Management Configuration

Use this screen to configure clustering management. Click **Management > Cluster Management > Configuration** to display the next screen.

**Figure 203** Management > Cluster Management > Configuration

**Clustering Management Configuration** [Status](#)

**Clustering Manager:**

Active ☒

Name

VID

**Clustering Candidate:**


List

Password


Index	MacAddr	Name	Model	Remove
<input type="button" value="Remove"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>				

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 145** Management > Cluster Management > Configuration

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Clustering Manager	
Active	Select <b>Active</b> to have this Switch become the cluster manager switch. A cluster can only have one manager. Other (directly connected) switches that are set to be cluster managers will not be visible in the <b>Clustering Candidates</b> list. If a switch that was previously a cluster member is later set to become a cluster manager, then its <b>Status</b> is displayed as <b>Error</b> in the <b>Cluster Management Status</b> screen and a warning icon (  ) appears in the member summary list below.
Name	Type a name to identify the <b>Clustering Manager</b> . You may use up to 32 printable characters (spaces are allowed).

**Table 145** Management > Cluster Management > Configuration (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
VID	This is the VLAN ID and is only applicable if the Switch is set to <b>802.1Q</b> VLAN. All switches must be directly connected and in the same VLAN group to belong to the same cluster. Switches that are not in the same VLAN group are not visible in the <b>Clustering Candidates</b> list. This field is ignored if the <b>Clustering Manager</b> is using <b>Port-based</b> VLAN.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Clustering Candidate	The following fields relate to the switches that are potential cluster members.
List	A list of suitable candidates found by auto-discovery is shown here. The switches must be directly connected. Directly connected switches that are set to be cluster managers will not be visible in the <b>Clustering Candidate</b> list. Switches that are not in the same management VLAN group will not be visible in the <b>Clustering Candidate</b> list.
Password	Each cluster member's password is its web configurator password. Select a member in the <b>Clustering Candidate</b> list and then enter its web configurator password. If that switch administrator changes the web configurator password afterwards, then it cannot be managed from the <b>Cluster Manager</b> . Its <b>Status</b> is displayed as <b>Error</b> in the <b>Cluster Management Status</b> screen and a warning icon (  ) appears in the member summary list below.  If multiple devices have the same password then hold [SHIFT] and click those switches to select them. Then enter their common web configurator password.
Add	Click <b>Add</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.
Refresh	Click <b>Refresh</b> to perform auto-discovery again to list potential cluster members.
The next summary table shows the information for the clustering members configured.	
Index	This is the index number of a cluster member switch.
MacAddr	This is the cluster member switch's hardware MAC address.
Name	This is the cluster member switch's <b>System Name</b> .
Model	This is the cluster member switch's model name.
Remove	Select this checkbox and then click the <b>Remove</b> button to remove a cluster member switch from the cluster.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## MAC Table

This chapter introduces the **MAC Table** screen.

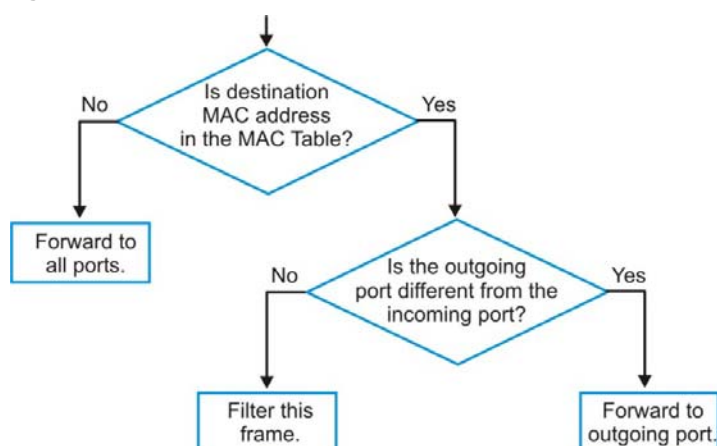
### 43.1 MAC Table Overview

The **MAC Table** screen (a MAC table is also known as a filtering database) shows how frames are forwarded or filtered across the Switch's ports. It shows what device MAC address, belonging to what VLAN group (if any) is forwarded to which port(s) and whether the MAC address is dynamic (learned by the Switch) or static (manually entered in the **Static MAC Forwarding** screen).

The Switch uses the MAC table to determine how to forward frames. See the following figure.

- 1 The Switch examines a received frame and learns the port on which this source MAC address came.
- 2 The Switch checks to see if the frame's destination MAC address matches a source MAC address already learned in the MAC table.
  - If the Switch has already learned the port for this MAC address, then it forwards the frame to that port.
  - If the Switch has not already learned the port for this MAC address, then the frame is flooded to all ports. Too much port flooding leads to network congestion.
  - If the Switch has already learned the port for this MAC address, but the destination port is the same as the port it came in on, then it filters the frame.

**Figure 204** MAC Table Flowchart



## 43.2 Viewing the MAC Table

Click **Management > MAC Table** in the navigation panel to display the following screen.

**Figure 205** Management > MAC Table

MAC table

Condition

All

Static

MAC

VID

Port

Sort by

MAC

Transfer Type

Dynamic to MAC forwarding

Dynamic to MAC filtering

Search

Transfer

Cancel

Index	MAC Address	VID	Port	Type
1	00:00:aa:10:01:73	1	27	dynamic
2	00:00:e8:7c:14:80	1	28	dynamic
3	00:02:e3:56:16:9d	1	27	dynamic
4	00:02:e3:57:ea:1c	1	27	dynamic
5	00:04:80:9b:78:00	1	27	dynamic
6	00:0d:88:ca:af:b2	1	27	dynamic
7	00:0e:7b:e4:17:19	1	27	dynamic
8	00:0f:b0:80:e7:56	1	27	dynamic

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 146** Management > MAC Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Condition	<p>Select one of the buttons and click <b>Search</b> to only display the data which matches the criteria you specified.</p> <p>Select <b>All</b> to display any entry in the MAC table of the Switch.</p> <p>Select <b>Static</b> to display the MAC entries manually configured on the Switch.</p> <p>Select <b>MAC</b> and enter a MAC address in the field provided to display a specified MAC entry.</p> <p>Select <b>VID</b> and enter a VLAN ID in the field provided to display the MAC entries belonging to the specified VLAN.</p> <p>Select <b>Port</b> and enter a port number in the field provided to display the MAC addresses which are forwarded on the specified port.</p>
Sort by	<p>Define how the Switch displays and arranges the data in the summary table below.</p> <p>Select <b>MAC</b> to display and arrange the data according to MAC address.</p> <p>Select <b>VID</b> to display and arrange the data according to VLAN group.</p> <p>Select <b>PORT</b> to display and arrange the data according to port number.</p>

**Table 146** Management > MAC Table (continued)

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Transfer Type	<p>Select <b>Dynamic to MAC forwarding</b> and click the <b>Transfer</b> button to change all dynamically learned MAC address entries in the summary table below into static entries. They also display in the <b>Static MAC Forwarding</b> screen.</p> <p>Select <b>Dynamic to MAC filtering</b> and click the <b>Transfer</b> button to change all dynamically learned MAC address entries in the summary table below into MAC filtering entries. These entries will then display only in the <b>Filtering</b> screen and the default filtering action is <b>Discard source</b>.</p>
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to change the fields back to their last saved values.
Index	This is the incoming frame index number.
MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the device from which this incoming frame came.
VID	This is the VLAN group to which this frame belongs.
Port	This is the port where the above MAC address is forwarded.
Type	This shows whether the MAC address is <b>dynamic</b> (learned by the Switch) or <b>static</b> (manually entered in the <b>Static MAC Forwarding</b> screen).

## ARP Table

This chapter introduces ARP Table.

### 44.1 ARP Table Overview

Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) is a protocol for mapping an Internet Protocol address (IP address) to a physical machine address, also known as a Media Access Control or MAC address, on the local area network.

An IP (version 4) address is 32 bits long. In an Ethernet LAN, MAC addresses are 48 bits long. The ARP Table maintains an association between each MAC address and its corresponding IP address.

#### 44.1.1 How ARP Works

When an incoming packet destined for a host device on a local area network arrives at the Switch, the Switch's ARP program looks in the ARP Table and, if it finds the address, sends it to the device.

If no entry is found for the IP address, ARP broadcasts the request to all the devices on the LAN. The Switch fills in its own MAC and IP address in the sender address fields, and puts the known IP address of the target in the target IP address field. In addition, the Switch puts all ones in the target MAC field (FF.FF.FF.FF.FF.FF is the Ethernet broadcast address). The replying device (which is either the IP address of the device being sought or the router that knows the way) replaces the broadcast address with the target's MAC address, swaps the sender and target pairs, and unicasts the answer directly back to the requesting machine. ARP updates the ARP Table for future reference and then sends the packet to the MAC address that replied.

## 44.2 The ARP Table Screen

Click **Management > ARP Table** in the navigation panel to open the following screen. Use the ARP table to view IP-to-MAC address mapping(s) and remove specific dynamic ARP entries.

**Figure 206** Management > ARP Table

Index	IP Address	MAC Address	VID	Port	Type
1	172.16.13.10	00:21:85:0c:44:4b	1	24	dynamic
2	172.16.13.255	ff.ff.ff.ff.ff	1	CPU	static
3	192.168.1.255	ff.ff.ff.ff.ff	1	CPU	static

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 147** Management > ARP Table

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Condition	Specify how you want the Switch to remove ARP entries when you click <b>Flush</b> .  Select <b>All</b> to remove all of the dynamic entries from the ARP table.  Select <b>IP Address</b> and enter an IP address to remove the dynamic entries learned with the specified IP address.  Select <b>Port</b> and enter a port number to remove the dynamic entries learned on the specified port.
Flush	Click <b>Flush</b> to remove the ARP entries according to the condition you specified.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to return the fields to the factory defaults.
Index	This is the ARP table entry number.
IP Address	This is the learned IP address of a device connected to a Switch port with the corresponding MAC address below.
MAC Address	This is the MAC address of the device with the corresponding IP address above.
VID	This field displays the VLAN to which the device belongs.
Port	This field displays the port to which the device connects. <b>CPU</b> means this learned IP address is the Switch's management IP address.
Type	This shows whether the MAC address is dynamic (learned by the Switch) or static (manually entered in the <b>Static MAC Forwarding</b> screen).

# Configure Clone

This chapter shows you how you can copy the settings of one port onto other ports.

## 45.1 Configure Clone

Cloning allows you to copy the basic and advanced settings from a source port to a destination port or ports. Click **Management** > **Configure Clone** to open the following screen.

Note: Only the ES3500-24HP supports Power over Ethernet.

Note: The ES3500-8PD supports Green Ethernet completely. The ES3500-24 only supports EEE.



**Figure 207** Management > Configure Clone

**Configure Clone**

Source      Destination

Port

**Port Features**

**Basic Setting**

- ☐ Active
- ☐ Name
- ☐ Speed / Duplex
- ☐ Flow Control
- ☐ Intrusion Lock

**Advanced Application**

- ☐ VLAN1q
- ☐ VLAN1q Member
- ☐ Bandwidth Control
- ☐ VLAN Stacking
- ☐ Port Security
- ☐ Broadcast Storm Control
- ☐ Mirroring
- ☐ Port Authentication
- ☐ Queuing Method
- ☐ IGMP Filtering
- ☐ Spanning Tree Protocol
- ☐ Multiple Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol
- ☐ Protocol-based VLAN
- ☐ Port-based VLAN
- ☐ MAC Authentication
- ☐ Two-rate three color marker
- ☐ Ethernet OAM
- ☐ Loop Guard
- ☐ ARP Inspection
- ☐ DHCP Snooping
- ☐ VLAN Mapping
- ☐ Layer 2 Protocol Tunneling
- ☐ PPPoE IA
- ☐ CPU Protection
- ☐ Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol
- ☐ Power over Ethernet

Apply    Cancel

The following table describes the labels in this screen.

**Table 148** Management > Configure Clone

LABEL	DESCRIPTION
Source/ Destination  Port	<p>Enter the source port under the <b>Source</b> label. This port's attributes are copied.</p> <p>Enter the destination port or ports under the <b>Destination</b> label. These are the ports which are going to have the same attributes as the source port. You can enter individual ports separated by a comma or a range of ports by using a dash.</p> <p>Example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>2, 4, 6</b> indicates that ports 2, 4 and 6 are the destination ports.</li> <li>• <b>2-6</b> indicates that ports 2 through 6 are the destination ports.</li> </ul>
Basic Setting	Select which port settings (you configured in the <b>Basic Setting</b> menus) should be copied to the destination port(s).
Advanced Application	Select which port settings (you configured in the <b>Advanced Application</b> menus) should be copied to the destination ports.
Apply	Click <b>Apply</b> to save your changes to the Switch's run-time memory. The Switch loses these changes if it is turned off or loses power, so use the <b>Save</b> link on the top navigation panel to save your changes to the non-volatile memory when you are done configuring.
Cancel	Click <b>Cancel</b> to begin configuring this screen afresh.

## Troubleshooting

This chapter offers some suggestions to solve problems you might encounter. The potential problems are divided into the following categories.

- [Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs](#)
- [Switch Access and Login](#)
- [Switch Configuration](#)

### 46.1 Power, Hardware Connections, and LEDs

---

The Switch does not turn on. None of the LEDs turn on.

---

- 1 Make sure the Switch is turned on.
- 2 Make sure you are using the power adaptor or cord included with the Switch. For the ES3500-8PD, make sure the upstream PSE is connected to port 9 and the PD LED is on.
- 3 Make sure the power adaptor or cord is connected to the Switch and plugged in to an appropriate power source. Make sure the power source is turned on.
- 4 Turn the Switch off and on.
- 5 Disconnect and re-connect the power cord to the Switch.
- 6 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

---

The **ALM** LED is on.

---

- 1 Turn the Switch off and on.
- 2 Disconnect and re-connect the power adaptor or cord to the Switch.
- 3 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

---

One of the LEDs does not behave as expected.

---

- 1 Make sure you understand the normal behavior of the LED. See [Section 3.2 on page 33](#).
- 2 Check the hardware connections. See [Section 3.1 on page 28](#).
- 3 Inspect your cables for damage. Contact the vendor to replace any damaged cables.
- 4 Turn the Switch off and on.
- 5 Disconnect and re-connect the power cord to the Switch.
- 6 If the problem continues, contact the vendor.

---

A device that you expect to be powered via Ethernet doesn't receive power over Ethernet.

---

- 1 Make sure the PoE LED for the port supplying power over Ethernet is on.
- 2 Make sure the Switch port has PD selected so it can supply power over Ethernet. See [Chapter 8 on page 96](#).
- 3 Inspect your Ethernet cables for damage. Replace any damaged cables.
- 4 Check cable lengths.
- 5 Disconnect the device that you expect to be powered via Ethernet and make sure the Switch has enough remaining power to supply the device before re-connecting it. See [Chapter 8 on page 94](#).
- 6 Increase the priority of the port. See [Chapter 8 on page 94](#).

---

A port is cabled correctly, but the port status is down.

---

- 1 Disable Green Ethernet on the port. See [Chapter 34 on page 266](#) for details of how to do this. If the port comes up, then the port at the other end of the link probably doesn't support Green Ethernet. If the port comes up, then try disabling and re-enabling the port again.
- 2 Inspect your Ethernet cables for damage. Replace any damaged cables.
- 3 Check cable lengths.
- 4 Check that the device at the other end of the link is powered on.

## 46.2 Switch Access and Login

---

I forgot the IP address for the Switch.

---

- 1 The default management IP address is **192.168.1.1**.
- 2 Use the console port to log in to the Switch.
- 3 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 4.6 on page 44](#).

---

I forgot the username and/or password.

---

- 1 The default username is **admin** and the default password is **1234**.
- 2 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 4.6 on page 44](#).

---

I cannot see or access the **Login** screen in the web configurator.

---

- 1 Make sure you are using the correct IP address.
  - The default management IP address is [192.168.1.1](#).
  - If you changed the IP address, use the new IP address.
  - If you changed the IP address and have forgotten it, see the troubleshooting suggestions for [I forgot the IP address for the Switch](#).
- 2 Check the hardware connections, and make sure the LEDs are behaving as expected. See [Section 3.2 on page 33](#).
- 3 Make sure your Internet browser does not block pop-up windows and has JavaScripts and Java enabled.
- 4 Make sure your computer is in the same subnet as the Switch. (If you know that there are routers between your computer and the Switch, skip this step.)
- 5 Reset the device to its factory defaults, and try to access the Switch with the default IP address. See [Section 4.6 on page 44](#).
- 6 If the problem continues, contact the vendor, or try one of the advanced suggestions.

### Advanced Suggestions

- Try to access the Switch using another service, such as Telnet. If you can access the Switch, check the remote management settings to find out why the Switch does not respond to HTTP.

---

I can see the **Login** screen, but I cannot log in to the Switch.

---

- 1 Make sure you have entered the user name and password correctly. The default user name is **admin**, and the default password is **1234**. These fields are case-sensitive, so make sure [Caps Lock] is not on.
- 2 You may have exceeded the maximum number of concurrent Telnet sessions. Close other Telnet session(s) or try connecting again later.  
  
Check that you have enabled logins for HTTP or Telnet. If you have configured a secured client IP address, your computer's IP address must match it. Refer to the chapter on access control for details.
- 3 Disconnect and re-connect the cord to the Switch.
- 4 If this does not work, you have to reset the device to its factory defaults. See [Section 4.6 on page 44](#).

---

Pop-up Windows, JavaScripts and Java Permissions

---

In order to use the web configurator you need to allow:

- Web browser pop-up windows from your device.
- JavaScripts (enabled by default).
- Java permissions (enabled by default).

---

I cannot see some of **Advanced Application** submenus at the bottom of the navigation panel.

---

The recommended screen resolution is 1024 by 768 pixels. Adjust the value in your computer and then you should see the rest of **Advanced Application** submenus at the bottom of the navigation panel.

---

There is unauthorized access to my Switch via telnet, HTTP and SSH.

---

Click the **Display** button in the **System Log** field in the **Management > Diagnostic** screen to check for unauthorized access to your Switch. To avoid unauthorized access, configure the secured client setting in the **Management > Access Control > Remote Management** screen for telnet, HTTP and SSH (see [Section 39.11 on page 315](#)). Computers not belonging to the secured client set cannot get permission to access the Switch.

## 46.3 Switch Configuration

---

I lost my configuration settings after I restart the Switch.

---

Make sure you save your configuration into the Switch's nonvolatile memory each time you make changes. Click **Save** at the top right corner of the web configurator to save the configuration permanently. See also [Section 38.3 on page 286](#) for more information about how to save your configuration.







## Common Services

The following table lists some commonly-used services and their associated protocols and port numbers. For a comprehensive list of port numbers, ICMP type/code numbers and services, visit the IANA (Internet Assigned Number Authority) web site.

- **Name:** This is a short, descriptive name for the service. You can use this one or create a different one, if you like.
- **Protocol:** This is the type of IP protocol used by the service. If this is **TCP/UDP**, then the service uses the same port number with TCP and UDP. If this is **User-Defined**, the **Port(s)** is the IP protocol number, not the port number.
- **Port(s):** This value depends on the **Protocol**. Please refer to RFC 1700 for further information about port numbers.
  - If the **Protocol** is **TCP**, **UDP**, or **TCP/UDP**, this is the IP port number.
  - If the **Protocol** is **USER**, this is the IP protocol number.
- **Description:** This is a brief explanation of the applications that use this service or the situations in which this service is used.

**Table 149** Commonly Used Services

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
AH (IPSEC_TUNNEL)	User-Defined	51	The IPSEC AH (Authentication Header) tunneling protocol uses this service.
AIM/New-ICQ	TCP	5190	AOL's Internet Messenger service. It is also used as a listening port by ICQ.
AUTH	TCP	113	Authentication protocol used by some servers.
BGP	TCP	179	Border Gateway Protocol.
BOOTP_CLIENT	UDP	68	DHCP Client.
BOOTP_SERVER	UDP	67	DHCP Server.
CU-SEEME	TCP UDP	7648 24032	A popular videoconferencing solution from White Pines Software.
DNS	TCP/UDP	53	Domain Name Server, a service that matches web names (for example <a href="http://www.zyxel.com">www.zyxel.com</a> ) to IP numbers.
ESP (IPSEC_TUNNEL)	User-Defined	50	The IPSEC ESP (Encapsulation Security Protocol) tunneling protocol uses this service.
FINGER	TCP	79	Finger is a UNIX or Internet related command that can be used to find out if a user is logged on.
FTP	TCP TCP	20 21	File Transfer Program, a program to enable fast transfer of files, including large files that may not be possible by e-mail.

**Table 149** Commonly Used Services (continued)

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
H.323	TCP	1720	NetMeeting uses this protocol.
HTTP	TCP	80	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol - a client/server protocol for the world wide web.
HTTPS	TCP	443	HTTPS is a secured http session often used in e-commerce.
ICMP	User-Defined	1	Internet Control Message Protocol is often used for diagnostic or routing purposes.
ICQ	UDP	4000	This is a popular Internet chat program.
IGMP (MULTICAST)	User-Defined	2	Internet Group Multicast Protocol is used when sending packets to a specific group of hosts.
IKE	UDP	500	The Internet Key Exchange algorithm is used for key distribution and management.
IRC	TCP/UDP	6667	This is another popular Internet chat program.
MSN Messenger	TCP	1863	Microsoft Networks' messenger service uses this protocol.
NEW-ICQ	TCP	5190	An Internet chat program.
NEWS	TCP	144	A protocol for news groups.
NFS	UDP	2049	Network File System - NFS is a client/server distributed file service that provides transparent file sharing for network environments.
NNTP	TCP	119	Network News Transport Protocol is the delivery mechanism for the USENET newsgroup service.
PING	User-Defined	1	Packet Internet Groper is a protocol that sends out ICMP echo requests to test whether or not a remote host is reachable.
POP3	TCP	110	Post Office Protocol version 3 lets a client computer get e-mail from a POP3 server through a temporary connection (TCP/IP or other).
PPTP	TCP	1723	Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol enables secure transfer of data over public networks. This is the control channel.
PPTP_TUNNEL (GRE)	User-Defined	47	PPTP (Point-to-Point Tunneling Protocol) enables secure transfer of data over public networks. This is the data channel.
RCMD	TCP	512	Remote Command Service.
REAL_AUDIO	TCP	7070	A streaming audio service that enables real time sound over the web.
REXEC	TCP	514	Remote Execution Daemon.
RLOGIN	TCP	513	Remote Login.
RTELNET	TCP	107	Remote Telnet.
RTSP	TCP/UDP	554	The Real Time Streaming (media control) Protocol (RTSP) is a remote control for multimedia on the Internet.
SFTP	TCP	115	Simple File Transfer Protocol.

**Table 149** Commonly Used Services (continued)

NAME	PROTOCOL	PORT(S)	DESCRIPTION
SMTP	TCP	25	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol is the message-exchange standard for the Internet. SMTP enables you to move messages from one e-mail server to another.
SNMP	TCP/UDP	161	Simple Network Management Program.
SNMP-TRAPS	TCP/UDP	162	Traps for use with the SNMP (RFC:1215).
SQL-NET	TCP	1521	Structured Query Language is an interface to access data on many different types of database systems, including mainframes, midrange systems, UNIX systems and network servers.
SSH	TCP/UDP	22	Secure Shell Remote Login Program.
STRM WORKS	UDP	1558	Stream Works Protocol.
SYSLOG	UDP	514	Syslog allows you to send system logs to a UNIX server.
TACACS	UDP	49	Login Host Protocol used for (Terminal Access Controller Access Control System).
TELNET	TCP	23	Telnet is the login and terminal emulation protocol common on the Internet and in UNIX environments. It operates over TCP/IP networks. Its primary function is to allow users to log into remote host systems.
TFTP	UDP	69	Trivial File Transfer Protocol is an Internet file transfer protocol similar to FTP, but uses the UDP (User Datagram Protocol) rather than TCP (Transmission Control Protocol).
VDOLIVE	TCP	7000	Another videoconferencing solution.



# Legal Information

## Copyright

Copyright © 2012 by ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

The contents of this publication may not be reproduced in any part or as a whole, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, translated into any language, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, magnetic, optical, chemical, photocopying, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of ZyXEL Communications Corporation.

Published by ZyXEL Communications Corporation. All rights reserved.

## Disclaimer

ZyXEL does not assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any products, or software described herein. Neither does it convey any license under its patent rights nor the patent rights of others. ZyXEL further reserves the right to make changes in any products described herein without notice. This publication is subject to change without notice.

## Trademarks

ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) is a registered trademark of ZyXEL Communications, Inc. Other trademarks mentioned in this publication are used for identification purposes only and may be properties of their respective owners.

## Certifications

### Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Interference Statement

This device complies with Part 15 of FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operations.

### FCC Warning

This device has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital switch, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a commercial environment. This device generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this device in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

### **CE Mark Warning:**

This is a class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

### **Taiwanese BSMI (Bureau of Standards, Metrology and Inspection) A Warning:**

警告使用者  
這是甲類的資訊產品，在居住的環境使用時，  
可能造成射頻干擾，在這種情況下，  
使用者會被要求採取某些適當的對策。

### **Notices**

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT

APPAREIL A LASER DE CLASS 1

PRODUCT COMPLIES WITH 21 CFR 1040.10 AND 1040.11.

PRODUIT CONFORME SELON 21 CFR 1040.10 ET 1040.11.

### **Viewing Certifications**

- 1 Go to <http://www.zyxel.com>.
- 2 Select your product on the ZyXEL home page to go to that product's page.
- 3 Select the certification you wish to view from this page.

### **ZyXEL Limited Warranty**

ZyXEL warrants to the original end user (purchaser) that this product is free from any defects in materials or workmanship for a period of up to two years from the date of purchase. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, ZyXEL will, at its discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components without charge for either parts or labor, and to whatever extent it shall deem necessary to restore the product or components to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal or higher value, and will be solely at the discretion of ZyXEL. This warranty shall not apply if the product has been modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions.

**Note**

Repair or replacement, as provided under this warranty, is the exclusive remedy of the purchaser. This warranty is in lieu of all other warranties, express or implied, including any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular use or purpose. ZyXEL shall in no event be held liable for indirect or consequential damages of any kind to the purchaser.

To obtain the services of this warranty, contact ZyXEL's Service Center for your Return Material Authorization number (RMA). Products must be returned Postage Prepaid. It is recommended that the unit be insured when shipped. Any returned products without proof of purchase or those with an out-dated warranty will be repaired or replaced (at the discretion of ZyXEL) and the customer will be billed for parts and labor. All repaired or replaced products will be shipped by ZyXEL to the corresponding return address, Postage Paid. This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from country to country.

**Registration**

Register your product online to receive e-mail notices of firmware upgrades and information at [www.zyxel.com](http://www.zyxel.com) for global products, or at [www.us.zyxel.com](http://www.us.zyxel.com) for North American products.







# Safety Warnings

- Do NOT use this product near water, for example, in a wet basement or near a swimming pool.
- Do NOT expose your device to dampness, dust or corrosive liquids.
- Do NOT store things on the device.
- Do NOT install, use, or service this device during a thunderstorm. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Connect ONLY suitable accessories to the device.
- Do NOT open the device or unit. Opening or removing covers can expose you to dangerous high voltage points or other risks. ONLY qualified service personnel should service or disassemble this device. Please contact your vendor for further information.
- For continued protection against risk of fire replace only with same type and rating of fuse.
- Make sure to connect the cables to the correct ports.
- Place connecting cables carefully so that no one will step on them or stumble over them.
- Always disconnect all cables from this device before servicing or disassembling.
- Use ONLY an appropriate power adaptor or cord for your device. Connect it to the right supply voltage (for example, 110V AC in North America or 230V AC in Europe).
- Do NOT allow anything to rest on the power adaptor or cord and do NOT place the product where anyone can walk on the power adaptor or cord.
- Do NOT use the device if the power adaptor or cord is damaged as it might cause electrocution.
- If the power adaptor or cord is damaged, remove it from the device and the power source.
- Do NOT attempt to repair the power adaptor or cord. Contact your local vendor to order a new one.
- Do not use the device outside, and make sure all the connections are indoors. There is a remote risk of electric shock from lightning.
- Do NOT obstruct the device ventilation slots, as insufficient airflow may harm your device.

Your product is marked with this symbol, which is known as the WEEE mark. WEEE stands for Waste Electronics and Electrical Equipment. It means that used electrical and electronic products should not be mixed with general waste. Used electrical and electronic equipment should be treated separately.





ENGLISH	DEUTSCH	ESPAÑOL
<b>Green Product Declaration</b> RoHS Directive 2002/95/EC  WEEE Directive 2002/96/EC (WEEE: Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment) 2008/34/EC  Declaration Signature: <i>Raymond Huang</i> Name/Title: Raymond Huang / Quality & Customer Service Division Assistant VP Date (yyyy/mm/dd): 2011/1/24	<b>Green Product Declaration</b> RoHS Directive 2002/95/EC  WEEE Directive 2002/96/EC (WEEE: Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment) 2008/34/EC  Unterschrift des Erklärenden: <i>Raymond Huang</i> Name/Title: Raymond Huang / Quality & Customer Service Division Assistant VP Datum (JJJJ/MM/TT): 2011/1/24	<b>Declaración de Producto Ecológico</b> Directiva RoHS 2002/95/EC  Directiva REEE 2002/96/EC (REEE : Residuos de Equipos Eléctricos y Electrónicos) 2008/34/EC  Firma de declaración: <i>Raymond Huang</i> Nombre/Título: Raymond Huang / Quality & Customer Service Division Assistant VP Fecha (aaaa/mm/dd): 2011/1/24
<b>FRANÇAIS</b> <b>Déclaration de Produit Green</b> Directive RoHS 2002/95/EC  Directive DEEE 2002/96/EC (DEEE : Déchets des Equipements Electriques et Electroniques) 2008/34/EC  Signature de la déclaration : <i>Raymond Huang</i> Nom/Titre : Raymond Huang / Quality & Customer Service Division Assistant VP Date (aaaa/mm/jj) : 2011/1/24	<b>ITALIANO</b> <b>Dichiarazione Green Product</b> Direttiva RoHS 2002/95/CE  Direttiva RAEE 2002/96/CE (RAEE: Rifiuti di Apparecchiature Elettriche ed Elettroniche) 2008/34/EC  Firma dichiarazione: <i>Raymond Huang</i> Nome/titolo: Raymond Huang / Quality & Customer Service Division Assistant VP Data (aaaa/mm/gg): 2011/1/24	<b>NEDERLANDS</b> <b>Productmilieuverklaring</b> RoHS-richtlijn 2002/95/EC  AEEA-richtlijn 2002/96/EC (AEEA: Afgedankte Elektrische en Elektronische Apparaten) 2008/34/EC  Verklaringshandtekening: <i>Raymond Huang</i> Naam/titel: Raymond Huang / Quality & Customer Service Division Assistant VP Datum (jjjj/mm/dd): 2011/1/24
<b>SVENSKA</b> <b>Miljödeklaration</b> RoHS Direktiv 2002/95/EC  WEEE Direktiv 2002/96/EC (WEEE: hantering av elektriskt och elektroniskt avfall) 2008/34/EC  Deklaration undertecknad av: <i>Raymond Huang</i> Namn/Title: Raymond Huang / Quality & Customer Service Division Assistant VP Datum (åååå/mm/dd): 2011/1/24		



# Index

## Numbers

802.1P priority [94](#)

802.3az [265](#)

## A

access control

limitations [292](#)

login account [305](#)

remote management [315](#)

service port [314](#)

SNMP [292](#)

accounting

setup [208](#)

address learning, MAC [107, 110](#)

Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) [330, 332, 334](#)

administrator password [306](#)

age [137](#)

aggregator ID [152, 154](#)

aging time [90](#)

applications

backbone [19](#)

bridging [20](#)

IEEE 802.1Q VLAN [21](#)

switched workgroup [20](#)

ARP

how it works [330](#)

table [331](#)

ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) [330](#)

ARP inspection [215, 217](#)

and MAC filter [218](#)

configuring [218](#)

syslog messages [218](#)

trusted ports [218](#)

authentication

and RADIUS [203](#)

setup [208](#)

authorization

privilege levels [210](#)

setup [208](#)

auto-crossover [31](#)

automatic VLAN registration [100](#)

## B

back up, configuration file [288](#)

basic settings [84](#)

basic setup tutorial [52](#)

binding [215](#)

binding table [215](#)

building [215](#)

BPDUs (Bridge Protocol Data Units) [125](#)

Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) [125](#)

## C

CDP [244](#)

certifications [345](#)

notices [346](#)

viewing [346](#)

CFI (Canonical Format Indicator) [99](#)

changing the password [43](#)

Cisco Discovery Protocol, see CDP

CIST [128](#)

CIST (Common and Internal Spanning Tree) [126](#)

Class of Service (CoS) [270](#)

classifier [167, 169](#)

and QoS [167](#)

editing [169](#)

example [171](#)

overview [167](#)

setup [167, 169](#)

viewing [169](#)

CLI

Reference Guide [2](#)

cloning a port See port cloning [334](#)

cluster management [321](#)

- and switch passwords [326](#)
- cluster manager [321, 325](#)
- cluster member [321, 326](#)
- cluster member firmware upgrade [323](#)
- network example [321](#)
- setup [325](#)
- specification [321](#)
- status [322](#)
- switch models [321](#)
- VID [326](#)
- web configurator [323](#)
- cluster manager [321](#)
- cluster member [321](#)
- Common and Internal Spanning Tree (CIST) [126](#)
- Common and Internal Spanning Tree, See CIST [128](#)
- configuration [269](#)
  - change running config [286](#)
  - file names [289](#)
- configuration file [44](#)
  - backup [288](#)
  - restore [44, 288](#)
  - saving [286](#)
- configuration, saving [43](#)
- console port [30](#)
- copying port settings, See port cloning [334](#)
- copyright [345](#)
- CPU management port [112](#)
- CPU protection
  - configuration [259](#)
  - overview [258](#)
- current date [87](#)
- current time [86](#)

## D

- daylight saving time [87](#)
- default Ethernet settings [30](#)
- DHCP [278](#)
  - configuration options [278](#)
  - modes [278](#)
  - relay agent [278](#)
  - relay example [283](#)
  - setup [282](#)
- DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) [278](#)

- DHCP relay option 82 [217](#)
- DHCP snooping [52, 215](#)
  - configuring [217](#)
  - DHCP relay option 82 [217](#)
  - trusted ports [216](#)
  - untrusted ports [216](#)
- DHCP snooping database [216](#)
- diagnostics [317](#)
  - Ethernet port test [317](#)
  - ping [317](#)
  - system log [317](#)
- Differentiated Service (DiffServ) [270](#)
- DiffServ [270](#)
  - activate [272](#)
  - and TRTCM [274](#)
  - DS field [270](#)
  - DSCP [270](#)
  - network example [270](#)
  - PHB [270](#)
- disclaimer [345](#)
- documentation
  - related [2](#)
- double-tagged frames [180](#)
- DS (Differentiated Services) [270](#)
- DSCP
  - service level [270](#)
  - what it does [270](#)
- DSCP (DiffServ Code Point) [270](#)
- Dual-personality interfaces
  - description [19](#)
  - location [29](#)
- dynamic link aggregation [149](#)

## E

- EEE [265](#)
- egress port [115](#)
- Energy Efficient Ethernet [265](#)
- Error Disable [65](#)
- error disable detect [260](#)
- error disable recovery
  - configuration [261](#)
  - overview [258](#)
- Ethernet broadcast address [330](#)
- Ethernet port test [317](#)

external authentication server [203](#)

## F

FCC interference statement [345](#)

file transfer using FTP  
command example [289](#)

filename convention, configuration [289](#)

filtering [122](#)  
rules [122](#)

filtering database, MAC table [327](#)

firmware [85](#)  
upgrade [287](#), [323](#)

flow control [94](#)  
back pressure [94](#)  
IEEE802.3x [94](#)

forwarding  
delay [137](#)

frames  
tagged [106](#)  
untagged [106](#)

front panel [28](#)

FTP [289](#)  
file transfer procedure [290](#)  
restrictions over WAN [290](#)

## G

GARP [100](#)  
GARP (Generic Attribute Registration Protocol) [100](#)  
GARP terminology [100](#)  
GARP timer [90](#), [100](#)  
general setup [86](#)  
getting help [45](#)  
Gigabit ports [30](#)  
GMT (Greenwich Mean Time) [87](#)  
Green Ethernet [265](#)  
Guide  
CLI Reference [2](#)  
GVRP [100](#), [105](#), [106](#)  
and port assignment [106](#)  
GVRP (GARP VLAN Registration Protocol) [100](#)

## H

hardware installation [25](#)  
hardware monitor [85](#)  
hardware overview [28](#)  
hello time [137](#)  
hops [137](#)  
HTTPS [308](#)  
certificates [308](#)  
implementation [308](#)  
public keys, private keys [308](#)  
HTTPS example [309](#)

## I

IEEE 802.1p, priority [90](#)  
IEEE 802.1x  
activate [160](#), [163](#), [206](#)  
reauthentication [161](#)  
IEEE 802.1x, port authentication [157](#)  
IGMP  
version [187](#)  
IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) [187](#)  
IGMP filtering [187](#)  
profile [193](#)  
profiles [189](#)  
IGMP leave timeout  
fast [190](#)  
normal [190](#)  
IGMP snooping [187](#)  
MVR [194](#)  
IGMP throttling [191](#)  
ingress port [115](#)  
installation  
desktop [25](#)  
precautions [26](#)  
rack-mounting [25](#)  
transceivers [31](#)  
installation scenarios [25](#)  
Internet Protocol version 6, see IPv6  
introduction [19](#)  
IP address [92](#)  
IP interface [91](#)  
IP setup [91](#)

- IP source guard [215](#)
  - ARP inspection [215, 217](#)
  - DHCP snooping [215](#)
  - static bindings [215](#)
- IP subnet mask [92](#)
- IPv6 [22](#)
  - Neighbor Discovery Protocol [22](#)
  - ping [22](#)

## L

- L2PT [242](#)
  - access port [243](#)
  - CDP [242](#)
  - configuration [244](#)
  - encapsulation [242](#)
  - LACP [243](#)
  - MAC address [242](#)
  - mode [243](#)
  - overview [242](#)
  - PAgP [243](#)
  - point to point [243](#)
  - STP [242](#)
  - tunnel port [243](#)
  - UDLD [243](#)
  - VTP [242](#)
- LACP [149, 245](#)
  - system priority [154](#)
  - timeout [155](#)
- Layer 2 protocol tunneling, see L2PT
- LEDs [33](#)
- limit MAC address learning [166](#)
- Link Aggregate Control Protocol (LACP) [149](#)
- link aggregation [149](#)
  - dynamic [149](#)
  - ID information [150](#)
  - setup [152, 154](#)
  - status [150](#)
  - traffic distribution algorithm [151](#)
  - traffic distribution type [153](#)
- lockout [43](#)
- log [317](#)
- login [37](#)
  - password [43](#)
- login account
  - Administrator [305](#)

- non-administrator [305](#)
- login accounts [305](#)
  - configuring via web configurator [305](#)
  - multiple [305](#)
  - number of [305](#)
- login password [306](#)
- loop guard [234](#)
  - how it works [235](#)
  - port shut down [236](#)
  - probe packet [235](#)
- loop guard, vs STP [234](#)

## M

- MAC (Media Access Control) [85](#)
- MAC address [85, 330](#)
  - maximum number per port [166](#)
- MAC address learning [89, 107, 110, 116, 166](#)
  - specify limit [166](#)
- MAC authentication [158](#)
  - aging time [164](#)
- MAC filter
  - and ARP inspection [218](#)
- MAC freeze [166](#)
- MAC table [327](#)
  - display criteria [328](#)
  - how it works [327](#)
  - sorting criteria [328](#)
  - transfer type [329](#)
  - viewing [328](#)
- maintenance [285](#)
  - configuration backup [288](#)
  - current configuration [285](#)
  - firmware [287](#)
  - main screen [285](#)
  - restoring configuration [288](#)
- Management Information Base (MIB) [293](#)
- management port [115](#)
- managing the device
  - good habits [23](#)
  - using FTP. See FTP. [22](#)
  - using Telnet. See command interface. [22](#)
  - using the command interface. See command interface. [22](#)
- man-in-the-middle attacks [217](#)
- max

- age [137](#)
- hops [137](#)
- MDIX (Media Dependent Interface Crossover) [31](#)
- MIB
  - and SNMP [293](#)
  - supported MIBs [294](#)
- MIB (Management Information Base) [293](#)
- mirroring ports [147](#)
- monitor port [147](#)
- mounting brackets [26](#)
- MST Instance, See MSTI [128](#)
- MST region [127](#)
- MSTI [128](#)
  - MST ID [128](#)
- MSTI (Multiple Spanning Tree Instance) [126](#)
- MSTP [124, 126](#)
  - bridge ID [140, 141](#)
  - configuration [136, 139](#)
  - configuration digest [141](#)
  - forwarding delay [137](#)
  - Hello Time [140](#)
  - hello time [137](#)
  - Max Age [140](#)
  - max age [137](#)
  - max hops [137](#)
  - MST region [127](#)
  - network example [127](#)
  - path cost [138](#)
  - port priority [138](#)
  - revision level [137](#)
- MSTP (Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol) [124](#)
- MTU (Multi-Tenant Unit) [87](#)
- multicast [187](#)
  - 802.1 priority [189](#)
  - and IGMP [187](#)
  - IGMP throttling [191](#)
  - IP addresses [187](#)
  - overview [187](#)
  - setup [189](#)
- multicast group [193](#)
- multicast VLAN [198](#)
- Multiple Spanning Tree Instance, See MSTI [126](#)
- Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol [126](#)
- Multiple Spanning Tree Protocol, See MSTP. [124](#)
- Multiple STP [126](#)
- Multiple STP, see MSTP [126](#)

- MVR [194](#)
  - configuration [196](#)
  - group configuration [198](#)
  - network example [194](#)
- MVR (Multicast VLAN Registration) [194](#)

## N

- network applications [19](#)
- network management system (NMS) [292](#)
- NTP (RFC-1305) [86](#)

## O

- other documentation [2](#)

## P

- PAGP [245](#)
- password [43](#)
  - administrator [306](#)
- PHB (Per-Hop Behavior) [270](#)
- ping, test connection [317](#)
- PoE [94](#)
- policy [173, 175](#)
  - and classifier [173](#)
  - and DiffServ [172](#)
  - configuration [173](#)
  - example [176](#)
  - overview [172](#)
  - rules [172](#)
  - viewing [175](#)
- policy configuration [175](#)
- Port Aggregation Protocol, see PAGP
- port authentication [157](#)
  - and RADIUS [203](#)
  - IEEE802.1x [160, 163, 206](#)
  - MAC authentication [158](#)
- port based VLAN type [89](#)
- port cloning [332, 334](#)
  - advanced settings [332, 334](#)
  - basic settings [332, 334](#)

- port details [81](#)
- port isolation [115](#)
- port mirroring [147](#)
  - direction [148](#)
  - egress [148](#)
  - ingress [148](#)
- port redundancy [149](#)
- port security [165](#)
  - address learning [166](#)
  - limit MAC address learning [166](#)
  - MAC address learning [165](#)
  - overview [165](#)
  - setup [165, 236, 244](#)
- port setup [93](#)
- port status [79](#)
- port VLAN trunking [101](#)
- port-based VLAN [112](#)
  - all connected [115](#)
  - port isolation [115](#)
  - settings wizard [115](#)
- ports
  - "standby" [149](#)
  - diagnostics [317](#)
  - mirroring [147](#)
  - speed/duplex [94](#)
- power connector [33](#)
- Power over Ethernet [94](#)
- power status [85](#)
- power voltage [85](#)
- PPPoE IA [59](#)
  - trusted ports [252](#)
  - untrusted ports [252](#)
- priority level [90](#)
- priority, queue assignment [90](#)
- private VLAN [263](#)
  - configuration [264](#)
  - isolated port [263](#)
  - overview [263](#)
  - promiscuous port [263](#)
- product registration [347](#)
- protocol based VLAN [109](#)
  - and IEEE 802.1Q tagging [109](#)
  - example [111](#)
  - hexadecimal notation for protocols [108, 110](#)
  - isolate traffic [109](#)
  - priority [108, 110](#)
- PVID [99, 106](#)

PVID (Priority Frame) [99](#)

## Q

QoS

- and classifier [167](#)

queue weight [178](#)queuing [177](#)

- SPQ [178](#)
- WRR [178](#)

queuing method [177, 179](#)

## R

rack-mounting [25](#)  
RADIUS [203](#)

- advantages [203](#)
- and authentication [203](#)
- Network example [202](#)
- server [203](#)
- settings [203](#)
- setup [203](#)

Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol, See RSTP. [124](#)  
reboot

- load configuration [286](#)

reboot system [286](#)  
Reference Guide, CLI [2](#)  
registration

- product [347](#)

related documentation [2](#)  
remote management [315](#)

- service [316](#)
- trusted computers [316](#)

resetting [44, 286](#)

- to factory default settings [286](#)

restoring configuration [44, 288](#)  
RFC 3164 [318](#)  
Round Robin Scheduling [178](#)  
RSTP [124](#)



## S

- safety warnings [348](#)
- save configuration [43, 286](#)
- service access control [314](#)
  - service port [315](#)
- sFlow [246](#)
  - collector [248](#)
  - configuration [247](#)
  - datagram [246](#)
  - overview [246](#)
  - poll interval [247](#)
  - sample rate [247](#)
  - UDP port [248](#)
- sFlow agent [246](#)
- sFlow collector [246](#)
- Simple Network Management Protocol, see SNMP [292](#)
- Small Form-factor Pluggable (SFP) [31](#)
- SNMP [292](#)
  - agent [293](#)
  - and MIB [293](#)
  - and security [293](#)
  - authentication [304](#)
  - communities [301](#)
  - management model [293](#)
  - manager [293](#)
  - MIB [294](#)
  - network components [293](#)
  - object variables [293](#)
  - protocol operations [293](#)
  - security [304](#)
  - setup [301, 302](#)
  - users [303](#)
  - version 3 [293](#)
  - versions supported [292](#)
- SNMP traps [294](#)
  - setup [302](#)
  - supported [294, 295, 298, 300](#)
- Spanning Tree Protocol, See STP. [124](#)
- SPQ (Strict Priority Queuing) [178](#)
- SSH
  - encryption methods [308](#)
  - how it works [307](#)
  - implementation [308](#)
- SSH (Secure Shell) Secure Shell, See SSH [306](#)
- SSL (Secure Socket Layer) [308](#)
- standby ports [149](#)
- static bindings [215](#)
- static MAC address [116](#)
- static MAC forwarding [107, 110, 116](#)
- static multicast address [118](#)
- static multicast forwarding [118](#)
- static routes [269](#)
- static trunking example [155](#)
- Static VLAN [104](#)
- static VLAN
  - control [104](#)
  - tagging [105](#)
- status [79](#)
  - link aggregation [150](#)
  - port [79](#)
  - port details [81](#)
  - power [85](#)
  - STP [132, 134, 140](#)
  - VLAN [102](#)
- STP [124, 245](#)
  - bridge ID [132, 135](#)
  - bridge priority [131, 133](#)
  - configuration [130, 133, 136](#)
  - designated bridge [125](#)
  - forwarding delay [131, 134](#)
  - Hello BPDU [125](#)
  - Hello Time [131, 132, 133, 135](#)
  - how it works [125](#)
  - Max Age [131, 132, 134, 135](#)
  - path cost [124, 131, 134](#)
  - port priority [131, 134](#)
  - port state [125](#)
  - root port [125](#)
  - status [132, 134, 140](#)
  - terminology [124](#)
  - vs loop guard [234](#)
- subnet based VLANs [106](#)
  - and DHCP VLAN [108](#)
  - and priority [106](#)
  - configuration [107](#)
- switch lockdown [43](#)
- switch reset [44](#)
- switch setup [89](#)
- syslog [218, 318](#)
  - protocol [318](#)
  - server setup [320](#)
  - settings [319](#)

- setup [319](#)
- severity levels [318](#)
- system information [84](#)
- system log [317](#)
- system reboot [286](#)

## T

- TACACS+ [203](#)
  - setup [206](#)
- TACACS+ (Terminal Access Controller Access-Control System Plus) [202](#)
- tagged VLAN [99](#)
- temperature indicator [85](#)
- terminal emulation [30](#)
- time
  - current [86](#)
  - time zone [87](#)
- Time (RFC-868) [86](#)
- time server [86](#)
- time service protocol [86](#)
  - format [86](#)
- trademarks [345](#)
- transceiver MultiSource Agreement (MSA) [31](#)
- transceivers [31](#)
  - installation [31](#)
  - removal [32](#)
- traps
  - destination [302](#)
- TRTCM
  - and bandwidth control [274](#)
  - and DiffServ [274](#)
  - color-aware mode [272](#)
  - color-blind mode [272](#)
  - setup [273](#)
- trunk group [149](#)
- trunking [149](#)
  - example [155](#)
- trusted ports
  - ARP inspection [218](#)
  - DHCP snooping [216](#)
  - PPPoE IA [252](#)
- Tunnel Protocol Attribute, and RADIUS [211](#)
- tutorials [52](#)
  - DHCP snooping [52](#)

- Error Disable [65](#)
- PPPoE IA [59](#)
- Two Rate Three Color Marker (TRTCM) [271](#)
- Type of Service (ToS) [270](#)

## U

- UDLD [245](#)
- UniDirectional Link Detection, see UDLD
- untrusted ports
  - ARP inspection [218](#)
  - DHCP snooping [216](#)
  - PPPoE IA [252](#)
- user profiles [202](#)

## V

- Vendor Specific Attribute See VSA
- ventilation [25](#)
- VID [99, 102, 103, 182](#)
  - number of possible VIDs [99](#)
  - priority frame [99](#)
- VID (VLAN Identifier) [99](#)
- VLAN [87, 99](#)
  - acceptable frame type [106](#)
  - automatic registration [100](#)
  - ID [99](#)
  - ingress filtering [106](#)
  - introduction [87](#)
  - number of VLANs [102](#)
  - port number [103](#)
  - port settings [105](#)
  - port-based VLAN [112](#)
  - port-based, all connected [115](#)
  - port-based, isolation [115](#)
  - port-based, wizard [115](#)
  - static VLAN [104](#)
  - status [102, 103](#)
  - tagged [99](#)
  - trunking [101, 106](#)
  - type [89, 101](#)
- VLAN (Virtual Local Area Network) [87](#)
- VLAN ID [92](#)
- VLAN mapping [238](#)

- activating [239](#)
- configuration [240](#)
- example [238](#)
- priority level [238](#)
- tagged [238](#)
- traffic flow [238](#)
- untagged [238](#)
- VLAN ID [238](#)
- VLAN stacking [180, 182](#)
  - configuration [183](#)
  - example [180](#)
  - frame format [182](#)
  - port roles [181, 183](#)
  - port-based Q-in-Q [184](#)
  - priority [182](#)
  - selective Q-in-Q [185](#)
- VLAN Trunking Protocol, see VTP
- VLAN, protocol based, See protocol based VLAN
- VLAN, subnet based, See subnet based VLANs [106](#)
- VSA [210](#)
- VT100 [30](#)
- VTP [245](#)

## W

- warranty [346](#)
  - note [347](#)
- web configurator [37](#)
  - getting help [45](#)
  - layout [38](#)
  - login [37](#)
  - logout [45](#)
  - navigation panel [40](#)
- weight, queuing [178](#)
- Weighted Round Robin Scheduling (WRR) [178](#)
- WRR (Weighted Round Robin Scheduling) [178](#)

## Z

- ZyNOS (ZyXEL Network Operating System) [289](#)

